

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## SCHEDULES

### SCHEDULE 1

Section 2

#### THE LEGAL SERVICES BOARD

##### *Membership*

- 1 (1) The Board is to consist of the following members—
  - (a) a chairman appointed by the Lord Chancellor,
  - (b) the Chief Executive of the Board (see paragraph 13), and
  - (c) at least 7, but not more than 10, other persons appointed by the Lord Chancellor.
- (2) In this Schedule a reference to an “ordinary member” is a reference to a member of the Board other than the Chief Executive.
- (3) Before appointing an ordinary member, the Lord Chancellor must consult the Lord Chief Justice about the process for appointment of the member and about the person selected for appointment.
- (4) The Lord Chancellor may by order amend sub-paragraph (1) by substituting for the limit on the maximum number of persons for the time being specified in paragraph (c) of that sub-paragraph a different limit.
- 2 (1) In appointing persons as ordinary members the Lord Chancellor must ensure that a majority of the members of the Board are lay persons.
- (2) The chairman must be a lay person.
- (3) It is a condition of the appointment of the chairman that the person appointed must not during the appointment—
  - (a) carry on any activity which is a reserved legal activity,
  - (b) provide regulated claims management services (within the meaning of Part 2 of the Compensation Act 2006 (c. 29)), or
  - (c) provide immigration advice or immigration services, for or in expectation of any fee, gain or reward.
- (4) In this Schedule a reference to a “lay person” is a reference to a person who has never been—
  - (a) an authorised person in relation to an activity which is a reserved legal activity;
  - (b) a person authorised, by a person designated under section 5(1) of the Compensation Act 2006, to provide services which are regulated claims management services (within the meaning of that Act);
  - (c) an advocate in Scotland;
  - (d) a solicitor in Scotland;
  - (e) a member of the Bar of Northern Ireland;

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(f) a solicitor of the Court of Judicature of Northern Ireland.

(5) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (4), a person is deemed to have been an authorised person in relation to an activity which is a reserved legal activity if that person has before the appointed day been—

- (a) a barrister;
- (b) a solicitor;
- (c) a public notary;
- (d) a licensed conveyancer;
- (e) granted a certificate issued by the Institute of Legal Executives authorising the person to practise as a legal executive;
- (f) a registered patent attorney, within the meaning given by section 275(1) of the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 (c. 48);
- (g) a registered trade mark attorney, within the meaning of the Trade Marks Act 1994 (c. 26); or
- (h) granted a right of audience or a right to conduct litigation in relation to any proceedings by virtue of section 27(2)(a) or section 28(2)(a) of the Courts and Legal Services Act 1990 (c. 41) (rights of audience and rights to conduct litigation).

(6) For the purpose of sub-paragraph (5)—

“appointed day” means the day appointed for the coming into force of section 13;

“licensed conveyancer” has the meaning given by section 11(2) of the Administration of Justice Act 1985 (c. 61).

3 In appointing persons to be ordinary members, the Lord Chancellor must have regard to the desirability of securing that the Board includes members who (between them) have experience in or knowledge of—

- (a) the provision of legal services;
- (b) legal education and legal training;
- (c) consumer affairs;
- (d) civil or criminal proceedings and the working of the courts;
- (e) competition matters;
- (f) the maintenance of the professional standards of persons who provide legal services;
- (g) the maintenance of standards in professions other than the legal profession;
- (h) the handling of complaints;
- (i) commercial affairs;
- (j) non-commercial legal services;
- (k) the differing needs of consumers;
- (l) the provision of claims management services (within the meaning of Part 2 of the Compensation Act 2006 (c. 29)).

#### *Terms of appointment and tenure of members*

4 An ordinary member is to hold and vacate office in accordance with the terms and conditions of that member's appointment (subject to this Schedule).

5 (1) An ordinary member must be appointed for a fixed period.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) The period for which an ordinary member is appointed must not exceed 5 years.
- (3) A person who has held office as an ordinary member may be re-appointed, once only, for a further period (whether consecutive or not) not exceeding 5 years.
- 6 If an ordinary member who is a lay person becomes a person within paragraphs (a) to (f) of paragraph 2(4) that person ceases to be a member of the Board.
- 7 (1) An ordinary member may at any time—
- (a) resign from office by giving notice to the Lord Chancellor;
  - (b) be removed from office by the Lord Chancellor.
- (2) The Lord Chancellor may not under sub-paragraph (1)(b) remove an ordinary member from office unless sub-paragraph (3) or (4) applies.
- (3) This sub-paragraph applies if the Lord Chancellor is satisfied that the member—
- (a) has failed without reasonable excuse to discharge the functions of the office for a continuous period of at least 6 months,
  - (b) has been convicted of an offence,
  - (c) is an undischarged bankrupt, or
  - (d) is otherwise unfit to hold the office or unable to discharge its functions.
- (4) This sub-paragraph applies if the member is the chairman and has breached the condition imposed on his appointment by paragraph 2(3).
- (5) Before removing any ordinary member under sub-paragraph (1)(b), the Lord Chancellor must consult—
- (a) the Lord Chief Justice, and
  - (b) if the ordinary member is not the chairman, the chairman.
- (6) The Lord Chancellor may not remove an ordinary member on the ground mentioned in paragraph (a) of sub-paragraph (3) more than 3 months after the end of the period mentioned in that paragraph.
- 8 The chairman ceases to be chairman upon ceasing to be a member of the Board.
- 9 Where a person ceases to be employed as Chief Executive, that person ceases to be a member of the Board.

*Remuneration etc of members*

- 10 The chairman and other ordinary members are to be paid by the Board in accordance with provision made by or under their terms of appointment.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C1 Sch. 1 para. 10 modified (temp.) (7.3.2008) by [The Legal Services Act 2007 \(Commencement No.1 and Transitory Provisions\) Order 2008 \(S.I. 2008/222\)](#), [art. 8](#)

- 11 The terms of appointment of the chairman or any other ordinary member may provide for the Board to pay, or make payments towards the provision of, a pension, allowance or gratuity to or in respect of that person.
- 12 If the Lord Chancellor thinks there are circumstances that make it right for a person ceasing to hold office as chairman or another ordinary member to receive

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

compensation, the Board may pay that person such compensation as the Lord Chancellor may determine.

#### *Staff*

- 13 The Board must appoint a person as its Chief Executive.
- 14 The Board may appoint such other staff as it considers appropriate to assist in the performance of its functions.
- 15 The Chief Executive and other staff are to be—
- (a) appointed on terms and conditions determined by the Board, and
  - (b) paid by the Board in accordance with provision made by or under the terms of appointment.
- 16 The terms and conditions on which the Chief Executive or any other member of staff is appointed may provide for the Board to pay, or make payments towards the provision of, a pension, allowance or gratuity to or in respect of that person.
- 17 The Board may pay compensation for loss of employment to or in respect of a member (or former member) of staff.
- 18 A member of staff appointed under paragraph 14 may be a member (but not chairman) of the Board.

#### *Arrangements for assistance*

- 19 (1) The Board may make arrangements with such persons as it considers appropriate for assistance to be provided to it.
- (2) Arrangements may include the paying of fees to such persons.

#### *Committees*

- 20 (1) The Board may establish committees.
- (2) Any committee so established may establish sub-committees.
  - (3) Only members of the Board may be members of a committee or sub-committee.
  - (4) A majority of the members of a committee or sub-committee must be lay persons.

#### *Proceedings*

- 21 (1) The Board may regulate its own procedure, and the procedure of its committees and sub-committees, including quorum.
- (2) But the quorum of a committee or sub-committee must not be less than 3.
  - (3) The Board must publish any rules of procedure made under this paragraph.
  - (4) This paragraph is without prejudice to any other power the Board has under this Act to make rules.
- 22 The validity of any act of the Board is not affected—
- (a) by a vacancy in the office of chairman or amongst the other members, or

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) by a defect in the appointment or any disqualification of a person as chairman or another member of the Board.

#### *Delegation of functions*

- 23 (1) The Board may authorise—
- (a) the chairman, the Chief Executive or any other member of the Board,
  - (b) a committee or sub-committee of the Board, or
  - (c) a member of staff appointed under paragraph 14,
- to exercise, on behalf of the Board, such of its functions, in such circumstances, as it may determine.
- (2) A committee may delegate functions (including functions delegated to the committee) to—
- (a) a sub-committee,
  - (b) the chairman, the Chief Executive or any other member of the Board, or
  - (c) a member of staff appointed under paragraph 14.
- (3) Sub-paragraphs (1) and (2) are subject to—
- (a) any provision made by an order under section 62 by virtue of section 64(2)(k) (powers to authorise the Board to delegate to any person functions conferred on it in its capacity as an approved regulator), and
  - (b) section 73(3)(a) (power to delegate to any person functions conferred on the Board in its capacity as a licensing authority).
- (4) Sub-paragraph (1) does not apply to any power or duty the Board has to make rules (other than excluded rules) under this Act.
- (5) In sub-paragraph (4) “excluded rules” means—
- (a) rules of procedure made under paragraph 21 in relation to any committee or sub-committee of the Board, and
  - (b) rules made by the Board in its capacity as an approved regulator or a licensing authority.

#### *Borrowing*

- 24 The Board is not to borrow money, except—
- (a) with the consent of the Lord Chancellor, or
  - (b) in accordance with a general authorisation given by the Lord Chancellor.

#### *Accounts*

- 25 (1) The Board must—
- (a) keep proper accounts and proper records in relation to the accounts, and
  - (b) prepare in respect of each financial year a statement of accounts.
- (2) Each statement of accounts must comply with any directions given by the Lord Chancellor, with the approval of the Treasury, as to—
- (a) the information to be contained in it and the manner in which it is to be presented;

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) the methods and principles according to which the statement is to be prepared;
  - (c) the additional information (if any) which is to be provided for the information of Parliament.
- (3) The Board must give a copy of each statement of accounts—
- (a) to the Lord Chancellor, and
  - (b) to the Comptroller and Auditor General,
- before the end of the month of August next following the financial year to which the statement relates.
- (4) The Comptroller and Auditor General must—
- (a) examine, certify and report on each statement of accounts which is received under sub-paragraph (3), and
  - (b) give a copy of the Comptroller and Auditor General's report to the Lord Chancellor.
- (5) In respect of each financial year, the Lord Chancellor must lay before Parliament a document consisting of—
- (a) a copy of the statement of accounts for that year, and
  - (b) a copy of the Comptroller and Auditor General's report on that statement.
- (6) “Financial year” means—
- (a) the period beginning with the day on which the Board is established and ending with the next following 31 March, and
  - (b) each successive period of 12 months.

#### *Status*

- 26 (1) The Board is not to be regarded—
- (a) as the servant or agent of the Crown, or
  - (b) as enjoying any status, immunity or privilege of the Crown.
- (2) Accordingly—
- (a) the Board's property is not to be regarded as property of or held on behalf of the Crown, and
  - (b) the Board's staff are not to be regarded as servants or agents of the Crown or as enjoying any status, immunity or privilege of the Crown.

#### *Application of seal and proof of instruments*

- 27 The application of the seal of the Board is to be authenticated by the signature of any member of the Board, or of its staff, who has been authorised (whether generally or specifically) by the Board for the purpose.
- 28 Any contract or instrument which, if entered into or executed by an individual, would not need to be under seal may be entered into or executed on behalf of the Board by any person who has been authorised (whether generally or specifically) by the Board for the purpose.
- 29 A document purporting to be duly executed under the seal of the Board or signed on its behalf—
- (a) is to be received in evidence, and

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) is to be taken to be executed or signed in that way, unless the contrary is proved.

#### *Disqualification*

- 30 (1) In Part 2 of Schedule 1 to the House of Commons Disqualification Act 1975 (c. 24) (bodies of which all members are disqualified) at the appropriate place insert— “The Legal Services Board.”
- (2) In Part 2 of Schedule 1 to the Northern Ireland Assembly Disqualification Act 1975 (c. 25) (bodies of which all members are disqualified) at the appropriate place insert— “The Legal Services Board.”

#### *Freedom of information*

- 31 In Part 6 of Schedule 1 to the Freedom of Information Act 2000 (c. 36) (other public bodies and offices which are public authorities) at the appropriate place insert— “The Legal Services Board.”

#### *Public records*

- 32 In Schedule 1 to the Public Records Act 1958 (c. 51) (definition of public records) at the appropriate place in Part 2 of the Table at the end of paragraph 3 insert— “The Legal Services Board.”

#### *Exemption from liability in damages*

- 33 (1) This paragraph applies to—
- (a) the Board,
  - (b) a member of the Board,
  - (c) a member of the Board's staff appointed under paragraph 14,
  - (d) a person to whom the Board (in its capacity as an approved regulator) delegates any of its functions by virtue of provision made under section 64(2) (k), and
  - (e) a person to whom the Board (in its capacity as a licensing authority) delegates any of its functions by virtue of section 73(3)(a).
- (2) A person to whom this paragraph applies is not liable in damages for anything done or omitted in the exercise or purported exercise of the functions of the Board conferred by or by virtue of this or any other enactment.
- (3) But sub-paragraph (1) does not apply—
- (a) if it is shown that the act or omission was in bad faith, or
  - (b) so as to prevent an award of damages made in respect of an act or omission on the ground that the act or omission was unlawful as a result of section 6(1) of the Human Rights Act 1998 (c. 42).

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## SCHEDULE 2

Section 12

### THE RESERVED LEGAL ACTIVITIES

#### *Introduction*

1 This Schedule makes provision about the reserved legal activities.

#### **Commencement Information**

**I1** Sch. 2 para. 1 wholly in force at 1.1.2010; Sch. 2 para. 1 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 2 para. 1 in force for certain purposes at 7.3.2008 by S.I. 2008/222, art. 3; Sch. 2 para. 1 in force for further certain purposes at 31.3.2009 by S.I. 2009/503, art. 3; Sch. 2 para. 1 in force otherwise at 1.1.2010 by S.I. 2009/3250, art. 2(b)(ii) (with art. 9)

2 In this Schedule “the appointed day” means the day appointed for the coming into force of section 13 (entitlement to carry on reserved legal activities).

#### **Commencement Information**

**I2** Sch. 2 para. 2 wholly in force at 1.1.2010; Sch. 2 para. 2 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 2 para. 2 in force for certain purposes at 7.3.2008 by S.I. 2008/222, art. 3; Sch. 2 para. 2 in force for further certain purposes at 31.3.2009 by S.I. 2009/503, art. 3; Sch. 2 para. 2 in force otherwise at 1.1.2010 by S.I. 2009/3250, art. 2(b)(ii) (with art. 9)

#### *Rights of audience*

3 (1) A “right of audience” means the right to appear before and address a court, including the right to call and examine witnesses.

(2) But a “right of audience” does not include a right to appear before or address a court, or to call or examine witnesses, in relation to any particular court or in relation to particular proceedings, if immediately before the appointed day no restriction was placed on the persons entitled to exercise that right.

#### **Commencement Information**

**I3** Sch. 2 para. 3 wholly in force at 1.1.2010; Sch. 2 para. 3 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 2 para. 3 in force for certain purposes at 7.3.2008 by S.I. 2008/222, art. 3; Sch. 2 para. 3 in force for further certain purposes at 31.3.2009 by S.I. 2009/503, art. 3; Sch. 2 para. 3 in force otherwise at 1.1.2010 by S.I. 2009/3250, art. 2(b)(ii) (with art. 9)

#### *Conduct of litigation*

4 (1) The “conduct of litigation” means—

- (a) the issuing of proceedings before any court in England and Wales,
- (b) the commencement, prosecution and defence of such proceedings, and
- (c) the performance of any ancillary functions in relation to such proceedings (such as entering appearances to actions).



*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) But the “conduct of litigation” does not include any activity within paragraphs (a) to (c) of sub-paragraph (1), in relation to any particular court or in relation to any particular proceedings, if immediately before the appointed day no restriction was placed on the persons entitled to carry on that activity.

#### Commencement Information

- I4** Sch. 2 para. 4 wholly in force at 1.1.2010; Sch. 2 para. 4 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 2 para. 4 in force for certain purposes at 7.3.2008 by S.I. 2008/222, art. 3; Sch. 2 para. 4 in force for further certain purposes at 31.3.2009 by S.I. 2009/503, art. 3; Sch. 2 para. 4 in force otherwise at 1.1.2010 by S.I. 2009/3250, art. 2(b)(ii) (with art. 9)

#### *Reserved instrument activities*

- 5 (1) “Reserved instrument activities” means—
- (a) preparing any instrument of transfer or charge for the purposes of the Land Registration Act 2002 (c. 9);
  - (b) making an application or lodging a document for registration under that Act;
  - (c) preparing any other instrument relating to real or personal estate for the purposes of the law of England and Wales or instrument relating to court proceedings in England and Wales.
- (2) But “reserved instrument activities” does not include the preparation of an instrument relating to any particular court proceedings if, immediately before the appointed day, no restriction was placed on the persons entitled to carry on that activity.
- (3) In this paragraph “instrument” includes a contract for the sale or other disposition of land (except a contract to grant a short lease), but does not include—
- (a) a will or other testamentary instrument,
  - (b) an agreement not intended to be executed as a deed, other than a contract that is included by virtue of the preceding provisions of this sub-paragraph,
  - (c) a letter or power of attorney, or
  - (d) a transfer of stock containing no trust or limitation of the transfer.
- (4) In this paragraph a “short lease” means a lease such as is referred to in section 54(2) of the Law of Property Act 1925 (c. 20) (short leases).

#### Commencement Information

- I5** Sch. 2 para. 5 wholly in force at 1.1.2010; Sch. 2 para. 5 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 2 para. 5 in force for certain purposes at 7.3.2008 by S.I. 2008/222, art. 3; Sch. 2 para. 5 in force for further certain purposes at 31.3.2009 by S.I. 2009/503, art. 3; Sch. 2 para. 5 in force otherwise at 1.1.2010 by S.I. 2009/3250, art. 2(b)(ii) (with art. 9)

#### *Probate activities*

- 6 (1) “Probate activities” means preparing any probate papers for the purposes of the law of England and Wales or in relation to any proceedings in England and Wales.
- (2) In this paragraph “probate papers” means papers on which to found or oppose—

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) a grant of probate, or
- (b) a grant of letters of administration.

**Commencement Information**

**I6** Sch. 2 para. 6 wholly in force at 1.1.2010; Sch. 2 para. 6 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 2 para. 6 in force for certain purposes at 7.3.2008 by S.I. 2008/222, art. 3; Sch. 2 para. 6 in force for further certain purposes at 31.3.2009 by S.I. 2009/503, art. 3; Sch. 2 para. 6 in force otherwise at 1.1.2010 by S.I. 2009/3250, art. 2(b)(ii) (with art. 9)

*Notarial activities*

- 7 (1) “Notarial activities” means activities which, immediately before the appointed day, were customarily carried on by virtue of enrolment as a notary in accordance with section 1 of the Public Notaries Act 1801 (c. 79).
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) does not include activities carried on—
- (a) by virtue of section 22 or 23 of the Solicitors Act 1974 (c. 47) (reserved instrument activities and probate activities), or
  - (b) by virtue of section 113 of the Courts and Legal Services Act 1990 (c. 41) (administration of oaths).

**Commencement Information**

**I7** Sch. 2 para. 7 wholly in force at 1.1.2010; Sch. 2 para. 7 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 2 para. 7 in force for certain purposes at 7.3.2008 by S.I. 2008/222, art. 3; Sch. 2 para. 7 in force for further certain purposes at 31.3.2009 by S.I. 2009/503, art. 3; Sch. 2 para. 7 in force otherwise at 1.1.2010 by S.I. 2009/3250, art. 2(b)(ii) (with art. 9)

*Administration of oaths*

- 8 The “administration of oaths” means the exercise of the powers conferred on a commissioner for oaths by—
- (a) the Commissioners for Oaths Act 1889 (c. 10);
  - (b) the Commissioners for Oaths Act 1891 (c. 50);
  - (c) section 24 of the Stamp Duties Management Act 1891 (c. 38).

**Commencement Information**

**I8** Sch. 2 para. 8 wholly in force at 1.1.2010; Sch. 2 para. 8 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 2 para. 8 in force for certain purposes at 7.3.2008 by S.I. 2008/222, art. 3; Sch. 2 para. 8 in force for further certain purposes at 31.3.2009 by S.I. 2009/503, art. 3; Sch. 2 para. 8 in force otherwise at 1.1.2010 by S.I. 2009/3250, art. 2(b)(ii) (with art. 9)

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## SCHEDULE 3

Section 19

### EXEMPT PERSONS

#### *Rights of audience*

- 1 (1) This paragraph applies to determine whether a person is an exempt person for the purpose of exercising a right of audience before a court in relation to any proceedings (subject to paragraph 7).
- (2) The person is exempt if the person—
- (a) is not an authorised person in relation to that activity, but
  - (b) has a right of audience granted by that court in relation to those proceedings.
- (3) The person is exempt if the person—
- (a) is not an authorised person in relation to that activity, but
  - (b) has a right of audience before that court in relation to those proceedings granted by or under any enactment.
- (4) The person is exempt if the person is the Attorney General or the Solicitor General and—
- (a) the name of the person is on the roll kept by the Law Society under section 6 of the Solicitors Act 1974 (c. 47), or
  - (b) the person has been called to the Bar by an Inn of Court.
- (5) The person is exempt if the person is the Advocate General for Scotland and is admitted—
- (a) as a solicitor in Scotland under section 6 of the Solicitors (Scotland) Act 1980 (c. 46), or
  - (b) to practise as an advocate before the courts of Scotland.
- (6) The person is exempt if the person—
- (a) is a party to those proceedings, and
  - (b) would have a right of audience, in the person's capacity as such a party, if this Act had not been passed.
- (7) The person is exempt if—
- (a) the person is an individual whose work includes assisting in the conduct of litigation,
  - (b) the person is assisting in the conduct of litigation—
    - (i) under instructions given (either generally or in relation to the proceedings) by an individual to whom sub-paragraph (8) applies, and
    - (ii) under the supervision of that individual, and
  - (c) the proceedings are being heard in chambers in the High Court or a county court and are not reserved family proceedings.
- (8) This sub-paragraph applies to—
- (a) any authorised person in relation to an activity which constitutes the conduct of litigation;
  - (b) any person who by virtue of section 193 is not required to be entitled to carry on such an activity.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (9) The person is an exempt person in relation to the exercise of a right of audience in proceedings on an appeal from the Comptroller-General of Patents, Designs and Trade Marks to the Patents Court under the Patents Act 1977 (c. 37), if the person is a solicitor of the Court of Judicature of Northern Ireland.
- (10) For the purposes of this paragraph—
- “family proceedings” has the same meaning as in the Matrimonial and Family Proceedings Act 1984 (c. 42) and also includes any other proceedings which are family proceedings for the purposes of the Children Act 1989 (c. 41);
- “reserved family proceedings” means such category of family proceedings as the Lord Chancellor may, after consulting the President of the Law Society and with the concurrence of the President of the Family Division, by order prescribe;
- and any order made under section 27(9) of the Courts and Legal Services Act 1990 (c. 41) before the day appointed for the coming into force of this paragraph is to have effect on and after that day as if it were an order made under this sub-paragraph.

#### *Conduct of litigation*

- 2 (1) This paragraph applies to determine whether a person is an exempt person for the purpose of carrying on any activity which constitutes the conduct of litigation in relation to any proceedings (subject to paragraph 7).
- (2) The person is exempt if the person—
- (a) is not an authorised person in relation to that activity, but
  - (b) has a right to conduct litigation granted by a court in relation to those proceedings.
- (3) The person is exempt if the person—
- (a) is not an authorised person in relation to that activity, but
  - (b) has a right to conduct litigation in relation to those proceedings granted by or under any enactment.
- (4) The person is exempt if the person—
- (a) is a party to those proceedings, and
  - (b) would have a right to conduct the litigation, in the person's capacity as such a party, if this Act had not been passed.
- (5) The person is an exempt person in relation to any activity which is carried on in or in connection with proceedings on an appeal from the Comptroller-General of Patents, Designs and Trade Marks to the Patents Court under the Patents Act 1977 (c. 37), if the person is a solicitor of the Court of Judicature of Northern Ireland.

#### *Reserved instrument activities*

- 3 (1) This paragraph applies to determine whether a person is an exempt person for the purpose of carrying on any activity which constitutes reserved instrument activities (subject to paragraph 7).
- (2) The person is exempt if the person prepares the instruments or applications in the course of the person's duty as a public officer.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (3) The person (“E”) is exempt if—
- (a) E is an individual,
  - (b) E carries on the activity at the direction and under the supervision of another individual (“P”),
  - (c) when E does so, P and E are connected, and
  - (d) P is entitled to carry on the activity, otherwise than by virtue of sub-paragraph (10).
- (4) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (3), P and E are connected if—
- (a) P is E's employer,
  - (b) P is a fellow employee of E,
  - (c) P is a manager or employee of a body which is an authorised person in relation to the activity, and E is also a manager or employee of that body.
- (5) If the person is an accredited person, the person is exempt to the extent that the activity consists of the preparation of any instrument—
- (a) which creates, or which the person believes on reasonable grounds will create, a farm business tenancy (within the meaning of the Agricultural Tenancies Act 1995 (c. 8)), or
  - (b) which relates to an existing tenancy which is, or which the person believes on reasonable grounds to be, such a tenancy.
- (6) In sub-paragraph (5) “accredited person” means a person who is—
- (a) a Fellow of the Central Association of Agricultural Valuers, or
  - (b) a Member or Fellow of the Royal Institution of Chartered Surveyors.
- (7) The person is exempt to the extent that the activity carried on by the person is also a reserved legal activity within sub-paragraph (8) and the person is—
- (a) authorised to carry on that activity (other than under Part 5) by a relevant approved regulator in relation to the activity,
  - (b) authorised to carry on that activity by a licence under Part 5, or
  - (c) an exempt person in relation to that activity by virtue of paragraph 1 or 2 of this Schedule.
- (8) The activities are—
- (a) the exercise of a right of audience;
  - (b) the conduct of litigation.
- (9) The person is exempt if the person is employed merely to engross the instrument or application.
- (10) The person is exempt if the person is an individual who carries on the activity otherwise than for, or in expectation of, any fee, gain or reward.
- (11) The person is exempt if—
- (a) the person is a person qualified to practise as a solicitor in Scotland in accordance with section 4 of the Solicitors (Scotland) Act 1980 (c. 46), and
  - (b) the reserved instrument activities fall within paragraph 5(1)(c) of Schedule 2 (preparation of certain instruments relating to real or personal property or legal proceedings).

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### *Probate activities*

- 4 (1) This paragraph applies to determine whether a person is an exempt person for the purpose of carrying on any activity which constitutes probate activities (subject to paragraph 7).
- (2) The person (“E”) is an exempt person if—
- (a) E is an individual,
  - (b) E provides the probate activities at the direction and under the supervision of another individual (“P”),
  - (c) when E does so, P and E are connected, and
  - (d) P is entitled to carry on the activity, otherwise than by virtue of sub-paragraph (4).
- (3) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (2), P and E are connected if—
- (a) P is E's employer,
  - (b) P is a fellow employee of E,
  - (c) P is a manager or employee of a body which is an authorised person in relation to the activity, and E is also a manager or employee of that body.
- (4) The person is exempt if the person is an individual who carries on the activity otherwise than for, or in expectation of, any fee, gain or reward.

#### *Notarial activities*

- 5 (1) This paragraph applies to determine whether a person is an exempt person for the purpose of carrying on any activity which constitutes notarial activities (subject to paragraph 7).
- (2) The person is exempt if the person is not an authorised person in relation to that activity under this Act, but is authorised to carry on that activity by or by virtue of any other enactment.
- (3) The person is exempt if section 14 of the Public Notaries Act 1801 (c. 79) applies to the person, and—
- (a) where that section applies by virtue of the person holding or exercising an office or appointment, the person carries on the activity for ecclesiastical purposes;
  - (b) where that section applies by virtue of the person performing a public duty or service under government, the person carries on the activity in the course of performing that duty or service.
- (4) The person is exempt if the person is an individual who carries on the notarial activities otherwise than for or in expectation of a fee, gain or reward.

#### *Administration of oaths*

- 6 (1) This paragraph applies to determine whether a person is an exempt person for the purpose of carrying on any activity which constitutes the administration of oaths (subject to paragraph 7).
- (2) The person is exempt if the person is not an authorised person in relation to that activity under this Act, but is authorised to carry on that activity by or by virtue of any other enactment.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (3) The person is exempt if the person has a commission under section 1(1) of the Commissioners for Oaths Act 1889 (c. 10).

*European lawyers*

- 7 A European lawyer (within the meaning of the European Communities (Services of Lawyers) Order 1978 (S.I. 1978/1910)) is an exempt person for the purposes of carrying on an activity which is a reserved legal activity and which the European lawyer is entitled to carry on by virtue of that order.

*Employers etc acting through exempt person*

- 8 (1) This paragraph applies where—
- (a) a person (“P”) carries on an activity (“the relevant activity”) which is a reserved legal activity,
  - (b) P carries on the relevant activity by virtue of an employee of P (“E”) carrying it on in E's capacity as such an employee, and
  - (c) E is an exempt person in relation to the relevant activity.
- (2) P is an exempt person in relation to the relevant activity to the extent that P carries on that activity by virtue of E so carrying it on.
- (3) This paragraph does not apply where E—
- (a) carries on the relevant activity at the direction and under the supervision of an authorised person in relation to that activity, and
  - (b) is exempt in relation to that activity by virtue of paragraph 1(7), 3(3) or 4(2).
- (4) If P is a body, in this paragraph references to an employee of P include references to a manager of P.

*Further exempt persons*

- 9 (1) The Lord Chancellor may, by order, amend this Schedule so as to provide—
- (a) for persons to be exempt persons in relation to any activity which is a reserved legal activity (including any activity which is a reserved legal activity by virtue of an order under section 24 (extension of reserved legal activities)),
  - (b) for persons to cease to be such persons, or
  - (c) for the amendment of any provision made in respect of an exempt person.
- (2) The Lord Chancellor may make an order under sub-paragraph (1) only on the recommendation of the Board.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## SCHEDULE 4

Section 20

### APPROVED REGULATORS

#### PART 1

##### EXISTING REGULATORS

- 1 (1) Each body listed in the first column of the Table in this paragraph is an approved regulator.
- (2) Each body so listed is an approved regulator in relation to the reserved legal activities listed in relation to it in the second column of the Table.

#### TABLE

<i>Approved regulator</i>	<i>Reserved legal activities</i>
The Law Society	The exercise of a right of audience. The conduct of litigation. Reserved instrument activities. Probate activities. The administration of oaths.
The General Council of the Bar	The exercise of a right of audience. The conduct of litigation. Reserved instrument activities. Probate activities. The administration of oaths.
The Master of the Faculties	Reserved instrument activities. Probate activities. Notarial activities. The administration of oaths.
The Institute of Legal Executives	The exercise of a right of audience. The administration of oaths.
The Council for Licensed Conveyancers	Reserved instrument activities. The administration of oaths. [ <sup>F1</sup> Probate activities.]
The Chartered Institute of Patent Attorneys	The exercise of a right of audience. The conduct of litigation. Reserved instrument activities. The administration of oaths.
The Institute of Trade Mark Attorneys	The exercise of a right of audience. The conduct of litigation. Reserved instrument activities. The administration of oaths.
The Association of Law Costs Draftsmen	The exercise of a right of audience. The conduct of litigation. The administration of oaths.



*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

[<sup>F2</sup>The Institute of Chartered Accountants of Scotland Probate activities.]

[<sup>F3</sup>The Association of Chartered Certified Accountants Probate activities.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F1** Words in Sch. 4 para. 1 Table inserted (30.12.2009) by [The Legal Services Act 2007 \(Approved Regulators\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/3233\)](#), arts. 1(1), **3(a)**

**F2** Words in Sch. 4 para. 1 Table inserted (30.12.2009) by [The Legal Services Act 2007 \(Approved Regulators\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/3233\)](#), arts. 1(1), **3(b)**

**F3** Words in Sch. 4 para. 1 Table inserted (30.12.2009) by [The Legal Services Act 2007 \(Approved Regulators\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/3233\)](#), arts. 1(1), **3(b)**

- 2
- (1) The regulatory arrangements of a listed body, as they have effect immediately before paragraph 1 comes into force, are to be treated as having been approved by the Board for the purposes of this Act at the time that paragraph comes into force.
  - (2) “Listed body” means a body listed in the first column of the Table in paragraph 1 as that Table has effect at the time that paragraph comes into force.
  - (3) Sub-paragraph (1) is without prejudice to the Board's power to give directions under section 32 (powers to direct an approved regulator to take steps in certain circumstances, including steps to amend its regulatory arrangements).

## PART 2

### DESIGNATION OF BODIES BY ORDER

#### *Application to the Board*

- 3
- (1) This paragraph applies where a body wishes to authorise persons to carry on one or more activities which constitute one or more reserved legal activities.
  - (2) The body may apply to the Board for the Board—
    - (a) to recommend that an order be made by the Lord Chancellor designating the body as an approved regulator in relation to the reserved legal activity or activities in question, and
    - (b) to approve what the body proposes as its regulatory arrangements if such an order is made (“the proposed regulatory arrangements”).
  - (3) An application under this paragraph must be made in such form and manner as the Board may specify in rules and must be accompanied by—
    - (a) a statement of the reserved legal activity or activities to which it relates,
    - (b) details of the applicant's proposed regulatory arrangements,
    - (c) such explanatory material (including material about the applicant's constitution and activities) as the applicant considers is likely to be needed for the purposes of this Part of this Schedule, and
    - (d) the prescribed fee.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (4) The prescribed fee is the fee specified in, or determined in accordance with, rules made by the Board with the consent of the Lord Chancellor.
- (5) The proposed regulatory arrangements must, in particular, include—
  - (a) details of the authority which the applicant proposes to give persons to carry on activities which are reserved legal activities and of the nature of the persons to whom the authority is to be given,
  - (b) regulations (however they may be described) as to the education and training which persons must receive, and any other requirements which must be met by or in respect of them, in order for them to be authorised, and
  - (c) rules (however they may be described) as to the conduct required of persons in carrying on any activity by virtue of the authority.
- (6) An applicant may, at any time, withdraw the application by giving notice to that effect to the Board.

#### Commencement Information

**I9** Sch. 4 para. 3 wholly in force at 1.1.2010; Sch. 4 para. 3 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 4 para. 3(1)(3)(4) in force at 1.1.2009 by S.I. 2008/3149, art. 2(b)(ii); Sch. 4 para. 3 in force otherwise at 1.1.2010 by S.I. 2009/3250, art. 2(b)(ii) (with art. 9)

#### *Dismissal of application*

- 4 (1) The Board may refuse to consider, or to continue its consideration of, an application.
- (2) The Board must make rules about the procedures and criteria that it will apply when determining whether to refuse to consider, or to continue its consideration of, an application under sub-paragraph (1).
- (3) Where the Board decides to refuse to consider, or to continue its consideration of, an application it must give the applicant notice of that decision and of its reasons for it.
- (4) The Board must publish a notice given under sub-paragraph (3).

#### Commencement Information

**I10** Sch. 4 para. 4 wholly in force at 1.1.2010; Sch. 4 para. not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 4 para. 3(1)(3)(4) in force at 1.1.2009 by S.I. 2008/3149, art. 2(b)(ii); Sch. 4 para. 4 in force otherwise at 1.1.2010 by S.I. 2009/3250 {art. 2(b)(ii)} (with art. 9)

#### *Board's duty to seek advice*

- 5 (1) The Board must give each of the persons listed in sub-paragraph (2)—
  - (a) a copy of the application and accompanying material, and
  - (b) a notice specifying a period within which any advice given under paragraphs 6 to 8 must be given.
- (2) Those persons are—
  - (a) the OFT,
  - (b) the Consumer Panel,

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (c) the Lord Chief Justice, and
- (d) such other persons as the Board considers it reasonable to consult regarding the application.

(3) In this Part of this Schedule, in relation to an application, “selected consultee” means a person within sub-paragraph (2)(d).

*Advice of Office of Fair Trading*

- 6
- (1) The OFT must give the Board such advice as the OFT thinks fit regarding whether the application should be granted.
  - (2) In deciding what advice to give, the OFT must, in particular, have regard to whether making an order under paragraph 17 in accordance with the recommendation applied for would (or would be likely to) prevent, restrict or distort competition within the market for reserved legal services to any significant extent.

*Advice of the Consumer Panel*

- 7
- (1) The Consumer Panel must give the Board such advice as the Consumer Panel thinks fit regarding whether the application should be granted.
  - (2) In deciding what advice to give, the Consumer Panel must, in particular, have regard to the likely impact on consumers of the making of an order under paragraph 17 in accordance with the recommendation applied for.

*Advice of selected consultees*

- 8
- A selected consultee may give the Board such advice as the selected consultee thinks fit in respect of the application.

*Advice of the Lord Chief Justice*

- 9
- (1) The Board must give the Lord Chief Justice—
    - (a) a copy of any advice duly given under paragraphs 6 to 8, and
    - (b) a notice specifying a period within which any advice under this paragraph must be given.
  - (2) The Lord Chief Justice must then give such advice to the Board as the Lord Chief Justice thinks fit regarding whether the application should be granted.
  - (3) In deciding what advice to give, the Lord Chief Justice must, in particular, have regard to the likely impact on the courts in England and Wales of the making of an order under paragraph 17 in accordance with the recommendation applied for.

*Information obtained by consultees*

- 10
- A person (“the consultee”) to whom a copy of the application is given under paragraph 5(1) may, for the purposes of giving advice under paragraphs 6 to 9, request the applicant or any other person to provide the consultee with such additional information as may be specified by the consultee.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### *Representations by applicant*

- 11 (1) The Board must give the applicant a copy of any advice duly given under paragraphs 6 to 9.
- (2) The applicant may make to the Board—
- (a) written representations, and
  - (b) if the Board authorises it to do so, oral representations, about the advice.
- (3) The Board must make rules governing the making of oral and written representations.
- (4) Representations under this paragraph must be made within—
- (a) the period of 28 days beginning with the day on which the copy of the advice is given to the applicant, or
  - (b) such longer period as the Board may specify in a particular case.
- (5) Where oral representations are made, the Board must prepare a report of those representations.
- (6) Before preparing that report, the Board must—
- (a) give the applicant a reasonable opportunity to comment on a draft of the report, and
  - (b) have regard to any comments duly made.

#### **Commencement Information**

**III** Sch. 4 para. 11 wholly in force at 1.1.2010; Sch. 4 para. 11 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 4 para. 11(3) in force at 1.1.2009 by S.I. 2008/3149, art. 2(b)(ii); Sch. 4 para. 11 in force otherwise at 1.1.2010 by S.I. 2009/3250, art. 2(b)(ii) (with art. 9)

### *Publication of advice and representations etc*

- 12 (1) The Board must, as soon as practicable after the end of the period within which representations under paragraph 11 may be made, publish—
- (a) any advice duly given under paragraphs 6 to 9, and
  - (b) any written representations duly made under paragraph 11 and the report (if any) prepared under that paragraph.
- (2) Nothing in sub-paragraph (1) operates—
- (a) to prevent a person who gives advice under paragraphs 6 to 9 from publishing that advice, or
  - (b) to prevent a person who makes representations under paragraph 11 from publishing those representations.
- (3) A person (“the publisher”) publishing any such material (whether under sub-paragraph (1) or otherwise) must, so far as practicable, exclude any matter which relates to the private affairs of a particular individual the publication of which, in the opinion of the publisher, would or might seriously and prejudicially affect the interests of that individual.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### *Rules governing decisions by the Board*

- 13 (1) The Board must make rules specifying how it will determine applications.
- (2) Rules under sub-paragraph (1) must, in particular, provide that the Board may grant an application in relation to a particular reserved legal activity only if it is satisfied—
- (a) that, if an order were to be made under paragraph 17 designating the body in relation to that activity, the applicant would have appropriate internal governance arrangements in place at the time the order takes effect,
  - (b) that, if such an order were to be made, the applicant would be competent, and have sufficient resources, to perform the role of approved regulator in relation to the reserved legal activity at that time,
  - (c) that the applicant's proposed regulatory arrangements make appropriate provision,
  - (d) that the applicant's proposed regulatory arrangements comply with the requirement imposed by sections 52 and 54 (resolution of regulatory conflict), and
  - (e) that those arrangements comply with the requirements imposed by sections 112 and 145 (requirements imposed in relation to the handling of complaints).
- (3) The rules made for the purposes of sub-paragraph (2)(a) must in particular require the Board to be satisfied—
- (a) that the exercise of the applicant's regulatory functions would not be prejudiced by any of its representative functions, and
  - (b) that decisions relating to the exercise of its regulatory functions would so far as reasonably practicable be taken independently from decisions relating to the exercise of its representative functions.

### *Determination of applications*

- 14 (1) After considering—
- (a) the application and accompanying material,
  - (b) any other information provided by the applicant,
  - (c) any advice duly given under paragraphs 6 to 9,
  - (d) any representations duly made under paragraph 11, and
  - (e) any other information which the Board considers relevant to the application,
- the Board must decide whether to grant the application.
- (2) Where the application relates to more than one reserved legal activity, the Board may grant the application in relation to all or any of them.
- (3) The Board must give notice of its decision to the applicant (“the decision notice”).
- (4) Where the Board decides to refuse the application (in whole or in part), the decision notice must specify the reasons for that decision.
- (5) The Board must publish the decision notice.
- 15 (1) Where an application is made under this Part, the Board must give the decision notice under paragraph 14 within the decision period.
- (2) The “decision period” is the period of 12 months beginning with the day on which the application is made to the Board.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) The Board may, before the end of the decision period, issue a notice extending that period by a period specified in the notice.
- (4) More than one notice may be issued under sub-paragraph (3), but the decision period must not exceed 16 months.
- (5) The Board may issue a notice under sub-paragraph (3) only after it has consulted—
  - (a) the OFT,
  - (b) the Consumer Panel, and
  - (c) the Lord Chief Justice.
- (6) A notice under sub-paragraph (3) must state the Board's reasons for extending the decision period.
- (7) The Board must publish any notice issued under sub-paragraph (3).

*Effect of grant of application*

- 16 (1) This paragraph applies where an application is granted in relation to a reserved legal activity or activities.
- (2) The Board must recommend to the Lord Chancellor that an order be made designating the applicant as an approved regulator in relation to the reserved legal activity or activities in question.
- (3) The Board must publish any recommendation made under sub-paragraph (2).
- (4) The Board must make available to the Lord Chancellor—
  - (a) any advice duly given under paragraphs 6 to 9,
  - (b) any written representations duly made under paragraph 11 and the report (if any) prepared under that paragraph, and
  - (c) any other material considered by the Board for the purpose of determining the application.

*Lord Chancellor's decision to make an order*

- 17 (1) Where a recommendation is made to the Lord Chancellor under paragraph 16, the Lord Chancellor may—
  - (a) make an order in accordance with the recommendation, or
  - (b) refuse to make such an order.
- (2) Where the recommendation relates to more than one reserved legal activity, the Lord Chancellor may make an order under sub-paragraph (1)(a) in relation to all or any of them.
- (3) The Lord Chancellor must—
  - (a) decide whether to make an order under this paragraph, and
  - (b) give notice of that decision (“the decision notice”) to the applicant, within the period of 90 days beginning with the day on which the recommendation was made.
- (4) If the Lord Chancellor decides not to make an order in accordance with the whole or part of the recommendation, the decision notice must state the reasons for the decision.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (5) The Lord Chancellor must publish the decision notice.

*Approval of regulatory arrangements*

- 18 (1) Where an order is made by the Lord Chancellor under paragraph 17, the applicant's proposed regulatory arrangements are at the same time treated as having been approved by the Board.
- (2) But where the order relates to one or more (but not all) of the reserved legal activities to which the application related, sub-paragraph (1) has effect as if the reference to the applicant's proposed regulatory arrangements were a reference to those arrangements excluding any provision made in respect of any activities excluded from the order.
- (3) Sub-paragraph (1) is without prejudice to the Board's power to give directions under section 32 (powers to direct an approved regulator to take steps in certain circumstances, including steps to amend its regulatory arrangements).

**PART 3**

ALTERATION OF APPROVED REGULATOR'S REGULATORY ARRANGEMENTS

*Requirement for approval*

- 19 (1) If an alteration is made of the regulatory arrangements of an approved regulator, the alteration does not have effect unless it is approved for the purposes of this Act.
- (2) An alteration is approved for the purposes of this Act if—
- (a) it is approved by virtue of paragraph 18 (approval of proposed regulatory arrangements on designation by order as approved regulator),
  - (b) it is approved by the Board under this Part of this Schedule,
  - (c) it is an exempt alteration,
  - (d) it is an alteration made in compliance with a direction under section 32,
  - (e) it is approved by virtue of paragraph 16 of Schedule 10 (approval of licensing rules on designation by order as licensing authority), or
  - (f) it is approved by virtue of paragraph 7 of Schedule 18 (approval of proposed regulatory arrangements when granting “qualifying regulator” status for the purposes of Part 5 of the Immigration and Asylum Act 1999 (c. 33)).
- (3) An exempt alteration is an alteration which the Board has directed is to be treated as exempt for the purposes of this paragraph.
- (4) A direction under sub-paragraph (3) may be specific or general and must be published by the Board.
- (5) In this Part of this Schedule, references to an “alteration” of regulatory arrangements include an addition to, or the revocation of any part of, the arrangements.
- (6) If a question arises whether approval is required by virtue of this Part of this Schedule, it is for the Board to decide.
- (7) Nothing in this Part of this Schedule applies in relation to any alteration of the regulatory arrangements of the Board in its capacity as an approved regulator (or of its licensing rules).

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

**Changes to legislation:** *Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Commencement Information

**I12** Sch. 4 para. 19 partly in force; Sch. 4 para. 19 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 4 para. 19(1)(2)(a)-(e)(3)-(7) in force at 1.1.2010 by S.I. 2009/3250, art. 2(b)(ii) (with art. 9)

### *Application to Board*

- 20 (1) An application by an approved regulator for the Board to approve an alteration or alterations of its regulatory arrangements must be made in such form and manner as the Board may specify in rules.
- (2) The application must be accompanied by—
- (a) details of such of the approved regulator's regulatory arrangements as are relevant to the application,
  - (b) details of the alteration or alterations, and
  - (c) such explanatory material as the approved regulator considers is likely to be needed for the purposes of this Part of this Schedule.

### *Initial determination*

- 21 (1) Where the Board has received an application under paragraph 20 it may—
- (a) grant the application and give the approved regulator a notice to that effect, or
  - (b) give the approved regulator a notice stating that the Board is considering whether to refuse the application (a “warning notice”).
- (2) The Board must publish any notice given by it under sub-paragraph (1)(a) or (b).
- (3) If the Board does not give the approved regulator a notice under sub-paragraph (1)(a) or (b) within the initial decision period, the application is deemed to have been granted by the Board.
- (4) The “initial decision period” means the period of 28 days beginning with the day on which the application was received by the Board.
- (5) The Board may extend the initial decision period—
- (a) with the consent of the approved regulator, or
  - (b) by giving an extension notice to the approved regulator, before the end of that period (or if it has previously been extended under this sub-paragraph, that period as so extended).
- (6) An extension notice—
- (a) must specify the period of the extension, and
  - (b) must state the Board's reasons for extending the initial decision period.
- (7) The period specified in the notice under sub-paragraph (6)(a) must end no later than the end of the period of 90 days beginning with the date on which the application was made under paragraph 20.



*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

*Advice*

- 22 (1) Where the Board has given the approved regulator a warning notice, the Board may invite such persons as it considers appropriate to give the Board advice regarding whether the application should be granted.
- (2) A person (“the consultee”) to whom an invitation is given under sub-paragraph (1) may, for the purposes of giving advice to the Board under this paragraph, request the approved regulator or any other person to provide the consultee with such additional information as may be specified by the consultee.

*Representations by applicant*

- 23 (1) The Board must give the approved regulator a copy of any advice obtained under paragraph 22.
- (2) The approved regulator may make to the Board—
- (a) written representations, and
  - (b) if the Board authorises it to do so, oral representations, about the advice.
- (3) The Board must make rules governing the making of oral and written representations.
- (4) Representations under this paragraph must be made within—
- (a) the period of 28 days beginning with the day on which the copy of the advice is given to the approved regulator, or
  - (b) such longer period as the Board may specify in a particular case.
- (5) Where oral representations are made, the Board must prepare a report of those representations.
- (6) Before preparing that report, the Board must—
- (a) give the approved regulator a reasonable opportunity to comment on a draft of the report, and
  - (b) have regard to any comments duly made.

**Commencement Information**

**I13** Sch. 4 para. 23 wholly in force at 1.1.2010; Sch. 4 para. 23 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 4 para. 23(3) in force at 1.1.2009 by S.I. 2008/3149, art. 2(b)(ii); Sch. 4 para. 23 in force otherwise at 1.1.2010 by S.I. 2009/3250, art. 2(b)(ii) (with art. 9)

*Publication of advice and representations etc*

- 24 (1) The Board must, as soon as practicable after the end of the period within which representations under paragraph 23 may be made, publish—
- (a) any advice given under paragraph 22, and
  - (b) any written representations duly made under paragraph 23 and the report (if any) prepared under that paragraph.
- (2) Nothing in sub-paragraph (1) operates—
- (a) to prevent a person who gives advice under paragraph 22 from publishing that advice, or

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) to prevent a person who makes representations under paragraph 23 from publishing those representations.
- (3) A person (“the publisher”) publishing any such material (whether under sub-paragraph (1) or otherwise) must, so far as practicable, exclude any matter which relates to the private affairs of a particular individual the publication of which, in the opinion of the publisher, would or might seriously and prejudicially affect the interests of that individual.

#### *Decision by the Board*

- 25 (1) After considering—
  - (a) the application and any accompanying material,
  - (b) any other information provided by the approved regulator,
  - (c) any advice obtained under paragraph 22,
  - (d) any representations duly made under paragraph 23, and
  - (e) any other information which the Board considers relevant to the application,the Board must decide whether to grant the application.
- (2) The Board may grant the application in whole or in part.
- (3) The Board may refuse the application only if it is satisfied that—
  - (a) granting the application would be prejudicial to the regulatory objectives,
  - (b) granting the application would be contrary to any provision made by or by virtue of this Act or any other enactment or would result in any of the designation requirements ceasing to be satisfied in relation to the approved regulator,
  - (c) granting the application would be contrary to the public interest,
  - (d) the alteration would enable the approved regulator to authorise persons to carry on activities which are reserved legal activities in relation to which it is not a relevant approved regulator,
  - (e) the alteration would enable the approved regulator to license persons under Part 5 to carry on activities which are reserved legal activities in relation to which it is not a licensing authority, or
  - (f) the alteration has been or is likely to be made otherwise than in accordance with the procedures (whether statutory or otherwise) which apply in relation to the making of the alteration.
- (4) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (3)(b) the designation requirements are—
  - (a) a requirement that the approved regulator has appropriate internal governance arrangements in place,
  - (b) a requirement that the applicant is competent, and has sufficient resources to perform the role of approved regulator in relation to the reserved legal activities in respect of which it is designated, and
  - (c) the requirements of paragraph 13(2)(c) to (e).
- (5) Sub-paragraph (3) applies in relation to any part of an application as if references to the application were to the part.
- (6) The Board must give notice of its decision (“the decision notice”) to the approved regulator.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (7) Where the Board decides to refuse the application (in whole or in part), the decision notice must specify the reasons for that decision.
- (8) The Board must publish the decision notice.

*Failure to decide application during decision period*

- 26
- (1) This paragraph applies where the Board gives an approved regulator a warning notice under paragraph 21 in respect of the approved regulator's application.
  - (2) If the Board does not give the approved regulator notice of its decision under paragraph 25 within the decision period, the application is deemed to have been granted by the Board at the end of that period.
  - (3) Subject to sub-paragraphs (4) and (5), “the decision period” means the period of 12 months beginning with the day on which the approved regulator received the warning notice.
  - (4) The Board may, on one or more occasions, give the approved regulator a notice (an “extension notice”) extending the decision period.
  - (5) But—
    - (a) an extension notice may only be given before the time when the decision period would end, but for the extension notice, and
    - (b) the total decision period must not exceed 18 months.
  - (6) The Board must publish any extension notice given by it.

*Effect of grant of application*

- 27
- (1) Where an application is granted under paragraph 21(1)(a) or (3), 25(1) or 26(2), the alteration or alterations of the regulatory arrangements to which the application relates are approved.
  - (2) Where a part of an application is granted under paragraph 25(1), the alteration or alterations of the regulatory arrangements to which the part relates are approved.
  - (3) Sub-paragraphs (1) and (2) are without prejudice to the Board's power to give directions under section 32 (power to direct an approved regulator to take steps in certain circumstances, including steps to amend its regulatory arrangements).

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## SCHEDULE 5

Section 22

### AUTHORISED PERSONS

#### PART 1

#### CONTINUITY OF RIGHTS

##### *Rights of audience and conduct of litigation*

- 1 (1) For the purposes of section 18 (authorised persons), in the case of a person who is authorised by a listed body—
- (a) to exercise a right of audience before a court in relation to any proceedings, or
  - (b) to conduct litigation in relation to any proceedings,
- it is irrelevant whether the person's authorisation was granted before or on or after the appointed day.
- (2) The “listed bodies” are—
- (a) The Law Society,
  - (b) The General Council of the Bar,
  - (c) The Chartered Institute of Patent Attorneys,
  - (d) The Institute of Trade Mark Attorneys,
  - (e) The Association of Law Costs Draftsmen, and
  - (f) for the purposes of sub-paragraph (1)(a) only, The Institute of Legal Executives.
- (3) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (1), any authority conferred by section 31 of the Courts and Legal Services Act 1990 (c. 41) (barristers and solicitors deemed to have rights of audience and rights to conduct litigation) is to be disregarded (see paragraphs 4 and 7 below).

#### **Commencement Information**

**I14** Sch. 5 para. 1 wholly in force at 1.1.2010, see s. 211 and S.I. 2009/3250, art. 2(b)(ii) (with art. 9)

##### *Conveyancing services*

- 2 (1) For the purposes of section 18, in the case of a licensed conveyancer who is authorised to carry on an activity which is a reserved instrument activity by a conveyancing licence, it is irrelevant whether the licence was granted before or on or after the appointed day.
- (2) For the purposes of this paragraph “conveyancing licence” means a licence to practise as a licensed conveyancer granted under Part 2 of the Administration of Justice Act 1985 (c. 61).

#### **Commencement Information**

**I15** Sch. 5 para. 2 wholly in force at 1.1.2010, see s. 211 and S.I. 2009/3250, art. 2(b)(ii) (with art. 9)

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### *[<sup>F4</sup>Probate activities*

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F4** Sch. 5 para. 2A inserted (30.12.2009) by The Legal Services Act 2007 (Approved Regulators) Order 2009 (S.I. 2009/3233), arts. 1(1), 4

- 2A (1) This paragraph applies to a person who, immediately before the time paragraph 1 of Schedule 4 comes into force, has an exemption from the provisions of section 23(1) of the Solicitors Act 1974 (c. 47) (preparation of papers for probate etc by unqualified person) granted by a body within sub-paragraph (3).
- (2) For the purposes of section 18, the person is to be treated as if the exemption were an authorisation to carry on probate activities granted by the body in question at the time paragraph 1 of Schedule 4 comes into force.
- (3) The bodies are—
- (a) The Council for Licensed Conveyancers;
  - (b) The Institute of Chartered Accountants of Scotland;
  - (c) The Association of Chartered Certified Accountants.]

## **PART 2**

### **RIGHTS DURING TRANSITIONAL PERIOD**

#### *The transitional period*

- 3 (1) In this Part of this Schedule references to “the transitional period” are to the period which—
- (a) begins with the appointed day (within the meaning given by paragraph 19), and
  - (b) ends with the day appointed by the Lord Chancellor by order for the purposes of this paragraph.
- (2) Different days may be appointed under sub-paragraph (1)(b) for different purposes.
- (3) An order may be made under sub-paragraph (1)(b) only on the recommendation of the Board.

#### **Commencement Information**

**I16** Sch. 5 para. 3 wholly in force at 1.1.2010, see s. 211 and S.I. 2009/3250, art. 2(b)(ii) (with art. 9)

#### *Barristers etc*

- 4 (1) During the transitional period, every barrister is deemed to be authorised by the General Council of the Bar to carry on the activities in sub-paragraph (2).
- (2) Those activities are—
- (a) the exercise of a right of audience before every court in relation to all proceedings;

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) reserved instrument activities;
  - (c) probate activities;
  - (d) the administration of oaths.
- (3) The authority conferred on a barrister by this paragraph is exercisable in accordance with, and subject to, the regulatory arrangements of the General Council of the Bar.
- (4) A person is not authorised under sub-paragraph (1) unless the person has in force a certificate issued by the General Council of the Bar authorising the person to practise as a barrister.

#### Commencement Information

**I17** Sch. 5 para. 4 wholly in force at 1.1.2010, see s. 211 and S.I. 2009/3250, art. 2(b)(ii) (subject to art. 4 and with art. 9)

- 5 (1) During the transitional period, every registered European lawyer registered with the Inns of Court and the General Council of the Bar is deemed to be authorised by the General Council of the Bar to carry on activities which—
- (a) are within paragraph 4(2), and
  - (b) the registered European lawyer is entitled to carry on under his home professional title by virtue of the European regulations.
- (2) The authority conferred on a registered European lawyer by virtue of this paragraph is exercisable in accordance with, and subject to, the regulatory arrangements of the General Council of the Bar (as they apply to the registered European lawyer by virtue of the European regulations).
- (3) In this paragraph—
- “European regulations” means the European Communities (Lawyer’s Practice) Regulations 2000 (S.I. 2000/1119);
  - “home professional title” and “registered European lawyer” have the same meaning as in the European regulations.

#### Commencement Information

**I18** Sch. 5 para. 5 wholly in force at 1.1.2010, see s. 211 and S.I. 2009/3250, art. 2(b)(ii) (with art. 9)

- 6 During the transitional period members of the Bar not in actual practice are to continue to have the rights conferred by section 102A(2) of the Patents Act 1977 (c. 37) (right of audience, etc in proceedings on appeal from the comptroller).

#### Commencement Information

**I19** Sch. 5 para. 6 wholly in force at 1.1.2010, see s. 211 and S.I. 2009/3250, art. 2(b)(ii) (with art. 9)

#### *Solicitors etc*

- 7 (1) During the transitional period—
- (a) every qualified solicitor,
  - (b) every legal partnership, and

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(c) every body recognised under section 9 of the Administration of Justice Act 1985 (c. 61) (incorporated practices) (“a recognised body”),  
is deemed to be authorised by the Law Society to carry on the activities in sub-paragraph (2).

(2) Those activities are—

- (a) the exercise of a right of audience before every court in relation to all proceedings;
- (b) the conduct of litigation in relation to every court and all proceedings;
- (c) reserved instrument activities;
- (d) probate activities;
- (e) the administration of oaths.

(3) The authority conferred on a qualified solicitor, legal partnership or recognised body by this paragraph is exercisable in accordance with, and subject to, the regulatory arrangements of the Law Society.

(4) In this paragraph—

“legal partnership” means a partnership in which a qualified solicitor, a registered European Lawyer or a body recognised under section 9 of the Administration of Justice Act 1985 (c. 61) is permitted to practise by virtue of rules made under that section or section 31 of the Solicitors Act 1974 (c. 47);

“qualified solicitor” means a person who is qualified under section 1 of the Solicitors Act 1974 to act as a solicitor;

“registered European lawyer” means a registered European lawyer within the meaning of the European Communities (Lawyer's Practice) Regulations 2000 (S.I. 2000/1119) who is registered with the Law Society.

#### Commencement Information

**I20** Sch. 5 para. 7 wholly in force at 1.1.2010; Sch. 5 para. 7 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 5 para. 7(4) in force for certain purposes at 31.3.2009 by S.I. 2009/503, art. 3, Sch. 5 para. 7 in force otherwise at 1.1.2010 by S.I. 2009/3250, art. 2(b)(i) (with art. 9)

8 (1) During the transitional period, every registered European lawyer registered with the Law Society is deemed to be authorised by the Law Society to carry on activities which—

- (a) are within paragraph 7(2), and
- (b) the registered European lawyer is entitled to carry on under his home professional title by virtue of the European regulations.

(2) The authority conferred on a registered European lawyer by virtue of this paragraph is exercisable in accordance with, and subject to, the regulatory arrangements of the Law Society (as they apply to the registered European lawyer by virtue of the European regulations).

(3) In this paragraph—

“European regulations” means the European Communities (Lawyer's Practice) Regulations 2000 (S.I. 2000/1119);

“home professional title” and “registered European lawyer” have the same meaning as in the European regulations.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Commencement Information**

**I21** Sch. 5 para. 8 wholly in force at 1.1.2010, see s. 211 and S.I. 2009/3250, art. 2(b)(ii) (with art. 9)

- 9
- (1) During the transitional period, solicitors are to continue to have the rights conferred on them by subsection (1) of section 102A of the Patents Act 1977 (c. 37) (rights of audience, etc in proceedings on appeal from the comptroller).
  - (2) During that period, registered European lawyers are to continue to have the rights conferred on them by that subsection by virtue of the European regulations.
  - (3) In this paragraph “European regulations” and “registered European lawyer” have the same meaning as in paragraph 8.

**Commencement Information**

**I22** Sch. 5 para. 9 wholly in force at 1.1.2010, see s. 211 and S.I. 2009/3250, art. 2(b)(ii) (with art. 9)

*Legal Executives*

- 10
- (1) During the transitional period, a person authorised by the Institute of Legal Executives to practise as a member of the profession of legal executives is deemed to be authorised by that Institute to administer oaths.
  - (2) The authority conferred by sub-paragraph (1) is exercisable in accordance with and subject to the regulatory arrangements of the Institute of Legal Executives.
  - (3) A person is not authorised under sub-paragraph (1) unless the person has in force a certificate issued by the Institute of Legal Executives authorising the person to practise as a legal executive.

**Commencement Information**

**I23** Sch. 5 para. 10 wholly in force at 1.1.2010, see s. 211 and S.I. 2009/3250, art. 2(b)(ii) (with art. 9)

*Licensed conveyancers*

- 11
- (1) During the transitional period every individual who holds a conveyancing licence is deemed to be authorised by the Council for Licensed Conveyancers to administer oaths.
  - (2) The authority conferred by sub-paragraph (1) is exercisable in accordance with and subject to the regulatory arrangements of the Council.
  - (3) During that period, every conveyancing partnership and every body recognised under section 32 of the Administration of Justice Act 1985 (c. 61) (bodies corporate entitled to provide conveyancing services) is deemed to be authorised by the Council—
    - (a) to carry on conveyancing services, and
    - (b) to administer oaths.
  - (4) The authority conferred by sub-paragraph (3) is exercisable in accordance with and subject to—



*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) in the case of a body recognised under section 32 of the Administration of Justice Act 1985, any condition subject to which its recognition has effect, and
  - (b) the regulatory arrangements of the Council.
- (5) In this section “conveyancing partnership” means a partnership at least some of the members of which are licensed conveyancers.
- (6) For the purposes of this paragraph a conveyancing licence is to be treated as not in force during any period when it is suspended.

#### Commencement Information

**I24** Sch. 5 para. 11 wholly in force at 1.1.2010, see s. 211 and [S.I. 2009/3250](#), [art. 2\(b\)\(ii\)](#) (with [art. 9](#))

#### *Notaries public*

- 12 (1) During the transitional period, every duly certificated notary is deemed to be authorised by the Master of the Faculties to carry on the activities in sub-paragraph (2).
- (2) Those activities are—
- (a) reserved instrument activities;
  - (b) probate activities;
  - (c) notarial activities;
  - (d) the administration of oaths.
- (3) The authority conferred by sub-paragraph (1) is exercisable in accordance with and subject to the regulatory arrangements of the Master of the Faculties.
- (4) In this paragraph “duly certificated notary” means a notary who either—
- (a) has in force a practising certificate as a solicitor issued under the Solicitors Act 1974 (c. 47), and is duly entered in the Court of Faculties of the Archbishop of Canterbury in accordance with rules made by the Master of the Faculties, or
  - (b) has in force a practising certificate as a public notary issued by the said Court of Faculties in accordance with rules so made.

#### Commencement Information

**I25** [Sch. 5 para. 12](#) wholly in force at 1.1.2010; [Sch. 5 para. 12](#) not in force at Royal Assent see [s. 211](#); [Sch. 5 para. 12\(4\)](#) in force for certain purposes at 31.3.2009 by [S.I. 2009/503](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch. 5 para. 12](#) in force otherwise at 1.1.2010 by [S.I. 2009/3250](#), [art. 2\(b\)\(ii\)](#) (with [art. 9](#))

- 13 (1) During the transitional period, a person (“P”) is an exempt person in relation to the carrying on of an activity (“the relevant activity”) which is a notarial activity if—
- (a) P carries on the relevant activity by virtue of an employee of P (“E”) carrying it on in E’s capacity as such an employee, and
  - (b) E is an authorised person in relation to the relevant activity.
- (2) If P is a body, in this paragraph references to an employee of P include references to a manager of P.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Commencement Information

**I26** Sch. 5 para. 13 wholly in force at 1.1.2010, see s. 211 and S.I. 2009/3250, art. 2(b)(ii) (with art. 9)

#### *Patent attorneys*

- 14 (1) During the transitional period, every registered patent attorney is deemed to be authorised by the Chartered Institute of Patent Attorneys to carry on reserved instrument activities.
- (2) During that period, every authorised patent attorney is deemed to be authorised by the Chartered Institute of Patent Attorneys to administer oaths.
- (3) During that period, every patent attorney body is deemed to be authorised by the Chartered Institute of Patent Attorneys to carry on the activities in sub-paragraph (4).
- (4) Those activities are any activities which are reserved legal activities within sub-paragraph (5) and which—
- (a) if the body is a partnership, any partner who is a registered patent attorney is authorised to carry on;
  - (b) if the body is a body corporate, any director who is a registered patent attorney is authorised to carry on.
- (5) Those activities are—
- (a) the exercise of a right of audience;
  - (b) the conduct of litigation;
  - (c) reserved instrument activities;
  - (d) the administration of oaths.
- (6) The authority conferred by any of sub-paragraphs (1) to (3) is exercisable in accordance with and subject to the regulatory arrangements of the Chartered Institute of Patent Attorneys.
- (7) In this paragraph—
- “authorised patent attorney” means a registered patent attorney who is authorised by the Chartered Institute of Patent Attorneys to carry on one or both of the following activities—
- (a) the exercise of a right of audience;
  - (b) the conduct of litigation;
- “patent attorney body” means—
- (a) a partnership all the partners of which are registered patent attorneys,
  - (b) a body corporate all the directors of which are registered patent attorneys,
  - (c) a partnership or body corporate which satisfies the conditions prescribed under section 279 of the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 (c. 48), or
  - (d) a body corporate to which section 276(4) of that Act applies;
- “registered patent attorney” has the meaning given by section 275(2) of that Act;

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

and, in the case of a patent attorney body to which section 276(4) of that Act applies, the reference in sub-paragraph (4)(b) to a director includes a reference to the manager (within the meaning of section 276(4) of that Act) of the company.

**Commencement Information**

**I27** Sch. 5 para. 14 wholly in force at 1.1.2010; Sch. 5 para. 14 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 5 para. 14(7) in force for certain purposes at 31.3.2009 by S.I. 2009/503, art. 3, Sch. 5 para. 14 in force otherwise at 1.1.2010 by S.I. 2009/3250, art. 2(b)(ii) (with art. 9)

- 15 (1) During the transitional period registered patent attorneys are to continue to have the rights conferred by section 102A(2) of the Patents Act 1977 (c. 37) and section 292 of the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 (c. 48).
- (2) In this paragraph “registered patent attorney” has the same meaning as in paragraph 14.

**Commencement Information**

**I28** Sch. 5 para. 15 wholly in force at 1.1.2010, see s. 211 and S.I. 2009/3250, art. 2(b)(ii) (with art. 9)

*Trade mark attorneys*

- 16 (1) During the transitional period, every registered trade mark attorney is deemed to be authorised by the Institute of Trade Mark Attorneys to carry on reserved instrument activities.
- (2) During that period, every authorised trade mark attorney is deemed to be authorised by the Institute of Trade Mark Attorneys to administer oaths.
- (3) During that period, every trade mark attorney body is deemed to be authorised by the Institute of Trade Mark Attorneys to carry on the activities in sub-paragraph (4).
- (4) Those activities are any activities which are reserved legal activities within sub-paragraph (5) and which—
- (a) if the body is a partnership, any partner who is a registered trade mark attorney is authorised to carry on, or
  - (b) if the body is a body corporate, any director who is a registered trade mark attorney is authorised to carry on.
- (5) Those activities are—
- (a) the exercise of a right of audience;
  - (b) the conduct of litigation;
  - (c) reserved instrument activities;
  - (d) the administration of oaths.
- (6) The authority conferred by any of sub-paragraphs (1) to (3) is exercisable in accordance with and subject to the regulatory arrangements of the Institute of Trade Mark Attorneys.
- (7) In this paragraph—

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

“authorised trade mark attorney” means a registered trade mark attorney who is authorised by the Institute of Trade Mark Attorneys to carry on one or both of the following activities—

- (a) the exercise of a right of audience;
- (b) the conduct of litigation;

“trade mark attorney body” means—

- (a) a partnership all the partners of which are registered trade mark attorneys,
- (b) a body corporate all the directors of which are registered trade mark attorneys, or
- (c) a partnership or body corporate which satisfies the conditions prescribed under section 85 of the Trade Marks Act 1994 (c. 26);

“registered trade mark attorney” has the same meaning as in the Trade Marks Act 1994.

#### Commencement Information

**I29** Sch. 5 para. 16 wholly in force at 1.1.2010; Sch. 5 para. 16 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 5 para. 16(7) in force for certain purposes at 31.3.2009 by S.I. 2009/503, art. 3, Sch. 5 para. 16 in force otherwise at 1.1.2010 by S.I. 2009/3250, art. 2(b)(ii) (with art. 9)

#### *Law costs draftsmen*

- 17 (1) During the transitional period, every authorised member of the Association of Law Costs Draftsmen is deemed to be authorised by that Association to administer oaths.
- (2) In this paragraph, “authorised member of the Association of Law Costs Draftsmen” means a member of that Association who has been authorised by that Association to carry on one or both of the following activities—
- (a) the exercise of a right of audience;
  - (b) the conduct of litigation.
- (3) The authority conferred by sub-paragraph (1) is exercisable in accordance with and subject to the regulatory arrangements of the Association of Law Costs Draftsmen.

#### Commencement Information

**I30** Sch. 5 para. 17 wholly in force at 1.1.2010; Sch. 5 para. 17 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 5 para. 17(2) in force for certain purposes at 31.3.2009 by S.I. 2009/503, art. 3, Sch. 5 para. 17 in force otherwise at 1.1.2010 by S.I. 2009/3250, art. 2(b)(ii) (with art. 9)

- 18 (1) During the transitional period, a person (“P”) is an exempt person in relation to the carrying on of an activity (“the relevant activity”) which is a reserved legal activity within sub-paragraph (2), if—
- (a) P carries on the relevant activity by virtue of an employee of P (“E”) carrying it on in E’s capacity as such an employee, and
  - (b) E is an authorised member of the Association of Law Costs Draftsmen (within the meaning of paragraph 17(2) of this Schedule).
- (2) The reserved legal activities mentioned in sub-paragraph (1) are—

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) the exercise of a right of audience;
- (b) the conduct of litigation;
- (c) the administration of oaths.

(3) If P is a body, in this paragraph references to an employee of P include references to a manager of P.

#### Commencement Information

**I31** Sch. 5 para. 18 wholly in force at 1.1.2010; Sch. 5 para. 18 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 5 para. 18(2) in force for certain purposes at 31.3.2009 by S.I. 2009/503, art. 3, Sch. 5 para. 18 in force otherwise at 1.1.2010 by S.I. 2009/3250, art. 2(b)(ii) (with art. 9)

### PART 3

#### INTERPRETATION

19 In this Schedule—

“the appointed day” means the day appointed for the coming into force of section 13 (entitlement to carry on a reserved legal activity);  
“conveyancing licence” has the meaning given by paragraph 2.

#### Commencement Information

**I32** Sch. 5 para. 19 wholly in force at 1.1.2010, see s. 211 and S.I. 2009/3250, art. 2(b)(ii) (with art. 9)

### SCHEDULE 6

Sections 24 and 26

#### ALTERATION OF RESERVED LEGAL ACTIVITIES

##### *Introductory*

1 In this Schedule, in relation to an activity—

“section 24 investigation” means an investigation held with a view to determining whether or not the Board should make a recommendation in respect of the activity for the purposes of section 24 (recommendations and orders to extend the reserved legal activities);

“section 26 investigation” means an investigation held with a view to determining whether or not the Board should make a recommendation in respect of the activity for the purposes of section 26 (recommendations that an activity should cease to be a reserved legal activity).

##### *Requests for Board to hold a full investigation*

2 (1) A person may—

- (a) request the Board to hold a section 24 investigation in respect of an activity,  
or

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) request the Board to hold a section 26 investigation in respect of an activity.
- (2) A request under sub-paragraph (1) must be in writing and specify the activity to which it relates.
- (3) In the case of a request for a section 24 investigation, the activity in respect of which the request is made must be a legal activity.

*Board's duty to hold preliminary inquiries in certain cases*

- 3 (1) This paragraph applies where the Board receives a request under paragraph 2, in respect of an activity, from—
  - (a) the Lord Chancellor,
  - (b) the OFT,
  - (c) the Consumer Panel, or
  - (d) the Lord Chief Justice.
- (2) The Board must—
  - (a) carry out such inquiries as it considers appropriate to enable it to determine whether it is appropriate to hold a section 24 investigation or, as the case may be, a section 26 investigation in respect of the activity, and
  - (b) make that determination within the preliminary inquiry period.
- (3) “The preliminary inquiry period” means the period of 3 months beginning with the day on which the request under paragraph 2 was received by the Board.
- (4) The Board may, before the end of the preliminary inquiry period in relation to a request, issue a notice extending that period by a period specified in the notice.
- (5) More than one notice may be issued under sub-paragraph (4), but the total preliminary inquiry period must not exceed 4 months.
- (6) A notice under sub-paragraph (4) must state the Board's reasons for extending the preliminary inquiry period.
- (7) The Board must publish a notice issued under sub-paragraph (4).

*Board's power to hold preliminary inquiries in other cases*

- 4 (1) The Board may—
  - (a) where it receives a request under paragraph 2 to which paragraph 3 does not apply, or
  - (b) in any other case where it considers it appropriate to do so, carry out such inquiries as it considers appropriate to enable it to determine whether it is appropriate to hold a section 24 investigation or a section 26 investigation in respect of an activity.
- (2) In the case of a section 24 investigation, that activity must be a legal activity.

*Advice*

- 5 (1) Before determining whether it is appropriate to hold a section 24 investigation or a section 26 investigation in respect of an activity, the Board may seek the advice of one or both of the following bodies—

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) the OFT;
    - (b) the Consumer Panel.
  - (2) The OFT or the Consumer Panel must, if its advice is sought, give the Board such advice as it thinks fit, within such reasonable period as the Board may specify.
  - (3) In deciding what advice to give—
    - (a) the OFT must, in particular, consider whether making an order under section 24 or (as the case may be) provision in accordance with a recommendation under section 26, in respect of the activity would (or would be likely to) prevent, restrict or distort competition within the market for reserved legal services to any significant extent, and
    - (b) the Consumer Panel must have regard to the likely impact which making that order or (as the case may be) provision would have on consumers.
  - (4) The OFT or the Consumer Panel may, for the purposes of giving advice under this paragraph, request any person to provide it with such information as may be specified by it.
- 6
- (1) Before determining whether it is appropriate to hold a section 24 investigation or a section 26 investigation in respect of an activity the Board may also seek the advice of the Lord Chief Justice.
  - (2) If the Board has sought advice under paragraph 5, the Board may not seek advice from the Lord Chief Justice until—
    - (a) the period for giving advice under paragraph 5 has ended, and
    - (b) it has given the Lord Chief Justice a copy of any advice duly given under that paragraph.
  - (3) If advice is sought under sub-paragraph (1), the Lord Chief Justice—
    - (a) must give the Board such advice as the Lord Chief Justice thinks fit, within such reasonable period as may be specified by the Board, and
    - (b) may, for the purposes of giving that advice, request any person to provide the Lord Chief Justice with such information as may be specified by the Lord Chief Justice.
  - (4) In deciding what advice to give, the Lord Chief Justice must, in particular, have regard to the likely impact on the courts in England and Wales of the making of an order under section 24 or (as the case may be) provision in accordance with a recommendation under section 26, in respect of the activity in question.
- 7
- (1) The Board must consider, and publish, any advice given under paragraph 5 or 6.
  - (2) Nothing in this paragraph operates to prevent a person who gives such advice from publishing it.

*Restrictions on refusing a paragraph 2 request*

- 8
- (1) This paragraph applies where—
    - (a) a request has been made under paragraph 2, and
    - (b) paragraph 3 applies to that request.
  - (2) The Board may refuse the request only if—
    - (a) the consultation requirements are satisfied, and

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) either the consent requirement is satisfied or the request was made by the Lord Chancellor.
- (3) The consultation requirements are—
  - (a) that the Board has consulted the OFT, the Consumer Panel and the Lord Chief Justice under paragraphs 5 and 6, and
  - (b) that—
    - (i) the Board has obtained advice from the OFT and the Consumer Panel or the period within which that advice is required to be given has expired, and
    - (ii) the Board has obtained advice from the Lord Chief Justice or the period within which that advice is required to be given has expired.
- (4) The consent requirement is that—
  - (a) the Board has given the Lord Chancellor a copy of any advice given under paragraph 5 or 6, and
  - (b) the Lord Chancellor has consented to the Board’s refusal of the request.

*Decision to hold investigation*

- 9 (1) This paragraph applies where the Board has decided, following inquiries under paragraph 3 or 4, to hold a section 24 investigation or a section 26 investigation in respect of an activity.
- (2) The Board must, as soon as reasonably practicable, give notice of its decision to—
  - (a) the Lord Chancellor,
  - (b) the OFT,
  - (c) the Consumer Panel, and
  - (d) the Lord Chief Justice,
 and publish the notice.
- (3) The notice must—
  - (a) state the Board's reasons for its decision to hold the investigation, and
  - (b) contain a description (in general terms) of the procedure set out in paragraphs 10 to 17 and in rules under this Schedule, including any relevant time limits.

*Duty to investigate and produce a provisional report within the investigation period*

- 10 (1) This paragraph applies where the Board has given notice under paragraph 9(2) of—
  - (a) a decision to hold a section 24 investigation, or
  - (b) a decision to hold a section 26 investigation,
 in respect of an activity.
- (2) The Board must within the investigation period—
  - (a) carry out such investigations as it considers appropriate for the purposes of enabling it to produce a provisional report in respect of the activity, and
  - (b) produce and publish such a report.
- (3) A provisional report is a report stating—



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (a) in a case within sub-paragraph (1)(a), whether or not the Board is minded to make a recommendation for the purposes of section 24 (recommendation that activity should become a reserved legal activity);
  - (b) in a case within sub-paragraph (1)(b), whether or not the Board is minded to make a recommendation for the purposes of section 26 (recommendation that activity should cease to be a reserved legal activity).
- (4) A provisional report must also state the Board's reasons for it being, or not being, minded to make the recommendation in question.

*“The investigation period”*

- 11 (1) “The investigation period” means the period of 12 months beginning with the day on which the notice was given under paragraph 9(2).
- (2) The Board may, before the end of the investigation period, issue a notice extending that period by a period specified in the notice.
- (3) More than one notice may be issued under sub-paragraph (2) but the total investigation period must not exceed 16 months.
- (4) The Board may issue a notice under sub-paragraph (2) only after it has consulted—
- (a) the OFT,
  - (b) the Consumer Panel, and
  - (c) the Lord Chief Justice.
- (5) A notice under sub-paragraph (2) must state the Board's reasons for extending the investigation period.
- (6) The Board must publish any notice issued under sub-paragraph (2).

*Supplementary provisions about the investigation*

- 12 (1) This paragraph applies for the purposes of investigations under paragraph 10(2)(a).
- (2) The Board may make rules governing the making of oral and written representations, and the giving of oral and written evidence, to the Board.
- (3) Rules under sub-paragraph (2) may (among other things) include—
- (a) provision about the time and place at which any oral evidence is to be given or oral representations are to be heard;
  - (b) provision about the period within which any written evidence is to be given or written representations are to be made.
- (4) In relation to each investigation, the Board must determine if, and to what extent—
- (a) oral evidence or representations should be heard, and
  - (b) written evidence or representations should be received.
- (5) The Board must, so far as is reasonably practicable, consider any written or oral representations duly made under this paragraph.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Commencement Information

**I33** Sch. 6 para. 12 wholly in force at 1.1.2010; Sch. 6 para. 12 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 6 para. 12(1)-(3) in force at 1.1.2009 by S.I. 2008/3149, art. 2(b)(iii); Sch. 6 para. 12 in force otherwise at 1.1.2010 by S.I. 2009/3250, art. 2(b)(ii)

### *Consideration of the provisional report*

- 13 (1) The Board may make rules governing the making to the Board of oral and written representations in respect of provisional reports.
- (2) Rules under sub-paragraph (1) may (among other things) include—
- (a) provision about the time and place at which any oral representations are to be heard;
  - (b) provision about the period within which any written representations are to be made.
- (3) The Board must exercise the power conferred by sub-paragraph (1) to make provision—
- (a) enabling written representations and, so far as is reasonably practicable, oral representations to be made by affected practitioners, and
  - (b) enabling written or oral representations to be made by bodies which represent affected practitioners.
- (4) An “affected practitioner” is a person carrying on the activity in respect of which the investigation is being held.
- 14 (1) For the purpose of making a decision under paragraph 16(1)(a) or (b), the Board must, after publication of a provisional report, determine if and to what extent further evidence should be heard or received.
- (2) The Board may make rules governing the giving of such evidence.
- (3) Rules under sub-paragraph (2) may (among other things) include—
- (a) provision about the time and place at which any oral evidence is to be given;
  - (b) provision about the period within which any written evidence is to be given.
- 15 The Board must, so far as is reasonably practicable, consider—
- (a) any written or oral representations made in accordance with rules to which paragraph 13(3) applies, and
  - (b) any other representations made in accordance with rules under paragraph 13(1), and any written or oral evidence given in accordance with rules under paragraph 14(2), which the Board considers relevant.

### *Duty to prepare final report within the final reporting period*

- 16 (1) After complying with paragraph 15, the Board must decide—
- (a) in the case of a section 24 investigation, whether or not to make a recommendation for the purposes of that section, and
  - (b) in the case of a section 26 investigation, whether or not to make a recommendation for the purposes of that section.
- (2) The Board must prepare a report (“the final report”) which sets out—

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) its decision and the reasons for it,
  - (b) where it decides to make a recommendation for the purposes of section 24 or 26, that recommendation, and
  - (c) where it decides to make a recommendation for the purposes of section 24, a statement of the provision which, in the Board's opinion, will need to be made by virtue of section 204(3) or in an order under section 208 (power to make consequential provision, transitional provision etc) if an order is made under section 24 in accordance with that recommendation.
- (3) The Board must—
- (a) give a copy of the final report to the Lord Chancellor, and
  - (b) publish that report.
- (4) The Board must comply with the obligations imposed by this paragraph within the final reporting period.

*“The final reporting period”*

- 17
- (1) “The final reporting period” means the period of 3 months beginning with the date on which the provisional report was published under paragraph 10(2).
  - (2) The Board may, before the end of the final reporting period, issue a notice extending that period by a period specified in the notice.
  - (3) More than one notice may be issued under sub-paragraph (2), but the total final reporting period must not exceed 5 months.
  - (4) The Board may issue a notice under sub-paragraph (2) only after it has consulted—
    - (a) the OFT,
    - (b) the Consumer Panel, and
    - (c) the Lord Chief Justice.
  - (5) A notice under sub-paragraph (2) must state the Board's reasons for extending the final reporting period.
  - (6) The Board must publish a notice issued under sub-paragraph (2).

*Costs*

- 18
- The Board may pay such costs of a person as the Board considers reasonable for the purpose of facilitating the giving of oral evidence or the making of oral representations, by or on behalf of that person, in accordance with rules made under this Schedule.

SCHEDULE 7

Section 33

DIRECTIONS: PROCEDURE

*Introductory*

- 1
- This Schedule applies where the Board proposes giving a direction to an approved regulator under section 32.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

*Notification of the approved regulator*

- 2 (1) The Board must give the approved regulator a notice (“a warning notice”) accompanied by a copy of the proposed direction.
- (2) The warning notice must—
  - (a) state that the Board proposes to give the approved regulator a direction in the form of the accompanying draft,
  - (b) specify why the Board is satisfied as mentioned in section 32(1) and (2), and
  - (c) specify a period within which the approved regulator may make representations with respect to the proposal.
- (3) The period specified under sub-paragraph (2)(c)—
  - (a) must begin with the date on which the warning notice is given to the approved regulator, and
  - (b) must not be less than 14 days.
- (4) The approved regulator may make to the Board—
  - (a) written representations, and
  - (b) if the Board authorises it to do so, oral representations, about the proposed direction.
- (5) The Board must make rules governing the making of oral and written representations.
- (6) The Board must consider any representations duly made by the approved regulator.
- (7) Where oral representations are duly made, the Board must prepare a report of those representations.
- (8) Before preparing that report, the Board must—
  - (a) give the approved regulator a reasonable opportunity to comment on a draft of the report, and
  - (b) have regard to any comments duly made.

**Commencement Information**

**I34** Sch. 7 para. 2 wholly in force at 1.1.2010; Sch. 7 para. 2 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 7 para. 2(5) in force at 1.1.2009 by S.I. 2008/3149, art. 2(c)(ii); Sch. 7 para. 2 in force otherwise at 1.1.2010 by S.I. 2009/3250, art. 2(c)(ii) (with art. 9)

*Board's duty to seek advice*

- 3 (1) After complying with paragraph 2, the Board must give each of the persons listed in sub-paragraph (2)—
  - (a) a copy of the warning notice and the accompanying draft direction,
  - (b) a copy of any written representations duly made under paragraph 2 and a copy of the report (if any) prepared under that paragraph, and
  - (c) a notice specifying a period within which any advice under paragraphs 4 to 7 must be given.
- (2) Those persons are—
  - (a) the Lord Chancellor,
  - (b) the OFT,

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (c) the Consumer Panel,
- (d) the Lord Chief Justice, and
- (e) such other persons as the Board considers it reasonable to consult in respect of the proposed direction.

(3) In this Schedule, in relation to a proposed direction, “selected consultee” means a person within sub-paragraph (2)(e).

*Advice of the Lord Chancellor*

4 The Lord Chancellor must give the Board such advice as the Lord Chancellor thinks fit in respect of the proposed direction.

*Advice of Office of Fair Trading*

5 (1) The OFT must give the Board such advice as it thinks fit regarding whether the proposed direction should be given.

(2) In deciding what advice to give, the OFT must, in particular, have regard to whether giving the proposed direction would (or would be likely to) prevent, restrict or distort competition within the market for reserved legal services to any significant extent.

*Advice of the Consumer Panel*

6 (1) The Consumer Panel must give the Board such advice as it thinks fit regarding whether the proposed direction should be given.

(2) In deciding what advice to give, the Consumer Panel must, in particular, have regard to the likely impact of the proposed direction on consumers.

*Advice of selected consultees*

7 A selected consultee may give the Board such advice as the selected consultee thinks fit in respect of the proposed direction.

*Advice of the Lord Chief Justice*

8 (1) The Board must give the Lord Chief Justice—

- (a) a copy of any advice duly given under paragraphs 4 to 7, and
- (b) a notice specifying a period within which any advice under this paragraph must be given.

(2) The Lord Chief Justice must then give such advice as the Lord Chief Justice thinks fit regarding whether the proposed direction should be given.

(3) In deciding what advice to give, the Lord Chief Justice must, in particular, have regard to the likely impact of the proposed direction on the courts in England and Wales.

*Consultees' powers to request information*

9 A person (“the consultee”) to whom a copy of the warning notice is given under paragraph 3(1) may, for the purposes of giving advice under paragraphs 4 to 8,

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

request the approved regulator or any other person to provide the consultee with such additional information as may be specified by the consultee.

*Representations by approved regulator*

- 10 (1) The Board must give the approved regulator a copy of any advice duly given under paragraphs 4 to 8.
- (2) The approved regulator may make to the Board—
- (a) written representations, and
  - (b) if the Board authorises it to do so, oral representations, about the advice.
- (3) The Board must make rules governing the making of oral and written representations.
- (4) Representations under this paragraph must be made within—
- (a) the period of 28 days beginning with the day on which the copy of the advice is given to the approved regulator, or
  - (b) such longer period as the Board may specify in a particular case.
- (5) Where oral representations are made, the Board must prepare a report of those representations.
- (6) Before preparing that report, the Board must—
- (a) give the approved regulator a reasonable opportunity to comment on a draft of the report, and
  - (b) have regard to any comments duly made.

**Commencement Information**

**I35** Sch. 7 para. 10 wholly in force at 1.1.2010; Sch. 7 para. 10 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 7 para. 10(3) in force at 1.1.2009 by S.I. 2008/3149, art. 2(c)(ii); Sch. 7 para. 10 in force otherwise at 1.1.2010 by S.I. 2009/3250, art. 2(c)(ii) (with art. 9)

*Publication of advice etc*

- 11 (1) The Board must, as soon as practicable after the end of the period within which representations under paragraph 10 may be made, publish—
- (a) any advice duly given under paragraphs 4 to 8, and
  - (b) any written representations duly made under paragraph 10 and the report (if any) prepared under that paragraph.
- (2) Nothing in sub-paragraph (1) operates—
- (a) to prevent a person who gives advice under paragraphs 4 to 8 from publishing that advice, or
  - (b) to prevent a person who makes representations under paragraph 10 from publishing those representations.
- (3) A person (“the publisher”) publishing any such material (whether under sub-paragraph (1) or otherwise) must, so far as practicable, exclude any matter which relates to the private affairs of a particular individual the publication of which, in

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

the opinion of the publisher, would or might seriously and prejudicially affect the interests of that individual.

#### *Decision by the Board*

- 12 (1) After considering—
- (a) any advice duly given under paragraphs 4 to 8,
  - (b) any representations duly made under paragraph 10, and
  - (c) any other information which the Board considers relevant,
- the Board must decide whether to give the approved regulator the proposed direction.
- (2) The Board must give notice of its decision (“the decision notice”) to the approved regulator.
- (3) Where the Board decides to give the proposed direction, the decision notice must—
- (a) contain the direction,
  - (b) state the time at which the direction is to take effect, and
  - (c) specify the Board's reasons for the decision to give the direction.
- (4) The Board must publish the decision notice.

## SCHEDULE 8

Sections 41 and 44

### INTERVENTION DIRECTIONS: PROCEDURE

#### **PART 1**

#### GIVING INTERVENTION DIRECTIONS

##### *Introductory*

- 1 (1) This Part of this Schedule applies where the Board proposes giving an intervention direction to an approved regulator in respect of a regulatory function.
- (2) In this Schedule “intervention direction” has the same meaning as in section 41.

##### *Notification of the approved regulator*

- 2 (1) The Board must give the approved regulator a notice (“a warning notice”) accompanied by a draft of the proposed intervention direction.
- (2) The warning notice must—
- (a) state that the Board proposes to give the approved regulator an intervention direction in the form of the accompanying draft and the time when it is proposed that direction should take effect, and
  - (b) state the reasons why the Board is satisfied of the matters mentioned in section 41(1)(a) and (b).
- (3) The Board must publish a copy of the warning notice.
- (4) The approved regulator may make to the Board—

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) written representations, and
  - (b) if the Board authorises it to do so, oral representations, about the proposed intervention direction.
- (5) The Board must make rules governing the making of written and oral representations.
- (6) Any representations under sub-paragraph (4) must be made before the end of—
- (a) the period of 28 days beginning with the day on which the warning notice is given to the approved regulator, or
  - (b) such longer period as the Board may specify in a particular case.
- (7) Where oral representations are duly made under this paragraph, the Board must prepare a report of those representations.
- (8) Before preparing that report, the Board must—
- (a) give the approved regulator a reasonable opportunity to comment on a draft of the report, and
  - (b) have regard to any comments duly made.

#### **Commencement Information**

**I36** Sch. 8 para. 2 wholly in force at 1.1.2010; Sch. 8 para. 2 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 8 para. 2(5) in force at 1.1.2009 by S.I. 2008/3149, art. 2(c)(iii); Sch. 8 para. 2 in force otherwise at 1.1.2010 by S.I. 2009/3250, art. 2(c)(ii) (with art. 9)

#### *Board's duty to seek advice*

- 3 (1) After complying with paragraph 2, the Board must give each of the persons listed in sub-paragraph (2)—
- (a) a copy of the warning notice and the accompanying draft,
  - (b) a copy of any written representations duly made under paragraph 2 and a copy of the report (if any) prepared under that paragraph, and
  - (c) a notice specifying a period within which any advice under paragraphs 4 to 7 must be given.
- (2) Those persons are—
- (a) the Lord Chancellor,
  - (b) the OFT,
  - (c) the Consumer Panel,
  - (d) the Lord Chief Justice, and
  - (e) such other persons as the Board considers it reasonable to consult in respect of the proposed intervention direction.
- (3) In this Part of this Schedule, in relation to a proposed intervention direction, “selected consultee” means a person within sub-paragraph (2)(e).

#### *Advice of the Lord Chancellor*

- 4 The Lord Chancellor must give the Board such advice as the Lord Chancellor thinks fit in respect of the proposed intervention direction.



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

*Advice of Office of Fair Trading*

- 5 (1) The OFT must give the Board such advice as it thinks fit regarding whether the proposed intervention direction should be given.
- (2) In deciding what advice to give, the OFT must, in particular, have regard to whether giving the proposed intervention direction would (or would be likely to) prevent, restrict or distort competition within the market for reserved legal services to any significant extent.

*Advice of the Consumer Panel*

- 6 (1) The Consumer Panel must give the Board such advice as it thinks fit regarding whether the proposed intervention direction should be given.
- (2) In deciding what advice to give, the Consumer Panel must, in particular, have regard to the likely impact of the proposed direction on consumers.

*Advice of selected consultees*

- 7 A selected consultee may give the Board such advice as the selected consultee thinks fit in respect of the proposed intervention direction.

*Advice of the Lord Chief Justice*

- 8 (1) The Board must give the Lord Chief Justice—
- (a) a copy of any advice duly given under paragraphs 4 to 7, and
  - (b) a notice specifying a period within which any advice under this paragraph must be given.
- (2) The Lord Chief Justice must then give such advice as the Lord Chief Justice thinks fit regarding whether the proposed intervention direction should be given.
- (3) In deciding what advice to give, the Lord Chief Justice must, in particular, have regard to the likely impact of the proposed intervention direction on the courts in England and Wales.

*Consultees' powers to request information*

- 9 A person (“the consultee”) to whom a copy of the warning notice is given under paragraph 3(1) may, for the purposes of giving advice under paragraphs 4 to 8, request the approved regulator or any other person to provide the consultee with such additional information as may be specified by the consultee.

*Representations by the approved regulator etc*

- 10 (1) The Board must—
- (a) give the approved regulator a copy of any advice duly given under paragraphs 4 to 8, and
  - (b) publish that advice together with any written representations duly made by the approved regulator under paragraph 2 and the report (if any) prepared under that paragraph.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) The approved regulator and any body within sub-paragraph (3) may make to the Board—
  - (a) written representations, and
  - (b) if the Board authorises it to do so, oral representations, about the advice.
- (3) A body is within this sub-paragraph if it represents persons authorised by the approved regulator to carry on activities which are reserved legal activities.
- (4) The Board may allow any other person to make written or oral representations about the advice.
- (5) The Board must make rules governing the making of oral and written representations.
- (6) Representations under this paragraph must be made within—
  - (a) the period of 28 days beginning with the day on which the representations and advice are published under sub-paragraph (1)(b), or
  - (b) such longer period as the Board may specify in a particular case.
- (7) Where oral representations are made, the Board must prepare a report of those representations.
- (8) Before preparing that report, the Board must—
  - (a) give each person who made oral representations a reasonable opportunity to comment on a draft of the report of those representations, and
  - (b) have regard to any comments duly made.
- (9) The Board must, as soon as reasonably practicable after the end of the period within which representations may be made under this paragraph, publish any written representations duly made and the report (if any) prepared under sub-paragraph (7).

#### **Commencement Information**

**I37** Sch. 8 para. 10 wholly in force at 1.1.2010; Sch. 8 para. 10 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 8 para. 10(5) in force at 1.1.2009 by S.I. 2008/3149, art. 2(c)(iii); Sch. 8 para. 10 in force otherwise at 1.1.2010 by S.I. 2009/3250, art. 2(c)(ii) (with art. 9)

#### *Further provision about publishing of advice and representations*

- 11 (1) Nothing in paragraph 10 operates—
  - (a) to prevent a person who gives advice under paragraphs 4 to 8 from publishing that advice, or
  - (b) to prevent a person who makes representations under paragraph 2 or 10 from publishing those representations.
- (2) A person (“the publisher”) publishing any such material (whether under paragraph 10 or otherwise) must, so far as practicable, exclude any matter which relates to the private affairs of a particular individual the publication of which, in the opinion of the publisher, would or might seriously and prejudicially affect the interests of that individual.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### *Decision by the Board*

- 12 (1) After considering—
- (a) any advice duly given under paragraphs 4 to 8,
  - (b) any representations duly made under paragraph 2 or 10, and
  - (c) any other information which the Board considers relevant,
- the Board must decide whether to give an intervention direction.
- (2) Where it decides to give an intervention direction, it may decide—
- (a) to give an intervention direction in the form of the proposed intervention direction, or
  - (b) to amend the form of the proposed intervention direction and give an intervention direction in that amended form.
- (3) The Board must give notice of its decision (“the decision notice”) to the approved regulator.
- (4) Where the Board decides to give an intervention direction, the decision notice must—
- (a) contain the intervention direction,
  - (b) state the time at which the intervention direction is to take effect,
  - (c) specify the reasons why the Board is satisfied of the matters mentioned in section 41(1)(a) and (b), and
  - (d) if the decision is under sub-paragraph (2)(b), set out the nature of any amendments made and the reasons for them.
- (5) The time specified under sub-paragraph (4)(b) must not be before—
- (a) the time specified in the warning notice in accordance with paragraph 2(2)(a), or
  - (b) the time the decision notice is given to the approved regulator.
- (6) The Board must publish the decision notice.

## **PART 2**

### REVOKING INTERVENTION DIRECTIONS

#### *Introductory*

- 13 (1) Where an intervention direction has effect in respect of a regulatory function of an approved regulator—
- (a) the approved regulator may apply to the Board for the Board to revoke the direction, or
  - (b) the Board may give the approved regulator a notice stating the Board's intention to revoke the direction.
- (2) An application under sub-paragraph (1)(a) must—
- (a) be made in the form and manner specified by the Board, and
  - (b) be accompanied by such material as the applicant considers is likely to be needed for the purposes of this Part of this Schedule.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Commencement Information

**I38** Sch. 8 para. 13 wholly in force at 1.1.2010; Sch. 8 para. 13 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 8 para. 13(2)(a) in force at 1.1.2009 by S.I. 2008/3149, art. 2(c)(iii); Sch. 8 para. 13 in force otherwise at 1.1.2010 by S.I. 2009/3250, art. 2(c)(ii) (with art. 9)

#### *Board's duty to seek advice*

- 14 (1) Where the Board has received an application under paragraph 13(1)(a), it must give each of the persons listed in sub-paragraph (3)—
- (a) a copy of the application,
  - (b) a copy of any material which accompanied it, and
  - (c) a notice specifying a period within which any advice under paragraphs 15 to 18 must be given.
- (2) Where the Board has given a notice under paragraph 13(1)(b), it must give each of the persons listed in sub-paragraph (3)—
- (a) a copy of the notice, and
  - (b) a notice specifying a period within which any advice under paragraphs 15 to 18 must be given.
- (3) The persons are—
- (a) the Lord Chancellor,
  - (b) the OFT,
  - (c) the Consumer Panel,
  - (d) the Lord Chief Justice, and
  - (e) such other persons as the Board considers it reasonable to consult in respect of the proposed revocation.
- (4) In this Part of this Schedule, in relation to an application or notice, “selected consultee” means a person within sub-paragraph (3)(e).

#### *Advice of the Lord Chancellor*

- 15 The Lord Chancellor must give the Board such advice as the Lord Chancellor thinks fit in respect of the proposed revocation.

#### *Advice of Office of Fair Trading*

- 16 (1) The OFT must give the Board such advice as it thinks fit regarding the proposed revocation.
- (2) In deciding what advice to give, the OFT must, in particular, have regard to whether revoking the intervention direction would (or would be likely to) prevent, restrict or distort competition within the market for reserved legal services to any significant extent.

#### *Advice of the Consumer Panel*

- 17 (1) The Consumer Panel must give the Board such advice as it thinks fit regarding the proposed revocation.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (2) In deciding what advice to give, the Consumer Panel must, in particular, have regard to the likely impact which revoking the intervention direction would have on consumers.

*Advice of the selected consultees*

- 18 A selected consultee may give the Board such advice as the selected consultee thinks fit in respect of the proposed revocation.

*Advice of the Lord Chief Justice*

- 19 (1) The Board must give the Lord Chief Justice—
- (a) a copy of any advice duly given under paragraphs 15 to 18, and
  - (b) a notice specifying a period within which any advice under this paragraph must be given.
- (2) The Lord Chief Justice must then give the Board such advice as the Lord Chief Justice thinks fit in respect of the proposed revocation.
- (3) In deciding what advice to give, the Lord Chief Justice must, in particular, have regard to the likely impact which revoking the intervention direction would have on the courts in England and Wales.

*Information obtained by consultees*

- 20 A person to whom a copy of the application or notice is given under paragraph 14(1) or (2) may, for the purposes of giving advice under paragraphs 15 to 19, request the approved regulator or any other person to provide that person with such additional information as may be specified by that person.

*Representations by approved regulator etc*

- 21 (1) The Board must—
- (a) give the approved regulator a copy of any advice duly given under paragraphs 15 to 19, and
  - (b) publish that advice.
- (2) The approved regulator and any body within sub-paragraph (3) may make to the Board—
- (a) written representations, and
  - (b) if the Board authorises it to do so, oral representations, about the advice.
- (3) A body is within this sub-paragraph if it represents persons authorised by the approved regulator to carry on activities which are reserved legal activities.
- (4) The Board may allow any other person to make written or oral representations about the advice.
- (5) The Board must make rules governing the making of oral and written representations.
- (6) Representations under this paragraph must be made within—

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) the period of 28 days beginning with the day on which the advice is published under sub-paragraph (1), or
  - (b) such longer period as the Board may specify in a particular case.
- (7) Where oral representations are made, the Board must prepare a report of those representations.
- (8) Before preparing that report, the Board must—
- (a) give each person who made oral representations a reasonable opportunity to comment on a draft of the report of those representations, and
  - (b) have regard to any comments duly made.
- (9) The Board must, as soon as practicable after the end of the period within which representations may be made under this paragraph, publish any written representations duly made and the report (if any) prepared under sub-paragraph (7).

#### **Commencement Information**

**I39** Sch. 8 para. 21 wholly in force at 1.1.2010; Sch. 8 para. 21 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 8 para. 21(5) in force at 1.1.2009 by S.I. 2008/3149, art. 2(c)(iii); Sch. 8 para. 21 in force otherwise at 1.1.2010 by S.I. 2009/3250, art. 2(c)(ii) (with art. 9)

#### *Further provision about publishing advice and representations*

- 22 (1) Nothing in paragraph 21 operates—
- (a) to prevent a person who gives advice under paragraphs 15 to 19 from publishing that advice, or
  - (b) to prevent a person who makes representations under paragraph 21 from publishing those representations.
- (2) A person (“the publisher”) publishing any such material (whether under paragraph 21 or otherwise) must, so far as practicable, exclude any matter which relates to the private affairs of a particular individual the publication of which, in the opinion of the publisher, would or might seriously and prejudicially affect the interests of that individual.

#### *Decision by the Board*

- 23 (1) After considering—
- (a) in a case within paragraph 13(1)(a), the application and any accompanying material,
  - (b) any advice duly given under paragraphs 15 to 19,
  - (c) any representations duly made under paragraph 21, and
  - (d) any other information which the Board considers relevant to the application or notice,
- the Board must decide whether to revoke the intervention direction in accordance with the application or notice.
- (2) The Board must give notice of its decision (“the decision notice”) to the approved regulator.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) Where the Board decides to revoke the intervention direction, the decision notice must state the time the revocation is to take effect.
- (4) Where the Board decides not to revoke the intervention direction, the decision notice must specify the reasons for that decision.
- (5) The Board must publish the decision notice.

## SCHEDULE 9

Section 45

### CANCELLATION OF DESIGNATION AS APPROVED REGULATOR

#### *Introductory*

- 1 This Schedule applies where the Board considers that it may be appropriate for it to make a recommendation under section 45(5).

#### *Notification of the approved regulator*

- 2 (1) The Board must give the approved regulator a notice (“a warning notice”) accompanied by a draft of the proposed recommendation.
- (2) The warning notice must—
  - (a) state that the Board proposes to make a recommendation under subsection (5) of section 45 in the form of the accompanying draft, and
  - (b) state the reasons why the Board is satisfied of the matters mentioned in paragraphs (a) and (b) of that subsection.
- (3) The Board must publish a copy of the warning notice.
- (4) The approved regulator may make to the Board—
  - (a) written representations, and
  - (b) if the Board authorises it to do so, oral representations, about the proposed recommendation.
- (5) The Board must make rules governing the making of oral and written representations.
- (6) Representations under this paragraph must be made within—
  - (a) the period of 28 days beginning with the day on which the warning notice is given to the approved regulator, or
  - (b) such longer period as the Board may specify in a particular case.
- (7) The Board must consider any representations duly made by the approved regulator.
- (8) Where oral representations are duly made, the Board must prepare a report of those representations.
- (9) Before preparing that report, the Board must—
  - (a) give the approved regulator a reasonable opportunity to comment on a draft of the report, and
  - (b) have regard to any comments duly made.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Commencement Information

**I40** Sch. 9 para. 2 wholly in force at 1.1.2010; Sch. 9 para. 2 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 9 para. 2(5) in force at 1.1.2009 by S.I. 2008/3149, art. 2(c)(iv); Sch. 8 para. 2 in force otherwise at 1.1.2010 by S.I. 2009/3250, art. 2(c)(ii) (with art. 9)

#### *Board's duty to seek advice*

- 3 (1) After complying with paragraph 2, the Board must give each of the persons listed in sub-paragraph (2)—
- (a) a copy of the warning notice and the accompanying draft,
  - (b) a copy of any written representations duly made by the approved regulator under paragraph 2 and a copy of the report (if any) prepared under that paragraph, and
  - (c) a notice specifying a period within which any advice under paragraphs 4 to 6 must be given.
- (2) Those persons are—
- (a) the OFT,
  - (b) the Consumer Panel,
  - (c) the Lord Chief Justice, and
  - (d) such other persons as the Board considers it reasonable to consult in respect of the proposed recommendation.
- (3) In this Schedule, in relation to a proposed recommendation, “selected consultee” means a person within sub-paragraph (2)(d).

#### *Advice of Office of Fair Trading*

- 4 (1) The OFT must give the Board such advice as it thinks fit regarding whether the proposed recommendation should be made.
- (2) In deciding what advice to give, the OFT must, in particular, have regard to whether making an order under section 45 in accordance with the proposed recommendation would (or would be likely to) prevent, restrict or distort competition within the market for reserved legal services to any significant extent.

#### *Advice of the Consumer Panel*

- 5 (1) The Consumer Panel must give the Board such advice as it thinks fit regarding whether the proposed recommendation should be made.
- (2) In deciding what advice to give, the Consumer Panel must, in particular, have regard to the likely impact on consumers of making an order under section 45 in accordance with the proposed recommendation.

#### *Advice of selected consultees*

- 6 A selected consultee may give the Board such advice as the selected consultee thinks fit in respect of the proposed recommendation.



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

*Advice of the Lord Chief Justice*

- 7 (1) The Board must give the Lord Chief Justice—
- (a) a copy of any advice duly given under paragraphs 4 to 6, and
  - (b) a notice specifying a period within which advice under this paragraph must be given.
- (2) The Lord Chief Justice must then give such advice as the Lord Chief Justice thinks fit in respect of the proposed recommendation.
- (3) In deciding what advice to give, the Lord Chief Justice must, in particular, have regard to the likely impact on the courts in England and Wales of making an order under section 45 in accordance with the proposed recommendation.

*Information obtained by consultees*

- 8 A person (“the consultee”) to whom a copy of the warning notice is given under paragraph 3(1) may, for the purposes of giving advice under paragraphs 4 to 7, request the approved regulator or any other person to provide the consultee with such additional information as may be specified by the consultee.

*Representations by the approved regulator etc*

- 9 (1) The Board must—
- (a) give the approved regulator a copy of any advice duly given under paragraphs 4 to 7, and
  - (b) publish that advice together with any written representations duly made by the approved regulator under paragraph 2 and the report (if any) prepared under that paragraph.
- (2) The approved regulator and any body within sub-paragraph (3) may make to the Board—
- (a) written representations, and
  - (b) if authorised to do so by the Board, oral representations, about the advice.
- (3) A body is within this sub-paragraph if it represents persons authorised by the approved regulator to carry on activities which are reserved legal activities.
- (4) The Board may allow any other person to make written or oral representations about the advice.
- (5) The Board may make rules governing the making to the Board of written or oral representations.
- (6) Representations under this paragraph must be made within—
- (a) the period of 28 days beginning with the day on which the representations and advice are published under sub-paragraph (1)(b), or
  - (b) such longer period as the Board may specify in a particular case.
- (7) Where oral representations are made, the Board must prepare a report of those representations.
- (8) Before preparing that report, the Board must—

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) give each person who made oral representations a reasonable opportunity to comment on a draft of the report of those representations, and
  - (b) have regard to any comments duly made.
- (9) The Board must, as soon as reasonably practicable after the end of the period within which representations under this paragraph may be made, publish any written representations duly made and the report (if any) prepared under sub-paragraph (7).

#### **Commencement Information**

**I41** Sch. 9 para. 9 wholly in force at 1.1.2010; Sch. 9 para. 9 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 9 para. 9(5) in force at 1.1.2009 by S.I. 2008/3149, art. 2(c)(iv); Sch. 9 para. 9 in force otherwise at 1.1.2010 by S.I. 2009/3250, art. 2(c)(ii) (with art. 9)

#### *Publication of advice etc*

- 10 (1) Nothing in paragraph 9 operates—
- (a) to prevent a person who gives advice under paragraphs 4 to 7 from publishing that advice, or
  - (b) to prevent a person who makes representations under paragraph 2 or 9 from publishing those representations.
- (2) A person (“the publisher”) publishing any such material (whether under paragraph 9 or otherwise) must, so far as practicable, exclude any matter which relates to the private affairs of a particular individual the publication of which, in the opinion of the publisher, would or might seriously and prejudicially affect the interests of that individual.

#### *Decision by the Board*

- 11 (1) After considering—
- (a) any advice duly given under paragraphs 4 to 7,
  - (b) any representations duly made under paragraph 2 or 9, and
  - (c) any other information which the Board considers relevant,
- the Board must decide whether to make the proposed recommendation.
- (2) The Board must give notice of its decision (“the decision notice”) to the approved regulator and to the Lord Chancellor.
- (3) If the Board decides to make the proposed recommendation, the decision notice must—
- (a) contain the recommendation, and
  - (b) state why the Board is satisfied of the matters mentioned in section 45(5) (a) and (b).
- (4) The Board must publish the decision notice.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## SCHEDULE 10

Sections 74 and 76

### DESIGNATION OF APPROVED REGULATORS AS LICENSING AUTHORITIES

#### PART 1

##### DESIGNATION OF APPROVED REGULATORS BY ORDER

###### *Application to the Board*

- 1 (1) This paragraph applies where a body wishes to become a licensing authority in relation to one or more activities which constitute one or more reserved legal activities.
- (2) The body may apply to the Board for the Board—
- (a) to recommend that an order be made by the Lord Chancellor designating the applicant as a licensing authority in relation to the reserved legal activity or activities in question, and
  - (b) to approve what the applicant proposes as its licensing rules if such an order is made (“the proposed licensing rules”).
- (3) But the body may make an application under this paragraph in relation to a reserved legal activity only if—
- (a) it is a relevant approved regulator in relation to the activity, or
  - (b) it has made an application under Part 2 of Schedule 4 (designation of approved regulators) for the Board to recommend that an order be made by the Lord Chancellor designating the body as an approved regulator in relation to the activity.
- (4) An application under this paragraph must be made in such form and manner as the Board may specify in rules and must be accompanied by—
- (a) a statement of the reserved legal activity or activities to which it relates,
  - (b) details of the applicant's proposed licensing rules,
  - (c) such explanatory material as the applicant considers is likely to be needed for the purposes of this Part of this Schedule, and
  - (d) the prescribed fee.
- (5) The prescribed fee is the fee specified in, or determined in accordance with, rules made by the Board with the consent of the Lord Chancellor.
- (6) An applicant may, at any time, withdraw the application by giving notice to that effect to the Board.

#### **Commencement Information**

**I42** Sch. 10 para. 1 partly in force; Sch. 10 para. 1 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 10 para. 1(1)(4)(5) in force at 1.1.2009 by S.I. 2008/3149, art. 2(d)(ii)

###### *Dismissal of application*

- 2 (1) The Board may refuse to consider, or to continue its consideration of, an application.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) The Board must make rules about the procedures and criteria that it will apply when determining whether to refuse to consider, or to continue its consideration of, an application under sub-paragraph (1).
- (3) Where the Board decides to refuse to consider, or to continue its consideration of, an application it must give the applicant notice of that decision and of its reasons for it.
- (4) The Board must publish a notice given under sub-paragraph (3).

#### Commencement Information

**I43** Sch. 10 para. 2 partly in force; Sch. 10 para. 2 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 10 para. 2(2) in force at 1.1.2009 by S.I. 2008/3149, art. 2(d)(ii)

VALID FROM 02/08/2010

#### *Board's duty to seek advice*

- 3
- (1) The Board must give each of the persons listed in sub-paragraph (2)—
    - (a) a copy of the application and accompanying material, and
    - (b) a notice specifying a period within which any advice given under paragraphs 4 to 6 must be given.
  - (2) Those persons are—
    - (a) the OFT,
    - (b) the Consumer Panel,
    - (c) the Lord Chief Justice, and
    - (d) such other persons as the Board considers it reasonable to consult regarding the application.
  - (3) In this Part of this Schedule, in relation to an application, “selected consultee” means a person within sub-paragraph (2)(d).

VALID FROM 02/08/2010

#### *Advice of Office of Fair Trading*

- 4
- (1) The OFT must give the Board such advice as the OFT thinks fit regarding whether the application should be granted.
  - (2) In deciding what advice to give, the OFT must, in particular, have regard to whether making an order under paragraph 15 in accordance with the recommendation applied for would (or would be likely to) prevent, restrict or distort competition within the market for reserved legal services to any significant extent.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

VALID FROM 02/08/2010

*Advice of the Consumer Panel*

- 5
- (1) The Consumer Panel must give the Board such advice as the Consumer Panel thinks fit regarding whether the application should be granted.
  - (2) In deciding what advice to give, the Consumer Panel must, in particular, have regard to the likely impact on consumers of the making of an order under paragraph 15 in accordance with the recommendation applied for.

VALID FROM 02/08/2010

*Advice of selected consultees*

- 6
- A selected consultee may give the Board such advice as the selected consultee thinks fit in respect of the application.

VALID FROM 02/08/2010

*Advice of the Lord Chief Justice*

- 7
- (1) The Board must give the Lord Chief Justice—
    - (a) a copy of any advice duly given under paragraphs 4 to 6, and
    - (b) a notice specifying a period within which any advice under this paragraph must be given.
  - (2) The Lord Chief Justice must then give such advice to the Board as the Lord Chief Justice thinks fit regarding whether the application should be granted.
  - (3) In deciding what advice to give, the Lord Chief Justice must, in particular, have regard to the likely impact on the courts in England and Wales of the making of an order under paragraph 15 in accordance with the recommendation applied for.

VALID FROM 02/08/2010

*Information obtained by consultees*

- 8
- A person (“the consultee”) to whom a copy of the application is given under paragraph 3(1) may, for the purposes of giving advice under paragraphs 4 to 7, request the applicant or any other person to provide the consultee with such additional information as may be specified by the consultee.

*Representations by applicant*

- 9
- (1) The Board must give the applicant a copy of any advice duly given under paragraphs 4 to 7.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) The applicant may make to the Board—
  - (a) written representations, and
  - (b) if the Board authorises it to do so, oral representations, about the advice.
- (3) The Board must make rules governing the making of oral and written representations.
- (4) Representations under this paragraph must be made within—
  - (a) the period of 28 days beginning with the day on which the copy of the advice is given to the applicant, or
  - (b) such longer period as the Board may specify in a particular case.
- (5) Where oral representations are made, the Board must prepare a report of those representations.
- (6) Before preparing that report, the Board must—
  - (a) give the applicant a reasonable opportunity to comment on a draft of the report, and
  - (b) have regard to any comments duly made.

#### **Commencement Information**

**I44** [Sch. 10 para. 9](#) partly in force; [Sch. 10 para. 9](#) not in force at Royal Assent see [s. 211](#); [Sch. 10 para. 9\(3\)](#) in force at 1.1.2009 by [S.I. 2008/3149](#), [art. 2\(d\)\(ii\)](#)

VALID FROM 02/08/2010

#### *Publication of advice and representations etc*

- 10 (1) The Board must, as soon as practicable after the end of the period within which representations under paragraph 9 may be made, publish—
  - (a) any advice duly given under paragraphs 4 to 7,
  - (b) any written representations duly made under paragraph 9 and the report (if any) prepared under that paragraph.
- (2) Nothing in sub-paragraph (1) operates—
  - (a) to prevent a person who gives advice under paragraphs 4 to 7 from publishing that advice, or
  - (b) to prevent a person who makes representations under paragraph 9 from publishing those representations.
- (3) A person (“the publisher”) publishing any such material (whether under sub-paragraph (1) or otherwise) must, so far as practicable, exclude any matter which relates to the private affairs of a particular individual the publication of which, in the opinion of the publisher, would or might seriously and prejudicially affect the interests of that individual.

#### *Rules governing decisions by the Board*

- 11 (1) The Board must make rules specifying how it will determine applications.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) Rules under sub-paragraph (1) must, in particular, provide that the Board may grant an application in relation to a particular reserved legal activity only if it is satisfied—
- (a) that the applicant's proposed licensing rules in relation to the activity comply with the requirements of section 83;
  - (b) that, if an order were to be made under paragraph 15 designating the body in relation to the activity, there would be a body with power to hear and determine appeals which, under this Part or the applicant's proposed licensing rules, may be made against decisions of the applicant;
  - (c) that, if an order were to be made under paragraph 15 designating the body in relation to the activity, the applicant would have appropriate internal governance arrangements in place at the time the order takes effect;
  - (d) that, if an order were made under paragraph 15 designating the body in relation to the activity, the applicant would be competent, and have sufficient resources, to perform the role of licensing authority in relation to the activity at the time the order takes effect.
- (3) The rules made for the purposes of sub-paragraph (2)(c) must in particular require the Board to be satisfied—
- (a) that the exercise of the applicant's regulatory functions would not be prejudiced by any of its representative functions, and
  - (b) that decisions relating to the exercise of its regulatory functions would so far as reasonably practicable be taken independently from decisions relating to the exercise of its representative functions.

VALID FROM 02/08/2010

*Determination of applications*

- 12 (1) After considering—
- (a) the application and accompanying material,
  - (b) any other information provided by the applicant,
  - (c) any advice duly given under paragraphs 4 to 7,
  - (d) any representations duly made under paragraph 9, and
  - (e) any other information which the Board considers relevant to the application,
- the Board must decide whether to grant the application.
- (2) Where the application relates to more than one reserved legal activity, the Board may grant the application in relation to all or any of them.
- (3) The Board must give notice of its decision to the applicant (“the decision notice”).
- (4) Where the Board decides to refuse the application (in whole or in part), the decision notice must specify the reasons for that decision.
- (5) The Board must publish the decision notice.
- 13 (1) Where an application is made under this Part, the Board must give the decision notice under paragraph 12 within the decision period.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) The “decision period” is the period of 12 months beginning with the day on which the application is made to the Board.
- (3) The Board may, before the end of the decision period, issue a notice extending that period by a period specified in the notice.
- (4) More than one notice may be issued under sub-paragraph (3), but the decision period must not exceed 16 months.
- (5) The Board may issue a notice under sub-paragraph (3) only after it has—
  - (a) consulted the OFT, the Consumer Panel and the Lord Chief Justice, and
  - (b) obtained the Lord Chancellor's consent to the extension.
- (6) A notice under sub-paragraph (3) must state the Board's reasons for extending the decision period.
- (7) The Board must publish any notice issued under sub-paragraph (3).

VALID FROM 02/08/2010

*Effect of grant of application*

- 14
- (1) This paragraph applies where an application is granted in relation to a reserved legal activity or activities.
  - (2) The Board must recommend to the Lord Chancellor that an order be made designating the applicant as a licensing authority in relation to the reserved legal activity or activities in question.
  - (3) The Board must publish any recommendation made under sub-paragraph (2).
  - (4) The Board must make available to the Lord Chancellor—
    - (a) any advice duly given under paragraphs 4 to 7,
    - (b) any written representations duly made under paragraph 9 and the report (if any) prepared under that paragraph, and
    - (c) any other material considered by the Board for the purpose of determining the application.

VALID FROM 02/08/2010

*Lord Chancellor's decision to make an order*

- 15
- (1) Where a recommendation is made to the Lord Chancellor under paragraph 14, the Lord Chancellor may—
    - (a) make an order in accordance with the recommendation, or
    - (b) refuse to make such an order.
  - (2) Where the recommendation relates to more than one reserved legal activity, the Lord Chancellor may make an order under sub-paragraph (1)(a) in relation to all or any of them.



*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) But if the application, in relation to a particular reserved legal activity, was made in reliance on paragraph 1(3)(b), the Lord Chancellor must not make an order in relation to that activity unless the Lord Chancellor has made an order under Part 2 of Schedule 4 designating the body as an approved regulator in relation to that activity.
- (4) The Lord Chancellor must—
  - (a) decide whether to make an order under this paragraph, and
  - (b) give notice of that decision (“the decision notice”) to the applicant, within the period of 90 days beginning with the day on which the recommendation was made.
- (5) If the Lord Chancellor decides not to make an order in accordance with the whole or part of the recommendation, the decision notice must state the reasons for the decision.
- (6) The Lord Chancellor must publish the decision notice.

VALID FROM 02/08/2010

#### *Approval of licensing rules*

- 16 (1) Where an order is made by the Lord Chancellor under paragraph 15, the applicant's proposed licensing rules are at the same time treated as having been approved by the Board.
- (2) But where the order relates to one or more (but not all) of the reserved legal activities to which the application related, sub-paragraph (1) has effect as if the reference to the applicant's proposed licensing rules were a reference to those rules excluding any provision made in respect of any activities excluded from the order.
- (3) Sub-paragraph (1) is without prejudice to the Board's power to give directions under section 32 (powers to direct an approved regulator to take steps in certain circumstances, including steps to amend its regulatory arrangements).

## **PART 2**

### CANCELLATION OF DESIGNATION BY ORDER

#### *Introductory*

- 17 This Part of this Schedule applies where the Board considers that it may be appropriate for it to make a recommendation under section 76(5).

#### *Notification of the licensing authority*

- 18 (1) The Board must give the licensing authority a notice (“a warning notice”) accompanied by a draft of the proposed recommendation.
- (2) The warning notice must—

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) state that the Board proposes to make a recommendation under subsection (5) of section 76 in the form of the accompanying draft, and
  - (b) state the reasons why the Board is satisfied of the matters mentioned in paragraphs (a) and (b) of that subsection.
- (3) The Board must publish a copy of the warning notice.
- (4) The licensing authority may make to the Board—
- (a) written representations, and
  - (b) if the Board authorises it to do so, oral representations, about the proposed recommendation.
- (5) The Board must make rules governing the making of oral and written representations.
- (6) Representations under this paragraph must be made within—
- (a) the period of 28 days beginning with the day on which the warning notice is given to the licensing authority, or
  - (b) such longer period as the Board may specify in a particular case.
- (7) The Board must consider any representations duly made by the licensing authority.
- (8) Where oral representations are duly made, the Board must prepare a report of those representations.
- (9) Before preparing that report, the Board must—
- (a) give the licensing authority a reasonable opportunity to comment on a draft of the report, and
  - (b) have regard to any comments duly made.

#### **Commencement Information**

**I45** [Sch. 10 para. 18](#) partly in force; [Sch. 10 para. 18](#) not in force at Royal Assent see [s. 211](#); [Sch. 10 para. 18\(5\)](#) in force at 1.1.2009 by [S.I. 2008/3149](#), [art. 2\(d\)\(ii\)](#)

VALID FROM 02/08/2010

#### *Board's duty to seek advice*

- 19 (1) After complying with paragraph 18, the Board must give each of the persons listed in sub-paragraph (2)—
- (a) a copy of the warning notice and the accompanying draft,
  - (b) a copy of any written representations duly made by the licensing authority under paragraph 18 and a copy of the report (if any) prepared under that paragraph, and
  - (c) a notice specifying a period within which any advice under paragraphs 20 to 22 must be given.
- (2) Those persons are—
- (a) the OFT,
  - (b) the Consumer Panel,
  - (c) the Lord Chief Justice, and

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(d) such other persons as the Board considers it reasonable to consult in respect of the proposed recommendation.

(3) In this Part of this Schedule, in relation to a proposed recommendation, “selected consultee” means a person within sub-paragraph (2)(d).

VALID FROM 02/08/2010

*Advice of Office of Fair Trading*

- 20 (1) The OFT must give the Board such advice as it thinks fit regarding whether the proposed recommendation should be made.
- (2) In deciding what advice to give, the OFT must, in particular, have regard to whether making an order under section 76 in accordance with the proposed recommendation would (or would be likely to) prevent, restrict or distort competition within the market for reserved legal services to any significant extent.

VALID FROM 02/08/2010

*Advice of the Consumer Panel*

- 21 (1) The Consumer Panel must give the Board such advice as it thinks fit regarding whether the proposed recommendation should be made.
- (2) In deciding what advice to give, the Consumer Panel must, in particular, have regard to the likely impact on consumers of making an order under section 76 in accordance with the proposed recommendation.

VALID FROM 02/08/2010

*Advice of selected consultees*

- 22 A selected consultee may give the Board such advice as the selected consultee thinks fit in respect of the proposed recommendation.

VALID FROM 02/08/2010

*Advice of the Lord Chief Justice*

- 23 (1) The Board must give the Lord Chief Justice—
- (a) a copy of any advice duly given under paragraphs 20 to 22, and
  - (b) a notice specifying a period within which advice under this paragraph must be given.
- (2) The Lord Chief Justice must then give such advice as the Lord Chief Justice thinks fit in respect of the proposed recommendation.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) In deciding what advice to give, the Lord Chief Justice must, in particular, have regard to the likely impact on the courts in England and Wales of making an order under section 76 in accordance with the proposed recommendation.

VALID FROM 02/08/2010

*Information obtained by consultees*

- 24 A person (“the consultee”) to whom a copy of the warning notice is given under paragraph 19(1) may, for the purposes of giving advice under paragraphs 20 to 23, request the licensing authority or any other person to provide the consultee with such additional information as may be specified by the consultee.

*Representations by the approved regulator etc*

- 25 (1) The Board must—
- (a) give the licensing authority a copy of any advice duly given under paragraphs 20 to 23, and
  - (b) publish that advice together with any written representations duly made by the licensing authority under paragraph 18 and the report (if any) prepared under that paragraph.
- (2) The licensing authority and any body within sub-paragraph (3) may make to the Board—
- (a) written representations, and
  - (b) if authorised to do so by the Board, oral representations, about the advice.
- (3) A body is within this sub-paragraph if it represents licensed bodies authorised by the licensing authority to carry on activities which are reserved legal activities.
- (4) The Board may allow any other person to make written or oral representations about the advice.
- (5) The Board may make rules governing the making to the Board of written or oral representations.
- (6) Representations under this paragraph must be made within—
- (a) the period of 28 days beginning with the day on which the representations and advice are published under sub-paragraph (1)(b), or
  - (b) such longer period as the Board may specify in a particular case.
- (7) Where oral representations are made, the Board must prepare a report of those representations.
- (8) Before preparing that report, the Board must—
- (a) give each person who made oral representations a reasonable opportunity to comment on a draft of the report of those representations, and
  - (b) have regard to any comments duly made.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (9) The Board must, as soon as reasonably practicable after the end of the period within which representations under this paragraph may be made, publish any written representations duly made and the report (if any) prepared under sub-paragraph (7).

#### Commencement Information

**I46** Sch. 10 para. 25 partly in force; Sch. 10 para. 25 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 10 para. 25(5) in force at 1.1.2009 by S.I. 2008/3149, art. 2(d)(ii)

VALID FROM 02/08/2010

#### *Publication of advice etc*

- 26 (1) Nothing in paragraph 25 operates—
- (a) to prevent a person who gives advice under paragraphs 20 to 23 from publishing that advice, or
  - (b) to prevent a person who makes representations under paragraph 18 or 25 from publishing those representations.
- (2) A person (“the publisher”) publishing any such material (whether under paragraph 25 or otherwise) must, so far as practicable, exclude any matter which relates to the private affairs of a particular individual the publication of which, in the opinion of the publisher, would or might seriously and prejudicially affect the interests of that individual.

VALID FROM 02/08/2010

#### *Decision by the Board*

- 27 (1) After considering—
- (a) any advice duly given under paragraphs 20 to 23,
  - (b) any representations duly made under paragraph 18 or 25, and
  - (c) any other information which the Board considers relevant,
- the Board must decide whether to make the proposed recommendation.
- (2) The Board must give notice of its decision (“the decision notice”) to the licensing authority and to the Lord Chancellor.
- (3) If the Board decides to make the proposed recommendation, the decision notice must—
- (a) contain the recommendation, and
  - (b) state why the Board is satisfied of the matters mentioned in section 76(5) (a) and (b).
- (4) The Board must publish the decision notice.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

VALID FROM 02/08/2010

## SCHEDULE 11

Section 83

### LICENSING RULES

#### PART 1

#### LICENSING PROCEDURE

##### *Applications for licences*

- 1 (1) Licensing rules must make provision about the form and manner in which applications for licences are to be made, and the fee (if any) which is to accompany an application.
- (2) They may make provision about—
- (a) the information which applications must contain, and
  - (b) the documents which must accompany applications.

##### *Determination of applications*

- 2 (1) Licensing rules must make the following provision about the determination of applications for licences.
- (2) Before the end of the decision period the licensing authority must—
- (a) decide the application,
  - (b) notify the applicant of its decision, and
  - (c) if it decides to refuse the application, set out in the notice the reasons for the refusal.
- (3) The decision period is the period of 6 months beginning with the day on which the application is made to the licensing authority in accordance with its licensing rules.
- (4) The licensing authority may, on one or more occasions, give the applicant a notice (an “extension notice”) extending the decision period by a period specified in the notice.
- (5) But—
- (a) an extension notice may only be given before the time when the decision period would end, but for the extension notice, and
  - (b) the total decision period must not exceed 9 months.
- (6) An extension notice must set out the reasons for the extension.

##### *Review of determination*

- 3 Licensing rules must make provision for review by the licensing authority of—
- (a) a decision to refuse an application for a licence;

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) if a licence is granted, the terms of the licence.

*Period of licence and renewal*

- 4 (1) The licensing rules may make provision—
- (a) limiting the period for which any licence is (subject to the provision of this Part of this Schedule and of the licensing rules) to remain in force;
  - (b) about the renewal of licences, including provision about the form and manner in which an application for the renewal is to be made, and the fee (if any) which is to accompany an application.
- (2) The licensing rules may make provision about—
- (a) the information which applications for renewal must contain, and
  - (b) the documents which must accompany applications.
- (3) Licensing rules must provide that a licence issued to a licensed body by the licensing authority ceases to have effect if the licensed body is issued with a licence by another licensing authority.

*Continuity of licences*

- 5 (1) Licensing rules may make provision about the effect, on a licence issued to a partnership or other unincorporated body (“the existing body”), of any change in the membership of the existing body.
- (2) The provision which may be made includes provision for the existing body's licence to be transferred where the existing body ceases to exist and another body succeeds to the whole or substantially the whole of its business.

*Modification of licences*

- 6 (1) Licensing rules must make provision about the form and manner in which applications are to be made for modification of the terms of a licence under section 86, and the fee (if any) which is to accompany the application.
- (2) They may make provision as to the circumstances in which the licensing authority may modify the terms of a licence under section 86 without an application being made.
- (3) They must make provision for review by the licensing authority of—
- (a) a decision to refuse an application for modification of the terms of a licence;
  - (b) if the licensing authority makes licensing rules under sub-paragraph (2), a decision under those rules to modify the terms of a licence.

*Modifications under section 106 or 107*

- 7 (1) Licensing rules must make provision about the form and manner in which applications are to be made under section 106 or 107, and the fee (if any) which is to accompany the application.
- (2) They may make provision as to the matters to which the licensing authority must have regard in determining whether to make an order under section 106, or to revoke or modify such an order.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) They must make provision for review by the licensing authority of—
- (a) a decision to refuse an application under those sections;
  - (b) the terms of any order made under section 106 or any decision under section 107.
- 8 (1) Licensing rules must make the following provision in relation to licensed bodies to which section 106 applies (“special bodies”), and in relation to which an order under section 106 has been made.
- (2) If a special body becomes a special body of a different kind, it must notify the licensing authority of that fact before the end of the relevant period.
  - (3) If a special body ceases to be a special body, it must notify the licensing authority of that fact before the end of the relevant period.
  - (4) The relevant period is the period of 30 days (or such longer period as may be specified in licensing rules) beginning with the day on which the body first became a special body of a different kind, or ceased to be a special body.
  - (5) Licensing rules may make provision requiring a special body to provide the licensing authority with such information relevant to the matters mentioned in section 106(5) as may be specified in the licensing rules.

## PART 2

### STRUCTURAL REQUIREMENTS

#### *Management*

- 9 (1) Licensing rules must require a licensed body to comply with the following requirement at all times.
- (2) At least one of the licensed body's managers must be a person (other than a licensed body) who is an authorised person in relation to a licensed activity.
  - (3) No manager of the licensed body may be a person who under this Part of this Act is disqualified from acting as a manager of a licensed body.
- 10 (1) Licensing rules may make further provision as to—
- (a) the managers of licensed bodies, and
  - (b) the arrangements for the management by them of the licensed body and its activities.
- (2) They must not require all the managers of a licensed body to be authorised persons in relation to a reserved legal activity.

#### *Head of Legal Practice*

- 11 (1) Licensing rules must include the following requirements.
- (2) A licensed body must at all times have an individual—
    - (a) who is designated as Head of Legal Practice, and
    - (b) whose designation is approved by the licensing authority.



*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) A designation of an individual as Head of Legal Practice has effect only while the individual—
- (a) consents to the designation,
  - (b) is an authorised person in relation to one or more of the licensed activities, and
  - (c) is not under this Part of this Act disqualified from acting as Head of Legal Practice of a licensed body.
- (4) The licensing authority may approve a person's designation only if it is satisfied that the person is a fit and proper person to carry out the duties imposed by section 91 in relation to that body.
- (5) The licensing authority may approve a person's designation in the course of determining an application for a licence under section 84.
- (6) If the licensing authority is satisfied that the person designated as a licensed body's Head of Legal Practice has breached a duty imposed by section 91, it may withdraw its approval of that person's designation.
- 12 (1) Licensing rules must make provision—
- (a) about the procedures and criteria that will be applied by the licensing authority when determining under paragraph 11(4) whether an individual is a fit and proper person;
  - (b) for a review by the licensing authority of a determination under that paragraph that an individual is not a fit and proper person;
  - (c) about the procedures and criteria that will be applied by the licensing authority in determining under paragraph 11(6) whether to withdraw its approval;
  - (d) for a review by the licensing authority of a determination under that paragraph to withdraw its approval;
  - (e) about the procedure which is to apply where a licensed body ceases to comply with the requirement imposed by virtue of paragraph 11(2).
- (2) Rules made in accordance with sub-paragraph (1)(e) may in particular provide that the requirement imposed by virtue of paragraph 11(2) is suspended until such time as may be specified by the licensing authority if the licensed body complies with such other requirements as may be specified in the rules.

*Head of Finance and Administration*

- 13 (1) Licensing rules must include the following requirements.
- (2) A licensed body must at all times have an individual—
- (a) who is designated as Head of Finance and Administration, and
  - (b) whose designation is approved by the licensing authority.
- (3) A designation of an individual as Head of Finance and Administration has effect only while the individual—
- (a) consents to the designation, and
  - (b) is not under this Part of this Act disqualified from acting as Head of Finance and Administration of a licensed body.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (4) The licensing authority may approve a person's designation only if it is satisfied that the person is a fit and proper person to carry out the duties imposed by section 92 in relation to that body.
- (5) The licensing authority may approve a person's designation in the course of determining an application for a licence under section 84.
- (6) If the licensing authority is satisfied that the person designated as a licensed body's Head of Finance and Administration has breached a duty imposed by section 92, it may withdraw its approval of that person's designation.
- 14 (1) Licensing rules must make provision—
- (a) about the procedures and criteria that will be applied by the licensing authority when determining under paragraph 13(4) whether an individual is a fit and proper person;
  - (b) for a review by the licensing authority of a determination under that paragraph that an individual is not a fit and proper person;
  - (c) about the procedures and criteria that will be applied by the licensing authority in determining under paragraph 13(6) whether to withdraw its approval;
  - (d) for a review by the licensing authority of a determination under that paragraph to withdraw its approval;
  - (e) about the procedure which is to apply where a licensed body ceases to comply with the requirement imposed by virtue of paragraph 13(2).
- (2) The rules made in accordance with sub-paragraph (1)(e) may in particular provide that the requirement imposed by virtue of sub-paragraph 13(2) is suspended until such time as may be specified by the licensing authority if the licensed body complies with such other requirements as may be specified in the rules.

### PART 3

#### PRACTICE REQUIREMENTS

##### *Practising address*

- 15 (1) Licensing rules must require a licensed body, other than one to which sub-paragraph (3) applies, at all times to have a practising address in England and Wales.
- (2) For this purpose “practising address”, in relation to a licensed body, means an address from which the body provides services which consist of or include the carrying on of reserved legal activities.
- (3) This sub-paragraph applies to a licensed body—
- (a) which is a company or limited liability partnership, and
  - (b) the registered office of which is situated in England and Wales (or in Wales).

##### *Licensed activities*

- 16 Licensing rules must provide that a licensed body may carry on a licensed activity only through a person who is entitled to carry on the activity.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

*Compliance with regulatory arrangements etc*

- 17 (1) Licensing rules must include the following provision.
- (2) A licensed body must at all times have suitable arrangements in place to ensure that—
- (a) it, and its managers and employees, comply with the duties imposed by section 176, and
  - (b) it, and any person to whom sub-paragraph (3) applies, maintain the professional principles set out in section 1(3).
- (3) This sub-paragraph applies to any manager or employee of the licensed body who is an authorised person in relation to an activity which is a reserved legal activity.
- (4) A licensed body must at all times have suitable arrangements in place to ensure that non-authorised persons subject to the duty imposed by section 90 in relation to the licensed body comply with that duty.
- (5) Licensing rules may make provision as to the arrangements which are suitable for the purposes of rules made under sub-paragraphs (2) and (4).

*Disqualified employees*

- 18 (1) Licensing rules must include the following requirement.
- (2) A licensed body may not employ a person who under this Part of this Act is disqualified from being an employee of a licensed body.

*Indemnification arrangements and compensation arrangements*

- 19 (1) For the purpose of giving effect to indemnification arrangements and compensation arrangements, licensing rules may—
- (a) authorise or require the licensing authority to establish and maintain a fund or funds;
  - (b) authorise or require the licensing authority to take out and maintain insurance with authorised insurers;
  - (c) require licensed bodies or licensed bodies of any specific description to take out and maintain insurance with authorised insurers.
- (2) In this paragraph “authorised insurer” has the same meaning as in section 64.

*Accounts*

- 20 (1) The licensing rules must make provision as to the treatment of money within sub-paragraph (2), and the keeping of accounts in respect of such money.
- (2) The money referred to in sub-paragraph (1) is money (including money held on trust) which is received, held or dealt with by the licensed body, its managers and employees for clients or other persons.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## PART 4

### REGULATION

#### *Fees*

- 21 (1) The licensing rules must require licensed bodies to pay periodical fees to the licensing authority.
- (2) The rules may provide for the payment of different fees by different descriptions of licensed body.

#### *Financial penalties*

- 22 The licensing rules must make provision as to—
- (a) the acts and omissions in respect of which the licensing authority may impose a penalty under section 95, and
  - (b) the criteria and procedure to be applied by the licensing authority in determining whether to impose a penalty under that section, and the amount of any penalty.

#### *Disqualifications*

- 23 (1) Licensing rules must make provision as to the criteria and procedure to be applied by the licensing authority in determining whether a person should be disqualified under section 99.
- (2) Licensing rules must make provision—
- (a) for a review by the licensing authority of a determination by the licensing authority that a person should be disqualified;
  - (b) as to the criteria and procedure to be applied by the licensing authority in determining whether a person's disqualification should cease to be in force;
  - (c) requiring the licensing authority to notify the Board of any determination by the licensing authority that a person should be disqualified, of the results of any review of that determination, and of any decision by the licensing authority that a person's disqualification should cease to be in force.

#### *Suspension or revocation of licence under section 101*

- 24 (1) Licensing rules must make the following provision.
- (2) The licensing authority may suspend or revoke a licensed body's licence under section 101 in the following cases.
- (3) The first case is that the licensed body becomes a body which is not a licensable body.
- (4) The second case is that the licensed body fails to comply with licensing rules made under paragraph 16 (carrying on of licensed activities).
- (5) The third case is that—
- (a) a non-authorized person holds a restricted interest in the licensed body—
    - (i) as a result of the person taking a step in circumstances where that constitutes an offence under paragraph 24(1) of Schedule 13

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (whether or not the person is charged with or convicted of an offence under that paragraph),
- (ii) in breach of conditions imposed under paragraph 17, 28, or 33 of that Schedule, or
- (iii) the person's holding of which is subject to an objection by the licensing authority under paragraph 31 or 36 of that Schedule,
- (b) if the relevant licensing rules make the provision mentioned in paragraph 38(1)(a) of that Schedule, a non-authorised person has under those rules a shareholding in the licensed body, or a parent undertaking of the licensed body, which exceeds the share limit,
- (c) if the relevant licensing rules make the provision mentioned in paragraph 38(1)(b) of that Schedule, a non-authorised person has under those rules an entitlement to exercise, or control the exercise of, voting rights in the licensed body or a parent undertaking of the licensed body which exceeds the voting limit,
- (d) if the relevant licensing rules make the provision mentioned in paragraph 38(1)(c) of that Schedule, the total proportion of shares in the licensed body or a parent undertaking of the licensed body held by non-authorised persons exceeds the limit specified in the rules, or
- (e) if the relevant licensing rules make the provision mentioned in paragraph 38(1)(d) of that Schedule, the total proportion of voting rights in the licensed body or a parent undertaking of the licensed body which non-authorised persons are entitled to exercise, or control the exercise of, exceeds the limit specified in the rules.
- (6) The fourth case is that a non-authorised person subject to the duty in section 90 in relation to the licensed body fails to comply with that duty.
- (7) The fifth case is that the licensed body, or a manager or employee of the licensed body, fails to comply with the duties imposed by section 176.
- (8) The sixth case is that—
- (a) the licensed body fails to comply with licensing rules made under paragraph 9(3) or 18 (prohibition on disqualified managers and employees), and
- (b) the manager or employee concerned was disqualified as a result of breach of a duty within section 99(4)(c) or (d).
- (9) The seventh case is that the licensed body is unable to comply with licensing rules made under—
- (a) paragraph 11 (requirement for Head of Legal Practice), or
- (b) paragraph 13 (requirement for Head of Finance and Administration).
- (10) Before suspending or revoking a licence in accordance with sub-paragraph (2), the licensing authority must give the licensed body notice of its intention.
- (11) The licensing authority may not suspend or revoke the licence before the end of the period of 28 days beginning with the day on which the notice is given to the licensed body (or any longer period specified in the notice).

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- 26 (1) Licensing rules must make provision about the criteria and procedure the licensing authority will apply in deciding whether to suspend or revoke a licence, or to end the suspension of a licence, under section 101.
- (2) They must make provision for a review by the licensing authority of a decision by the licensing authority to suspend or revoke a licence.

## SCHEDULE 12

Section 84

### ENTITLEMENT TO MAKE AN APPLICATION FOR A LICENCE TO THE BOARD

PROSPECTIVE

#### *Application to Board*

- 1 (1) A licensable body may apply to the Board for a decision that the body is entitled to make an application for a licence to the Board acting in its capacity as a licensing authority.
- (2) An application under sub-paragraph (1) may be made only on one of the grounds specified in this paragraph.
- (3) The first ground is that—
- (a) there is no competent licensing authority, and
  - (b) there is no potentially competent licensing authority.
- (4) The second ground is that—
- (a) each competent licensing authority has determined that it does not have suitable regulatory arrangements,
  - (b) if one or more competent licensing authorities have made an application to the Board under Part 3 of Schedule 4 for the approval of alterations of their regulatory arrangements, each of those authorities has determined that it will not have suitable regulatory arrangements if the application is granted, and
  - (c) each potentially competent licensing authority has determined that it will not have suitable regulatory arrangements if it becomes a competent licensing authority.
- (5) The third ground applies only in relation to a licensable body within sub-paragraph (6), and is that—
- (a) the body has made an application for a licence to each competent licensing authority which has suitable regulatory arrangements, and
  - (b) no such licensing authority is prepared to grant the body a licence on terms which are appropriate to that body, having regard to the matters in section 106(5)(a) to (c) and any other matter specified in rules made by the Board for the purposes of this sub-paragraph.
- (6) The licensable bodies within this sub-paragraph are—
- (a) a not for profit body;
  - (b) a community interest company;
  - (c) an independent trade union;

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (d) if an order under section 106(1)(e) so provides in relation to a description of body prescribed under that section, a body of that description.

*Board's decision on an application under paragraph 1*

- 2 (1) On an application under paragraph 1 the Board must, before the end of the decision period, decide whether the licensable body is entitled to make an application for a licence to the Board acting in its capacity as a licensing authority.
- (2) The decision period is—
- (a) in relation to an application on the first ground, the period of 14 days beginning with the day on which the application is made,
  - (b) in relation to an application on the second ground, the period of 28 days beginning with the day on which the application is made, and
  - (c) in relation to an application on the third ground, the period of 60 days beginning with the day on which the application is made.
- (3) The Board must give a notice to the licensable body—
- (a) stating its decision, and
  - (b) giving reasons for its decision.
- (4) The Board must make rules providing for a review of any decision made by it under this paragraph.
- (5) The rules may in particular provide that if the Board decides to grant the application, the Board may review that decision if the ground on which the application was granted ceases to be made out before the Board (in its capacity as a licensing authority) determines any application for a licence made by the licensable body.

**Commencement Information**

**I47** Sch. 12 para. 2 partly in force; Sch. 12 para. 2 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 12 para. 2(4)(5) in force at 1.1.2009 by S.I. 2008/3149, art. 2(d)(iii)

PROSPECTIVE

*Licensing authority's duty to make relevant determinations*

- 3 (1) A licensable body may apply to each competent licensing authority for—
- (a) a determination as to whether the authority has suitable regulatory arrangements;
  - (b) a statement as to whether the authority has made an application as mentioned in paragraph 1(4)(b) and if it has, a determination as to whether, if the application is granted, the authority will have suitable regulatory arrangements.
- (2) A licensable body may apply to each potentially competent licensing authority for a determination as to whether it will have suitable regulatory arrangements in place if it becomes a competent licensing authority.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) A competent (or potentially competent) licensing authority to which a licensable body makes an application under sub-paragraph (1) or (2) may require the licensable body to provide it with such information in relation to the licensable body as it may specify.
- (4) The authority may specify only information which it reasonably requires for the purpose of making the determination applied for.
- (5) A competent (or potentially competent) licensing authority to which an application is made under sub-paragraph (1) or (2) must make the determination before the end of—
  - (a) the decision period, or
  - (b) if it requires the licensable body to provide it with information under sub-paragraph (3), the period of 28 days beginning with the day on which the information is provided.
- (6) The decision period, in relation to an application under sub-paragraph (1) or (2), is the period of 28 days beginning with the day on which the application is made.

*“The Board”*

- 4 In this Schedule references to the Board, unless otherwise stated, are to the Board acting otherwise than in its capacity as a licensing authority or an approved regulator.

PROSPECTIVE

*“Competent licensing authority”*

- 5 “Competent licensing authority”, in relation to a licensable body, means an approved regulator designated as a licensing authority in relation to each reserved legal activity which the licensable body proposes to carry on.

PROSPECTIVE

*“Potentially competent licensing authority”*

- 6 (1) “Potentially competent licensing authority”, in relation to a licensable body, means an approved regulator—
- (a) which has made an application to the Board under Part 1 of Schedule 10 for a recommendation that the Lord Chancellor make a relevant designation order, and whose application has not been determined, or
  - (b) in respect of which the Board has made such a recommendation, but in respect of which no relevant designation order (or decision not to make such an order) has been made by the Lord Chancellor.
- (2) A relevant designation order is an order—
- (a) designating the approved regulator as a licensing authority in respect of one or more reserved legal activities, and



*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) the effect of which will be that the approved regulator becomes a competent licensing authority in relation to the licensable body.

PROSPECTIVE

*“Suitable regulatory arrangements”*

- 7 (1) “Suitable regulatory arrangements”, in relation to a licensable body and a competent licensing authority, means regulatory arrangements which are suitable in relation to the licensable body, having regard to—
- (a) the composition of the licensable body, including in particular the matters in sub-paragraph (2);
  - (b) the services the licensable body proposes to provide;
  - (c) if the licensable body proposes to carry on non-reserved activities, any regulation to which the carrying on of such activities is subject;
  - (d) the persons to whom the licensable body proposes to provide services.
- (2) The matters are—
- (a) the kinds of authorised persons who are managers of, or have an interest in, the licensable body,
  - (b) the proportion of persons who are managers of, or have an interest in, the licensable body who are authorised persons or authorised persons of a particular kind,
  - (c) the kinds of non-authorised persons who are managers of, or have an interest in, the licensable body,
  - (d) the proportion of persons who are managers of, or have an interest in, the licensable body who are non-authorised persons or non-authorised persons of a particular kind, and
  - (e) the kinds of non-authorised persons who have an indirect interest in the licensable body.
- (3) In sub-paragraph (2)—
- (a) “authorised person” means a person who is an authorised person in relation to any activity which is a reserved legal activity, and
  - (b) authorised persons are of different kinds if they are authorised to carry on such activities by different approved regulators.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## SCHEDULE 13

Section 89

### OWNERSHIP OF LICENSED BODIES

#### PART 1

##### INTRODUCTORY

VALID FROM 01/10/2011

##### *Restricted interests subject to approval*

- 1 (1) The holding by a non-authorised person of a restricted interest in a licensed body is subject to the approval of the relevant licensing authority in accordance with the provisions of this Schedule.
- (2) In relation to a licensed body which is a partnership, for the purposes of section 34 of the Partnership Act 1890 (c. 39) (dissolution by illegality) the holding by a non-authorised person of a restricted interest in the body without the approval of the relevant licensing authority does not make it unlawful for the business of the partnership to be carried on, or for the partners to carry it on in partnership.

VALID FROM 01/10/2011

##### *Restricted interest*

- 2 (1) “Restricted interest” means each of the following—
- (a) a material interest;
  - (b) if licensing rules are made by the relevant licensing authority under subparagraph (2), a controlled interest.
- (2) Licensing rules may specify that a controlled interest is a restricted interest for the purposes of this Schedule.

VALID FROM 01/10/2011

##### *Material interest*

- 3 (1) For the purposes of this Part of this Act, a person holds a material interest in a body (“B”) if the person—
- (a) holds at least 10% of the shares in B,
  - (b) is able to exercise significant influence over the management of B by virtue of the person's shareholding in B,
  - (c) holds at least 10% of the shares in a parent undertaking (“P”) of B,
  - (d) is able to exercise significant influence over the management of P by virtue of the person's shareholding in P,

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (e) is entitled to exercise, or control the exercise of, voting power in B which, if it consists of voting rights, constitutes at least 10% of the voting rights in B,
  - (f) is able to exercise significant influence over the management of B by virtue of the person's entitlement to exercise, or control the exercise of, voting rights in B,
  - (g) is entitled to exercise, or control the exercise of, voting power in P which, if it consists of voting rights, constitutes at least 10% of the voting rights in P,
  - (h) is able to exercise significant influence over the management of P by virtue of the person's entitlement to exercise, or control the exercise of, voting rights in P.
- (2) Licensing rules made by the relevant licensing authority may provide—
- (a) that the references in sub-paragraph (1) to 10% are to have effect as references to such lesser percentage as may be specified in the rules;
  - (b) that in relation to a partnership, for the purposes of this Part a person has a material interest in the partnership if he is a partner (whether or not the person has a material interest by virtue of sub-paragraph (1)).
- (3) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (1) “the person” means—
- (a) the person,
  - (b) any of the person's associates, or
  - (c) the person and any of the person's associates taken together.
- (4) For the purposes of this Schedule, material interests held by virtue of different paragraphs of sub-paragraph (1) are restricted interests of different kinds.

VALID FROM 01/10/2011

*Controlled interest*

- 4 (1) For the purposes of this Schedule, a person holds a controlled interest in a body (“B”) if the person—
- (a) holds at least x% of the shares in B,
  - (b) holds at least x% of the shares in a parent undertaking (“P”) of B,
  - (c) is entitled to exercise, or control the exercise of, at least x% of the voting rights in B, or
  - (d) is entitled to exercise, or control the exercise of, at least x% of the voting rights in P.
- (2) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (1) “the person” means—
- (a) the person,
  - (b) any of the person's associates, or
  - (c) the person and any of the person's associates taken together.
- (3) In sub-paragraph (1), “x” means such percentage as may be specified in licensing rules made by the relevant licensing authority under paragraph 2(2).
- (4) Licensing rules made under paragraph 2(2) may specify more than one percentage.
- (5) Any percentage specified by licensing rules made under paragraph 2(2) must be greater than—

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) 10%, or
  - (b) if the relevant licensing authority makes licensing rules under paragraph 3(2)(a), the percentage specified in those rules.
- (6) For the purposes of this Schedule—
- (a) controlled interests held by virtue of different paragraphs of sub-paragraph (1) are restricted interests of different kinds;
  - (b) if licensing rules made under paragraph 2(2) specify more than one percentage, controlled interests held by virtue of each of those percentages are restricted interests of different kinds.

VALID FROM 01/10/2011

*Associates, parent undertakings and voting power*

- 5 (1) For the purposes of this Schedule “associate”, in relation to a person (“A”) and—
- (a) a shareholding in a body (“S”), or
  - (b) an entitlement to exercise or control the exercise of voting power in a body (“V”),
- means a person listed in sub-paragraph (2).
- (2) The persons are—
- (a) the spouse or civil partner of A,
  - (b) a child or stepchild of A (if under 18),
  - (c) the trustee of any settlement under which A has a life interest in possession (in Scotland a life interest),
  - (d) an undertaking of which A is a director,
  - (e) an employee of A,
  - (f) a partner of A (except, where S or V is a partnership in which A is a partner, another partner in S or V),
  - (g) if A is an undertaking—
    - (i) a director of A,
    - (ii) a subsidiary undertaking of A, or
    - (iii) a director or employee of such a subsidiary undertaking,
  - (h) if A has with any other person an agreement or arrangement with respect to the acquisition, holding or disposal of shares or other interests in S or V (whether or not they are interests within the meaning of section 72(3)), that other person, or
  - (i) if A has with any other person an agreement or arrangement under which they undertake to act together in exercising their voting power in relation to S or V, that person.
- (3) In sub-paragraph (2)(c), “settlement” means any disposition or arrangement under which property is held on trust (or subject to a comparable obligation).
- (4) For the purposes of this Schedule—
- “parent undertaking” and “subsidiary undertaking” have the same meaning as in the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (c. 8) (see section 420 of that Act);

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

“voting power”, in relation to a body which does not have general meetings at which matters are decided by the exercise of voting rights, means the right under the constitution of the body to direct the overall policy of the body or alter the terms of its constitution.

VALID FROM 01/10/2011

*The approval requirements*

- 6 (1) For the purposes of this Schedule, the approval requirements are met in relation to a person's holding of a restricted interest if—
- (a) the person's holding of that interest does not compromise the regulatory objectives,
  - (b) the person's holding of that interest does not compromise compliance with the duties imposed by section 176 by the licensed body or persons to whom sub-paragraph (2) applies, and
  - (c) the person is otherwise a fit and proper person to hold that interest.
- (2) This sub-paragraph applies to any employee or manager of the licensed body who is an authorised person in relation to an activity which is a reserved legal activity.
- (3) In determining whether it is satisfied of the matters mentioned in sub-paragraph (1)
- (a) to (c), the licensing authority must in particular have regard to—
    - (a) the person's probity and financial position,
    - (b) whether the person is disqualified as mentioned in section 100(1), or included in the list kept by the Board under paragraph 51,
    - (c) the person's associates, and
    - (d) any other matter which may be specified in licensing rules.
- (4) Licensing rules must make provision about the procedures that will be applied by the licensing authority when determining whether it is satisfied of the matters mentioned in sub-paragraph (1)(a) to (c).

VALID FROM 01/10/2011

*Approval of multiple restricted interests*

- 7 (1) This paragraph applies if a person (“P”) holds a kind of restricted interest in a body (“B”) by virtue of—
- (a) holding a particular percentage of the shares in B or a parent undertaking of B, or
  - (b) an entitlement to exercise, or control the exercise of, a particular percentage of the voting rights in B or a parent undertaking of B.
- (2) If the relevant licensing authority approves P's holding of that interest, it is to be treated as also approving P's holding of any lesser restricted interest in B held by P.
- (3) A lesser restricted interest is a kind of restricted interest held by P by virtue of—

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) holding a smaller percentage of the shares mentioned in sub-paragraph (1)(a), or
- (b) an entitlement to exercise, or control the exercise of, a smaller percentage of the voting rights mentioned in sub-paragraph (1)(b).

*Board's power to prescribe rules*

- 8 In this Schedule “prescribed” means prescribed by rules made by the Board for the purposes of this Schedule.

VALID FROM 01/10/2011

*Lord Chancellor's power to modify*

- 9 The Lord Chancellor may, on the recommendation of the Board, by order modify—
- (a) paragraph 3 (material interest);
  - (b) paragraphs 4(2), 5, 6(3)(c), 38(3), 41(3) and 42(3) (associates).

VALID FROM 13/07/2011

**PART 2**

APPROVAL OF RESTRICTED INTERESTS ON APPLICATION FOR LICENCE

VALID FROM 01/10/2011

*Requirement to identify non-authorised persons*

- 10 (1) Where a body applies to a licensing authority for a licence, it must identify in its application—
- (a) any non-authorised person who holds a restricted interest in the body, or whom the body expects to hold such an interest when the licence is issued, and
  - (b) the kind of restricted interest held, or expected to be held, by that person.
- (2) If, before the licence is issued, there is any change in—
- (a) the identity of the non-authorised persons within sub-paragraph (1)(a), or
  - (b) the kind of restricted interest held, or expected to be held, by a person identified to the licensing authority under that sub-paragraph,
- the applicant must inform the relevant licensing authority within such period as may be specified by order made by the Lord Chancellor on the recommendation of the Board.
- 11 (1) It is an offence for a person to fail to comply with a requirement imposed on the person by paragraph 10.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- 12
- (2) A person who is guilty of an offence under sub-paragraph (1) is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale.
  - (3) It is a defence for a person charged with an offence under sub-paragraph (1) to show that at the time of the alleged offence the person had no knowledge of the facts by virtue of which the duty to notify arose.
  - (1) This paragraph applies if a person under a duty to notify imposed by paragraph 10—
    - (a) had no knowledge of the facts by virtue of which that duty arose, but
    - (b) subsequently becomes aware of those facts.
  - (2) The person must give the licensing authority the required notification within such period, after the person becomes so aware, as may be specified by order made by the Lord Chancellor on the recommendation of the Board.
  - (3) A person who fails to comply with the duty to notify imposed by sub-paragraph (2) is guilty of an offence.
  - (4) A person who is guilty of an offence under sub-paragraph (3) is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale.

VALID FROM 01/10/2011

*Requirement to notify non-authorised persons*

- 13
- (1) Where an applicant for a licence identifies a non-authorised person to a licensing authority in accordance with paragraph 10 or 12, it must give that person a notice—
    - (a) stating that it has applied for a licence and identified the person to the licensing authority in accordance with paragraph 10 or 12, and
    - (b) explaining the effect of paragraph 14.
  - (2) It is an offence for a person to fail to comply with a requirement imposed on it by sub-paragraph (1).
  - (3) A person who is guilty of an offence under sub-paragraph (2) is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale.

VALID FROM 01/10/2011

*Licensing authority's power to require information*

- 14
- (1) A licensing authority may require a non-authorised person identified to it in accordance with paragraph 10 or 12 to provide it with such documents and information as it may require.
  - (2) It is an offence for a person who is required to provide information or documents under sub-paragraph (1) knowingly to provide false or misleading information or documents.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) A person who is guilty of an offence under sub-paragraph (2) is liable—
- (a) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum, and
  - (b) on conviction on indictment, to a term of imprisonment not exceeding 2 years or a fine (or both).

VALID FROM 01/10/2011

*Licence may not be granted unless non-authorised persons approved*

- 15 (1) This paragraph applies where an applicant for a licence (“the applicant”) gives the licensing authority notification under paragraph 10 or 12 in relation to one or more non-authorised persons.
- (2) The licensing authority may not grant the application for a licence unless, in relation to each non-authorised person in respect of which notification is given (“the investor”), it approves the investor's holding of the restricted interest to which the notification relates (“the notified interest”).
- (3) Sub-paragraph (2) does not apply in relation to a non-authorised person who does not hold the notified interest when the licence is issued.
- (4) In this Part of this Schedule, “the applicant”, “the investor” and “the notified interest” are to be construed in accordance with this paragraph.

VALID FROM 01/10/2011

*Unconditional approval of notified interest*

- 16 (1) If the licensing authority is satisfied that the approval requirements are met in relation to the investor's holding of the notified interest, it must approve the investor's holding of that interest without conditions.
- (2) If the licensing authority approves the investor's holding of the notified interest without conditions, it must notify the investor and the applicant of its approval as soon as reasonably practicable.

*Conditional approval of notified interest*

- 17 (1) If the licensing authority is not satisfied that the approval requirements are met in relation to the investor's holding of the notified interest, it may approve the investor's holding of the notified interest subject to conditions.
- (2) It may do so only if it considers that, if the conditions are complied with, it will be appropriate for the investor to hold the notified interest without the approval requirements being met.
- (3) If the licensing authority proposes to approve the investor's holding of the notified interest subject to conditions it must give the investor and the applicant a warning notice.



*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (4) The warning notice must—
  - (a) specify the nature of the conditions proposed and the reasons for their imposition, and
  - (b) state that representations may be made to the licensing authority within the prescribed period.
- (5) The licensing authority must consider any representations made within the prescribed period.
- (6) If the licensing authority approves the investor's holding of the notified interest subject to conditions, it must notify the investor and the applicant of its approval as soon as reasonably practicable.
- (7) The notice must—
  - (a) specify the reasons for the imposition of the conditions, and
  - (b) explain the effect of Part 5 of this Schedule.

#### Commencement Information

**I48** Sch. 13 para. 17 partly in force; Sch. 13 para. 17 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 13 para. 17(4)(b)(5) in force for certain purposes at 1.1.2009 by [S.I. 2008/3149](#), [art. 2\(d\)\(iv\)](#)

- 18 (1) The investor and the applicant may before the end of the prescribed period appeal to the relevant appellate body against the imposition of any or all of the conditions.
- (2) The relevant appellate body may dismiss the appeal, or allow the appeal and—
  - (a) order the licensing authority to approve the investor's holding of the notified interest without conditions, or subject to such conditions as may be specified in the order, or
  - (b) remit the matter to the licensing authority.
- (3) A party to the appeal may before the end of the prescribed period appeal to the High Court on a point of law arising from the decision of the relevant appellant body, but only with the permission of the High Court.
- (4) The High Court may make such order as it thinks fit.
- (5) If the investor's holding of the notified interest is subject to conditions as a result of an order made on an appeal under this paragraph, for the purposes of this Schedule the conditions are to be treated as having been imposed under paragraph 17.

#### Commencement Information

**I49** Sch. 13 para. 18 partly in force; Sch. 13 para. 18 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 13 para. 18(1)(3) in force for certain purposes at 1.1.2009 by [S.I. 2008/3149](#), [art. 2\(d\)\(iv\)](#)

#### *Objection to notified interest*

- 19 (1) If the licensing authority is not satisfied that the approval requirements are met in relation to the investor's holding of the notified interest, it may object to the investor's holding of that interest.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) If the licensing authority proposes to object to the investor's holding of the notified interest, it must give the investor and the applicant a warning notice.
- (3) The warning notice must—
  - (a) specify the reasons for the proposed objection, and
  - (b) state that representations may be made to the licensing authority within the prescribed period.
- (4) The licensing authority must consider any representations made within the prescribed period.
- (5) If the licensing authority objects to the investor's holding of the notified interest, it must notify the investor and the applicant of its objection as soon as reasonably practicable.
- (6) The notice must—
  - (a) specify the reasons for the objection, and
  - (b) explain the effect of Part 5 of this Schedule.

#### Commencement Information

**I50** Sch. 13 para. 19 partly in force; Sch. 13 para. 19 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 13 para. 19(3)(b)(4) in force for certain purposes at 1.1.2009 by [S.I. 2008/3149](#), [art. 2\(d\)\(iv\)](#)

- 20 (1) The investor and the applicant may before the end of the prescribed period appeal to the relevant appellate body against the objection.
- (2) The relevant appellate body may dismiss the appeal, or allow the appeal and—
  - (a) order the licensing authority to approve the investor's holding of the notified interest without conditions, or subject to such conditions as may be specified in the order, or
  - (b) remit the matter to the licensing authority.
- (3) A party to the appeal may before the end of the prescribed period appeal to the High Court on a point of law arising from the decision of the relevant appellate body, but only with the permission of the High Court.
- (4) The High Court may make such order as it thinks fit.
- (5) If the investor's holding of the notified interest is subject to conditions as a result of an order made on an appeal under this paragraph, for the purposes of this Schedule the conditions are to be treated as having been imposed under paragraph 17.

#### Commencement Information

**I51** Sch. 13 para. 20 partly in force; Sch. 13 para. 20 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 13 para. 20(1)(3) in force at 1.1.2009 by [S.I. 2008/3149](#), [art. 2\(d\)\(iv\)](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### PART 3

#### APPROVAL OF RESTRICTED INTERESTS AFTER LICENCE IS ISSUED

VALID FROM 13/07/2011

#### **POWERS OF LICENSING AUTHORITY IN RELATION TO CHANGE OF INTERESTS**

VALID FROM 01/10/2011

##### *Continuing notification requirements*

- 21 (1) This paragraph applies where a non-authorised person (“the investor”)—
- (a) proposes to take a step which would result in the investor acquiring a restricted interest in a licensed body (or, if the investor already has one or more kinds of restricted interest, acquiring an additional kind of restricted interest), or
  - (b) acquires such an interest in a licensed body without taking such a step.
- (2) In a case within sub-paragraph (1)(a) the investor must notify the licensed body and the relevant licensing authority of the proposal.
- (3) In a case within sub-paragraph (1)(b) the investor must notify the licensed body and the relevant licensing authority of the acquisition within such period, after the investor becomes aware of it, as may be specified by order made by the Lord Chancellor on the recommendation of the Board.
- (4) In this Part of this Schedule—
- (a) references to “the investor” are to be construed in accordance with this paragraph, and
  - (b) references to a notifiable interest are to the restricted interest which the investor will have as a result of the step the investor proposes to take (or has as a result of the acquisition which has taken place).

VALID FROM 01/10/2011

##### *Offences in connection with paragraph 21*

- 22 (1) It is an offence for a person to fail to comply with a requirement imposed by—
- (a) paragraph 21(2), or
  - (b) paragraph 21(3).
- (2) A person who is guilty of an offence under sub-paragraph (1) is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale.
- (3) It is a defence for a person charged with an offence under sub-paragraph (1)(a) to show that at the time of the alleged offence the person had no knowledge of the facts by virtue of which the duty to notify arose.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- 23 (1) This paragraph applies if a person under the duty to notify imposed by paragraph 21(2)—
- (a) had no knowledge of the facts by virtue of which that duty arose, but
  - (b) subsequently becomes aware of those facts.
- (2) The person must give the licensed body and the licensing authority the required notification within such period, after the person becomes so aware, as may be specified by order made by the Lord Chancellor on the recommendation of the Board.
- (3) A person who fails to comply with the duty to notify imposed by sub-paragraph (2) is guilty of an offence.
- (4) A person who is guilty of an offence under sub-paragraph (3) is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale.
- 24 (1) It is an offence for a non-authorised person, who under paragraph 21(2) is required to notify the licensed body and the relevant licensing authority of a proposal to take a step, to take the step, unless the relevant licensing authority has approved the investor's holding of the notifiable interest under paragraph 27 or 28.
- (2) If paragraph 22(3) applies, the reference in sub-paragraph (1) to paragraph 21(2) is to be read as a reference to paragraph 23(2).
- (3) A person who is guilty of an offence under sub-paragraph (1) is liable—
- (a) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum, and
  - (b) on conviction on indictment, to a term of imprisonment not exceeding 2 years or a fine (or both).

*Duty of licensing authority following notification etc.*

- 25 (1) The relevant licensing authority must—
- (a) following receipt of a notification under paragraph 21(2) or (3) or 23(2), or
  - (b) if the licensing authority becomes aware that an investor has failed to comply with a notification requirement imposed by paragraph 21(2) or (3) or 23(2),
- determine which of the steps in sub-paragraph (3) to take.
- (2) The licensing authority must make the determination within such period as may be prescribed.
- (3) The steps are—
- (a) to approve the investor's holding of the notifiable interest unconditionally under paragraph 27,
  - (b) to warn the investor under paragraph 28(3) that it proposes to approve the investor's holding of the notifiable interest subject to conditions,
  - (c) to approve under paragraph 28(4) the investor's holding of the notifiable interest subject to conditions,
  - (d) to warn the investor under paragraph 31(2) that it proposes to object to the investor's holding of the notifiable interest, or
  - (e) to object under paragraph 31(3) to the investor's holding of the notifiable interest.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Commencement Information

**I52** Sch. 13 para. 25 partly in force; Sch. 13 para. 25 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 13 para. 25(2) in force for certain purposes at 1.1.2009 by S.I. 2008/3149, art. 2(d)(iv)

VALID FROM 01/10/2011

#### *Licensing authority's power to require information*

- 26
- (1) A licensing authority may require the investor to provide it with such documents and information as it may require.
  - (2) It is an offence for a person who is required to provide information or documents under sub-paragraph (1) knowingly to provide false or misleading information or documents.
  - (3) A person who is guilty of an offence under sub-paragraph (2) is liable—
    - (a) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum, and
    - (b) on conviction on indictment, to a term of imprisonment not exceeding 2 years or a fine (or both).

VALID FROM 01/10/2011

#### *Unconditional approval of notifiable interest*

- 27
- (1) If the licensing authority is satisfied that the approval requirements are met in relation to the investor's holding of the notifiable interest, it must approve the investor's holding of that interest without conditions.
  - (2) If the licensing authority approves the investor's holding of the notifiable interest without conditions, it must notify the investor and the licensed body of its approval as soon as reasonably practicable.

#### *Conditional approval of notifiable interest*

- 28
- (1) If the licensing authority is not satisfied that the approval requirements are met in relation to the investor's holding of the notifiable interest, it may approve the investor's holding of that interest subject to conditions.
  - (2) It may do so only if it considers that, if the conditions are complied with, it will be appropriate for the investor to hold the notifiable interest without the approval requirements being met.
  - (3) If the licensing authority proposes to approve the investor's holding of the notifiable interest subject to conditions it must give the investor and the licensed body a warning notice.
  - (4) But the licensing authority may approve the investor's holding of the notifiable interest subject to conditions without giving a warning notice if it considers it

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

necessary or desirable to do so for the purpose of protecting any of the regulatory objectives.

- (5) The warning notice must—
- (a) specify the nature of the conditions proposed and the reasons for their imposition, and
  - (b) state that representations may be made to the licensing authority within the prescribed period.
- (6) The licensing authority must consider any representations made within the prescribed period.
- (7) If the licensing authority approves the investor's holding of the notifiable interest subject to conditions, it must notify the investor and the licensed body of its approval as soon as reasonably practicable.
- (8) The notice must—
- (a) specify the reasons for the imposition of the conditions and (if the investor already holds the notifiable interest) the time from which they have effect, and
  - (b) explain the effect of Part 5 of this Schedule.

#### Commencement Information

**I53** Sch. 13 para. 28 partly in force; Sch. 13 para. 28 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 13 para. 28(5)(b)(6) in force for certain purposes at 1.1.2009 by [S.I. 2008/3149](#), [art. 2\(d\)\(iv\)](#)

- 29 (1) The investor and the licensed body may before the end of the prescribed period appeal to the relevant appellate body against the imposition of any or all the conditions.
- (2) The relevant appellate body may dismiss the appeal, or allow the appeal and—
- (a) order the licensing authority to approve the investor's holding of the notifiable interest without conditions, or subject to such conditions as may be specified in the order, or
  - (b) remit the matter to the licensing authority.
- (3) A party to the appeal may before the end of the prescribed period appeal to the High Court on a point of law arising from the decision of the relevant appellate body, but only with the permission of the High Court.
- (4) The High Court may make such order as it thinks fit.
- (5) If the investor's holding of the notifiable interest is subject to conditions as a result of an order made on an appeal under this paragraph, for the purposes of this Schedule the conditions are to be treated as having been imposed under paragraph 28.

#### Commencement Information

**I54** Sch. 13 para. 29 partly in force; Sch. 13 para. 29 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 13 para. 29(1)(3) in force for certain purposes at 1.1.2009 by [S.I. 2008/3149](#), [art. 2\(d\)\(iv\)](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

VALID FROM 01/10/2011

*Duration of unconditional or conditional approval*

- 30 In a case within paragraph 21(1)(a), the licensing authority's approval under paragraph 27 or 28 remains effective only if the investor acquires the notifiable interest—
- (a) before the end of such period as may be specified in the notice under paragraph 27(2) or 28(7), or
  - (b) if no such period is specified, before the end of the period of one year beginning with the date of that notice.

*Objection to acquisition of notifiable interest*

- 31 (1) If the licensing authority is not satisfied that the approval requirements are met in relation to the investor's holding of the notifiable interest, it may object to the investor's holding of that interest.
- (2) If the licensing authority proposes to object to the investor's holding of the notifiable interest, it must give the investor and the licensed body a warning notice.
- (3) But the licensing authority may object to the investor's holding of the notifiable interest without giving a warning notice if it considers it necessary or desirable to do so for the purpose of protecting any of the regulatory objectives.
- (4) The warning notice must—
- (a) specify the reasons for the proposed objection, and
  - (b) state that representations may be made to the licensing authority within the prescribed period.
- (5) The licensing authority must consider any representations made within the prescribed period.
- (6) If the licensing authority objects to the investor's holding of the notifiable interest, it must notify the investor and the licensed body of its objection as soon as reasonably practicable.
- (7) The notice must—
- (a) specify the reasons for the objection, and
  - (b) explain the effect of Part 5 of this Schedule.

**Commencement Information**

**I55** Sch. 13 para. 31 partly in force; Sch. 13 para. 31 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 13 para. 31(4)(b)(5) in force for certain purposes at 1.1.2009 by [S.I. 2008/3149](#), [art. 2\(d\)\(iv\)](#)

- 32 (1) The investor and the licensed body may before the end of the prescribed period appeal to the relevant appellate body against the objection.
- (2) The relevant appellate body may dismiss the appeal, or allow the appeal and—

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) order the licensing authority to approve the investor's holding of the notifiable interest without conditions, or subject to such conditions as may be specified in the order, or
  - (b) remit the matter to the licensing authority.
- (3) A party to the appeal may before the end of the prescribed period appeal to the High Court on a point of law arising from the decision of the relevant appellants body, but only with the permission of the High Court.
- (4) The High Court may make such order as it thinks fit.
- (5) If the investor's holding of the notifiable interest is subject to conditions as a result of an order made on an appeal under this paragraph, for the purposes of this Schedule the conditions are to be treated as having been imposed under paragraph 28.

#### Commencement Information

**I56** Sch. 13 para. 32 partly in force; Sch. 13 para. 32 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 13 para. 32(1)(3) in force for certain purposes at 1.1.2009 by [S.I. 2008/3149](#), [art. 2\(d\)\(iv\)](#)

### **POWERS OF LICENSING AUTHORITY WHERE NO CHANGE OF INTERESTS**

#### *Imposition of conditions (or further conditions) on existing restricted interest*

- 33 (1) The relevant licensing authority may impose conditions (or further conditions) on a person's holding of a restricted interest in a licensed body (or a restricted interest of a particular kind) if—
- (a) it is not satisfied that the approval requirements are met in relation to the person's holding of that interest, or
  - (b) it is satisfied that a condition imposed under paragraph 17 or 28 or this paragraph on the person's holding of that interest has not been, or is not being, complied with.
- (2) The licensing authority may act under sub-paragraph (1) only—
- (a) if it considers that, if the conditions are complied with, it will be appropriate for the investor to hold the restricted interest without the approval requirements being met, and
  - (b) before the end of such period (beginning with the time when the licensing authority becomes aware of the matters in question) as may be prescribed.
- (3) If the licensing authority proposes to impose conditions (or further conditions) on the person's holding of the restricted interest, it must give the person and the licensed body a warning notice.
- (4) But the licensing authority may impose conditions (or further conditions) on the person's holding of the restricted interest without giving a warning notice if it considers it necessary or desirable to do so for the purpose of protecting any of the regulatory objectives.
- (5) The warning notice must—
- (a) specify the nature of the conditions proposed and the reasons for their imposition, and



*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) state that representations may be made to the licensing authority within the prescribed period.
- (6) The licensing authority must consider any representations made within the prescribed period.
- (7) If the licensing authority imposes conditions (or further conditions) on the person's holding of the restricted interest, it must notify the person and the licensed body as soon as reasonably practicable.
- (8) The notice must—
  - (a) specify the reasons for the imposition of the conditions, and the time from which they are to take effect, and
  - (b) explain the effect of Part 5 of this Schedule.

#### Commencement Information

**I57** Sch. 13 para. 33 partly in force; Sch. 13 para. 33 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 13 para. 33(2)(b)(5)(b)(6) in force for certain purposes at 1.1.2009 by [S.I. 2008/3149](#), [art. 2\(d\)\(iv\)](#)

- 34
- (1) The person and the licensed body may before the end of the prescribed period appeal to the relevant appellate body against any or all of the conditions (or further conditions).
  - (2) The relevant appellate body may dismiss the appeal, or allow the appeal and—
    - (a) modify or quash the conditions imposed by the licensing authority under paragraph 33, or
    - (b) remit the matter to the licensing authority.
  - (3) A party to the appeal may before the end of the prescribed period appeal to the High Court on a point of law arising from the decision of the relevant appellate body, but only with the permission of the High Court.
  - (4) The High Court may make such order as it thinks fit.
  - (5) If the person's holding of the restricted interest is subject to any conditions as a result of an order made on an appeal under this paragraph, for the purposes of this Schedule those conditions are to be treated as having been imposed under paragraph 33.

#### Commencement Information

**I58** Sch. 13 para. 34 partly in force; Sch. 13 para. 34 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 13 para. 34(1)(3) in force for certain purposes at 1.1.2009 by [S.I. 2008/3149](#), [art. 2\(d\)\(iv\)](#)

VALID FROM 01/10/2011

#### *Variation and cancellation of conditions*

- 35
- (1) A person whose holding of a restricted interest in a licensed body is subject to a condition imposed under paragraph 17, 28 or 33 may apply to the relevant licensing authority—
    - (a) for the condition to be varied, or

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(b) for the condition to be cancelled.

- (2) The licensing authority may, on its own initiative, cancel a condition imposed under one of those paragraphs.
- (3) If the licensing authority varies or cancels a condition under this paragraph, it must notify the person and the licensed body as soon as reasonably practicable.

#### *Objection to existing restricted interest*

- 36
- (1) The relevant licensing authority may object to a person's holding of a restricted interest in a licensed body (or a restricted interest of a particular kind) if—
    - (a) it is not satisfied that the approval requirements are met in relation to the person's holding of that interest, or
    - (b) it is satisfied that a condition imposed under paragraph 17, 28 or 33 on the person's holding of the interest has not been, or is not being, complied with.
  - (2) The licensing authority may act under sub-paragraph (1) only before the end of such period (beginning with the time when the licensing authority becomes aware of the matters in question) as may be prescribed.
  - (3) If the licensing authority proposes to object to a person's holding of the restricted interest, it must give the person and the licensed body a warning notice.
  - (4) But the licensing authority may object to the person's holding of the restricted interest without giving a warning notice if it considers it necessary or desirable to do so for the purpose of protecting any of the regulatory objectives.
  - (5) The warning notice must—
    - (a) specify the reasons for the proposed objection, and
    - (b) state that representations may be made to the licensing authority within the prescribed period.
  - (6) The licensing authority must consider any representations made within the prescribed period.
  - (7) If the licensing authority objects to the person's holding of the restricted interest, it must notify the person and the licensed body of its objection as soon as reasonably practicable.
  - (8) The notice must—
    - (a) specify the reasons for the objection, and
    - (b) explain the effect of Part 5 of this Schedule.

#### **Commencement Information**

**I59** Sch. 13 para. 36 partly in force; Sch. 13 para. 36 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 13 para. 36(2)(5)(b)(6) in force for certain purposes at 1.1.2009 by [S.I. 2008/3149](#), [art. 2\(d\)\(iv\)](#)

- 37
- (1) The person and the licensed body may before the end of the prescribed period appeal to the relevant appellate body against the objection.
  - (2) The relevant appellate body may dismiss or allow the appeal.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) If the relevant appellate body allows the appeal it may also—
  - (a) order the licensing authority to impose under paragraph 33 such conditions on the person's holding of the restricted interest as may be specified in the order, or
  - (b) remit the matter to the licensing authority.
- (4) A party to the appeal may before the end of the prescribed period appeal to the High Court on a point of law arising from the decision of the relevant appellant body, but only with the permission of the High Court.
- (5) The High Court may make such order as it thinks fit.
- (6) If the person's holding of the restricted interest is subject to conditions as a result of an order made on an appeal under this paragraph, for the purposes of this Schedule the conditions are to be treated as having been imposed under paragraph 33.

#### Commencement Information

**I60** Sch. 13 para. 37 partly in force; Sch. 13 para. 37 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 13 para. 37(1)(4) in force for certain purposes at 1.1.2009 by [S.I. 2008/3149](#), [art. 2\(d\)\(iv\)](#)

VALID FROM 01/10/2011

## PART 4

### ADDITIONAL RESTRICTIONS

#### *Power to impose share limit, voting limit etc*

- 38 (1) Licensing rules may provide that—
- (a) a non-authorised person may not have a shareholding in a licensed body, or in a parent undertaking of a licensed body, which exceeds a limit specified in the rules (“the share limit”);
  - (b) a non-authorised person may not have an entitlement to exercise, or control the exercise of, voting rights in a licensable body, or a parent undertaking of a licensable body, which exceeds a limit specified in the rules (“the voting limit”);
  - (c) the total proportion of shares in a licensed body, or a parent undertaking of a licensed body, held by non-authorised persons may not exceed a limit specified in the rules;
  - (d) the total proportion of voting rights in a licensed body, or a parent undertaking of a licensed body, which non-authorised persons are entitled to exercise or control the exercise of, may not exceed a limit specified in the rules.
- (2) Rules made under any paragraph of sub-paragraph (1) in relation to a licensed body and a parent undertaking may specify different limits in relation to the licensed body and the parent undertaking.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) Licensing rules made under sub-paragraph (1)(a) or (b) may provide that references in those rules to a person, in relation to a person's shareholding or entitlement to exercise or control the exercise of voting rights, are to—
- (a) the person,
  - (b) any of the person's associates, or
  - (c) the person and any of the person's associates taken together.

- (4) In relation to a licensed body which is a partnership, for the purposes of section 34 of the Partnership Act 1890 (c. 39) (dissolution by illegality) a breach of licensing rules made under sub-paragraph (1) does not make it unlawful for the business of the partnership to be carried on, or for the partners to carry it on in partnership.

*Obligation to notify where share limit or voting limit exceeded*

- 39 (1) This paragraph applies in relation to a licensed body, or a parent undertaking of a licensed body, if licensing rules made by the relevant licensing authority make the provision mentioned in paragraph 38(1)(a) or (b) in relation to the body.
- (2) Any non-authorized person who acquires—
- (a) a shareholding in the body which exceeds the share limit, or
  - (b) an entitlement to exercise, or control the exercise of, voting rights in the body which exceeds the voting limit,
- must notify the body (and, if the body is a parent undertaking of a licensed body, the licensed body) and the licensing authority of the acquisition within such period, after the person becomes aware of it, as may be specified by order made by the Lord Chancellor on the recommendation of the Board.
- (3) It is an offence for a person to fail to comply with a requirement imposed by sub-paragraph (2).
- (4) A person who is guilty of an offence under sub-paragraph (3) is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale.
- (5) It is a defence for a person charged with an offence under sub-paragraph (3) to show that at the time of the alleged offence the person had no knowledge of the facts by virtue of which the duty to notify arose.
- 40 (1) This paragraph applies if a person under the duty to notify imposed by paragraph 39(2)—
- (a) had no knowledge of the facts by virtue of which that duty arose, but
  - (b) subsequently becomes aware of those facts.
- (2) The person must give the body (and, if the body is a parent undertaking of a licensed body, the licensed body) and the licensing authority the required notification within such period, after the person becomes so aware, as may be specified by order made by the Lord Chancellor on the recommendation of the Board.
- (3) A person who fails to comply with the duty to notify imposed by sub-paragraph (2) is guilty of an offence.
- (4) A person who is guilty of an offence under sub-paragraph (3) is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## PART 5

### ENFORCEMENT

#### *DIVESTITURE*

VALID FROM 01/10/2011

#### *The divestiture condition*

- 41 (1) The divestiture condition is satisfied in relation to a non-authorized person and a licensed body if—
- (a) the person holds a restricted interest in the licensed body in the circumstances mentioned in sub-paragraph (2), and
  - (b) the person holds that interest, in whole or in part, by virtue of the person's shareholding in a body corporate with a share capital (in this Part of this Schedule referred to as “the relevant shares”).
- (2) The circumstances are that the person holds the restricted interest—
- (a) as a result of the person taking a step in circumstances in which that constitutes an offence under paragraph 24(1) (whether or not the person is charged with or convicted of an offence under that paragraph),
  - (b) in breach of conditions imposed under paragraph 17, 28, or 33, or
  - (c) in contravention of an objection by the licensing authority under paragraph 31 or 36.
- (3) In sub-paragraph (1)(b), references to a person's shareholding are to be read in accordance with paragraph 3(3) or 4(2) (as the case may be).
- 42 (1) If the relevant licensing rules make the provision mentioned in paragraph 38(1) (a) or (b), the divestiture condition is also satisfied in relation to a non-authorized person and a licensed body if—
- (a) the person's shareholding in the body, or a parent undertaking of the body, exceeds the share limit, and the body or parent undertaking (as the case may be) is a body corporate with a share capital, or
  - (b) the person's entitlement to exercise or control the exercise of voting rights in the body, or a parent undertaking of the body, exceeds the voting limit by virtue of the person holding shares in a body corporate with a share capital.
- (2) In this Part of this Schedule, “excess shares” means
- (a) in a case within sub-paragraph (1)(a), the number of shares by which the person's shareholding exceeds the share limit, and
  - (b) in a case within sub-paragraph (1)(b), the number of shares held by the person in excess of the number of shares the person could hold without the person's entitlement to exercise, or control the exercise of, voting rights exceeding the voting limit.
- (3) References in this paragraph to a person's shareholding (or holding of shares) or entitlement are to be read in accordance with any applicable licensing rules made under paragraph 38(3).

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### *Application for divestiture*

- 43 (1) If the divestiture condition is satisfied in relation to a non-licensed person and a licensed body, the licensing authority may give the person a restriction notice under paragraph 44 and apply to the High Court for an order under paragraph 45.
- (2) The licensing authority may not make an application to the High Court for an order under paragraph 45 unless—
- (a) it has notified the person that it intends to do so if the divestiture condition is satisfied in relation to the person and the body at the end of the relevant period, and
  - (b) the relevant period has expired.
- (3) The relevant period is such period (not less than the prescribed period) as may be specified in the notice.

#### **Commencement Information**

**I61** Sch. 13 para. 43 partly in force; Sch. 13 para. 43 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 13 para. 43(3) in force for certain purposes at 1.1.2009 by [S.I. 2008/3149](#), [art. 2\(d\)\(iv\)](#)

### *Restriction notice*

- 44 (1) A restriction notice is a notice directing that such of the relevant shares or excess shares (as the case may be) as are specified in the notice are, until further notice, subject to one or more of the following restrictions.
- (2) The restrictions are—
- (a) a transfer of (or agreement to transfer) those shares, or in the case of unissued shares a transfer of (or agreement to transfer) the right to be issued with them, is void;
  - (b) no voting rights are to be exercisable in respect of the shares;
  - (c) no further shares are to be issued in right of them or in pursuance of any offer made to their holder;
  - (d) except in a liquidation, no payment is to be made of any sums due from the company on the shares, whether in respect of capital or otherwise.
- (3) A copy of the restriction notice must be given to the body to whose shares it relates.
- (4) A restriction notice ceases to have effect—
- (a) in accordance with an order of the High Court under paragraph 45(4);
  - (b) if no application has been made to the High Court for an order under paragraph 45 before the end of such period as may be prescribed, at the end of that period;
  - (c) if the licensed body ceases to be licensed by the licensing authority.

#### **Commencement Information**

**I62** Sch. 13 para. 44 partly in force; Sch. 13 para. 44 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 13 para. 44(4)(b) in force for certain purposes at 1.1.2009 by [S.I. 2008/3149](#), [art. 2\(d\)\(iv\)](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

VALID FROM 01/10/2011

#### *Divestiture by High Court*

- 45
- (1) If the divestiture condition is satisfied by virtue of paragraph 41 the High Court may, on the application of the licensing authority, order the sale of the appropriate number of the relevant shares.
  - (2) The appropriate number of the relevant shares is the number of those shares, the sale of which will result in the non-authorized person no longer holding—
    - (a) a restricted interest in the licensed body, or
    - (b) if the non-authorized person holds more than one kind of restricted interest, a restricted interest the person's holding of which is within paragraph 41(2).
  - (3) If the divestiture condition is satisfied by virtue of paragraph 42 the High Court may, on the application of the licensing authority, order the sale of the excess shares.
  - (4) If shares are for the time being subject to any restriction under paragraph 44, the court may order that they are to cease to be subject to that restriction.
  - (5) If the divestiture condition is satisfied by virtue of paragraph 41(2)(b) or (c), no order may be made under sub-paragraph (1) or (4)—
    - (a) until the end of the period within which an appeal may be made against the imposition of the conditions or the objection, or
    - (b) if an appeal is made, until the appeal has been determined or withdrawn.
  - (6) If an order has been made under sub-paragraph (1) or (3) the court may, on the application of the licensing authority, make such further order relating to the sale or transfer of the shares as it thinks fit.
  - (7) If shares are sold in pursuance of an order under this paragraph, the proceeds of sale, less the costs of sale, must be paid into court for the benefit of the persons beneficially interested in them.
  - (8) Any such person may apply to the court for the whole or part of the proceeds to be paid to the person.

#### **CONDITIONS**

##### *Enforcement of conditions*

- 46
- (1) If a person holds a restricted interest in a licensed body in breach of conditions imposed under paragraph 17, 28 or 33, the licensing authority may make an application to the High Court for an order under this paragraph.
  - (2) The licensing authority may not make such an application unless—
    - (a) it has notified the person that it intends to do so if the conditions are not complied with before the end of the relevant period, and
    - (b) the relevant period has expired.
  - (3) The relevant period is such period (not less than the prescribed period) as may be specified in the notice.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (4) The High Court may, on the application of the licensing authority, make such order as the court thinks fit to secure compliance with the conditions to which the person's holding of the restricted interest is subject.
- (5) No order may be made under this paragraph—
- (a) until the end of the period within which an appeal may be made against the imposition of the conditions, or
  - (b) if an appeal is made, until the appeal has been determined or withdrawn.

#### Commencement Information

**I63** Sch. 13 para. 46 partly in force; Sch. 13 para. 46 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 13 para. 46(3) in force for certain purposes at 1.1.2009 by [S.I. 2008/3149](#), [art. 2\(d\)\(iv\)](#)

### **RECORDS OF DECISIONS**

VALID FROM 01/10/2011

#### *Duty to notify Board of decisions under this Schedule*

- 47 (1) The relevant licensing authority must notify the Board where—
- (a) it has objected under paragraph 19, 31, or 36 to a person's holding of a restricted interest, or
  - (b) it has imposed conditions under paragraph 17, 28, or 33 on a person's holding of a restricted interest.
- (2) The notification must state—
- (a) the reasons for the objection or imposition of conditions, and
  - (b) the kind of restricted interest to which the objection or conditions related.
- (3) If the licensing authority takes any action under paragraph 43 in relation to a person notified to the Board under sub-paragraph (1), it must notify the Board of that fact.
- (4) If there is an appeal to the relevant appellate body against the objection or imposition of conditions, the licensing authority must notify the Board of the outcome of that appeal (and any subsequent appeal to the High Court).
- (5) If the licensing authority has imposed conditions on a person's holding of a restricted interest, it must notify the Board of any decision taken by it under paragraph 35 (variation and cancellation of conditions).
- (6) The licensing authority must give the person and the licensed body concerned a copy of any notification it gives the Board under this paragraph.
- 48 (1) A licensing authority must notify the Board where under paragraph 16, 17, 27 or 28 it approves the holding of a restricted interest in a licensed body by a person included in the list kept by the Board under paragraph 51.
- (2) The notification must state—
- (a) if the approval was under paragraph 17 or 28, the conditions to which the approval was subject, and



*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) the reasons for the licensing authority's decision to approve the person's holding of the interest.
- (3) If the approval was under paragraph 17 or 28 and there is an appeal to the relevant appellate body against the imposition of conditions, the licensing authority must notify the Board of the outcome of that appeal (and any subsequent appeal to the High Court).
- (4) If the approval was under paragraph 17 or 28, the licensing authority must notify the Board of any decision taken by it under paragraph 35 (variation and cancellation of conditions).
- (5) The licensing authority must give the person and the licensed body concerned a copy of any notification it gives the Board under this paragraph.

*Power to notify Board where share limit or voting limit breached*

- 49
- (1) This paragraph applies if the relevant licensing rules make the provision mentioned in paragraph 38(1)(a) or (b).
  - (2) The licensing authority may, if it considers it appropriate to do so in all the circumstances of the case, notify the Board where a non-authorised person acquires—
    - (a) a shareholding in a licensed body or parent undertaking of a licensed body which exceeds the share limit, or
    - (b) an entitlement to exercise, or control the exercise of, voting rights in a licensed body or parent undertaking of a licensed body which exceeds the voting limit.
  - (3) If the licensing authority proposes to make a notification under sub-paragraph (2), it must give the person and the licensed body a warning notice.
  - (4) The warning notice must—
    - (a) specify the reasons for the proposed notification, and
    - (b) state that representations may be made to the licensing authority within the prescribed period.
  - (5) The licensing authority must consider any representations made within the prescribed period.
  - (6) If the licensing authority notifies the Board under sub-paragraph (2), it must give the person concerned and the licensed body a copy of the notification and a notice stating the reasons for the notification.
  - (7) If the share limit or voting limit is breached in relation to a parent undertaking of a licensed body, references in sub-paragraphs (3) and (6) to the licensed body include the parent undertaking.

**Commencement Information**

**I64** Sch. 13 para. 49 partly in force; Sch. 13 para. 49 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 13 para. 49(4)(b)(5) in force for certain purposes at 1.1.2009 by [S.I. 2008/3149](#), [art. 2\(d\)\(iv\)](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- 50 (1) The person concerned and the licensed body may before the end of the prescribed period appeal to the relevant appellate body against the notification.
- (2) The relevant appellate body may—
- (a) dismiss the appeal, or
  - (b) allow the appeal and order the person's name to be removed from the list kept by the Board under paragraph 51.
- (3) A party to the appeal may before the end of the prescribed period appeal to the High Court on a point of law arising from the decision of the relevant appellant body, but only with the permission of the High Court.
- (4) The High Court may make such order as it thinks fit.
- (5) The licensing authority must notify the Board of the outcome of any appeal under this paragraph, and give the person concerned and the licensed body a copy of the notification.
- (6) If the share limit or voting limit is breached in relation to a parent undertaking of a licensed body, references in sub-paragraphs (1) and (5) to the licensed body include the parent undertaking.

#### Commencement Information

**I65** Sch. 13 para. 50 partly in force; Sch. 13 para. 50 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 13 para. 50(1)(3) in force for certain purposes at 1.1.2009 by [S.I. 2008/3149](#), [art. 2\(d\)\(iv\)](#)

VALID FROM 01/10/2011

#### *Board's list of persons subject to objections and conditions*

- 51 (1) The Board must keep a list of the persons in respect of which it receives a notification under paragraph 47(1) or 49(2).
- (2) The list must record—
- (a) in relation to a person notified to the Board under paragraph 47(1), the information included in the notification by virtue of paragraph 47(2) and any notification under paragraph 47(3), and
  - (b) in relation to any person included in the list, the information included in any notification relating to that person under paragraph 48.
- (3) If the Board receives a notification under paragraph 47(4) or (5), 48(3) or (4) or 50(5) it must make such alterations to the list as it considers appropriate having regard to the decision of the licensing authority or the outcome of the appeal (which may include removing a person from the list).
- (4) The Board must make the list kept by it under this paragraph available to every licensing authority.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

VALID FROM 01/10/2011

SCHEDULE 14

Section 102

LICENSING AUTHORITY'S POWERS OF INTERVENTION

.....

SCHEDULE 15

Section 114

THE OFFICE FOR LEGAL COMPLAINTS

*Membership*

- 1 (1) The OLC is to consist of the following members—
  - (a) a chairman appointed by the Board with the approval of the Lord Chancellor, and
  - (b) at least 6, but not more than 8, other persons appointed by the Board after consultation with the chairman.
- (2) The Lord Chancellor may by order amend sub-paragraph (1) by substituting, for the limit on the maximum number of persons for the time being specified in paragraph (b) of that sub-paragraph, a different limit.
- 2 (1) In appointing members of the OLC, the Board must ensure that a majority of the members of the OLC are lay persons.
- (2) The chairman must be a lay person.
- (3) In this Schedule a reference to a “lay person” is a reference to a person who has never been—
  - (a) an authorised person in relation to an activity which is a reserved legal activity,
  - (b) an advocate in Scotland,
  - (c) a solicitor in Scotland,
  - (d) a member of the Bar of Northern Ireland, or
  - (e) a solicitor of the Court of Judicature of Northern Ireland.
- (4) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (3), a person is deemed to have been an authorised person in relation to an activity which is a reserved legal activity if that person has before the appointed day been—
  - (a) a barrister,
  - (b) a solicitor,
  - (c) a public notary,
  - (d) a licensed conveyancer,
  - (e) granted a certificate issued by the Institute of Legal Executives authorising the person to practise as a legal executive,

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (f) a registered patent attorney, within the meaning given by section 275(1) of the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 (c. 48),
  - (g) a registered trade mark attorney, within the meaning of the Trade Marks Act 1994 (c. 26), or
  - (h) granted a right of audience or right to conduct litigation in relation to any proceedings by virtue of section 27(2)(a) or section 28(2)(a) of the Courts and Legal Services Act 1990 (c. 41) (rights of audience and rights to conduct litigation).
- (5) For the purpose of sub-paragraph (4)—
- “appointed day” means the day appointed for the coming into force of section 13;
  - “licensed conveyancer” has the meaning given by section 11(2) of the Administration of Justice Act 1985 (c. 61).
- 3 (1) An ombudsman may be a member (but not chairman) of the OLC.
- (2) In appointing members of the OLC, the Board must ensure that a majority of the members of the OLC are not ombudsmen.
- 4 In appointing members of the OLC, the Board must have regard to the desirability of securing that the OLC includes members who (between them) have experience in or knowledge of—
- (a) the handling of complaints,
  - (b) the provision of legal services,
  - (c) legal education and legal training,
  - (d) consumer affairs,
  - (e) civil or criminal proceedings and the working of the courts,
  - (f) the maintenance of the professional standards of persons who provide legal services,
  - (g) non-commercial legal services,
  - (h) the differing needs of consumers, and
  - (i) the provision of claims management services (within the meaning of Part 2 of the Compensation Act 2006 (c. 29)).

*Terms of appointment and tenure of members*

- 5 A member of the OLC is to hold and vacate office in accordance with the terms and conditions of the member's appointment (subject to this Schedule).
- 6 (1) A member of the OLC must be appointed for a fixed period.
- (2) The period for which a member is appointed must not exceed 5 years.
- (3) A person who has held office as a member may be re-appointed once only, for a further period (whether consecutive or not) not exceeding 5 years.

PROSPECTIVE

7 If a member of the OLC who is a lay person becomes a person within paragraph (a) to (e) of paragraph 2(3), that person ceases to be a member of the OLC.

- 8 (1) A member may at any time—

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) resign from office by giving notice to the Board;
    - (b) be removed from office by the Board.
  - (2) The Board may not under sub-paragraph (1)(b) remove a member (including the chairman) from office unless the Board is satisfied that the member—
    - (a) has failed without reasonable excuse to discharge the functions of the office for a continuous period of at least 6 months,
    - (b) has been convicted of an offence,
    - (c) is an undischarged bankrupt, or
    - (d) is otherwise unfit to hold the office or unable to discharge its functions.
  - (3) The chairman may be removed from office under sub-paragraph (1)(b) only with the consent of the Lord Chancellor.
  - (4) The Board must consult the chairman before removing a member (other than the chairman) under sub-paragraph (1)(b).
  - (5) The Board may not remove an ordinary member on the ground mentioned in paragraph (a) of sub-paragraph (2) more than 3 months after the end of the period mentioned in that paragraph.
- 9 The chairman ceases to be chairman upon ceasing to be a member of the OLC.

#### *Remuneration etc of members*

- 10 The chairman and other members of the OLC are to be paid by the Board in accordance with provision made by or under their terms of appointment.

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C2** [Sch. 15 para. 10](#) modified (temp.) (7.3.2008) by [The Legal Services Act 2007 \(Commencement No.1 and Transitory Provisions\) Order 2008 \(S.I. 2008/222\)](#), [art. 8](#)

- 11 The terms of appointment of the chairman or any other member may provide for the Board to pay, or make payments towards the provision of, a pension, allowance or gratuity to or in respect of that person.
- 12 If the Board thinks there are circumstances that make it right for a person ceasing to hold office as chairman or another member to receive compensation, the OLC may pay that person such compensation as the Board may determine.

#### *Staff*

- 13 The OLC may appoint such staff as it considers appropriate to assist in the performance of its functions.
- 14 Staff appointed under paragraph 13 are to be—
  - (a) appointed on terms and conditions determined by the OLC, and
  - (b) paid by the OLC in accordance with provision made by or under the terms of appointment.
- 15 A member of staff appointed under paragraph 13 may be a member (but not chairman) of the OLC.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- 16 The terms and conditions on which an ombudsman, or any member of staff appointed under paragraph 13, is appointed may provide for the OLC to pay, or make payments towards the provision of, a pension, allowance or gratuity to or in respect of that person.
- 17 The OLC may pay compensation for loss of employment to or in respect of an ombudsman (or former ombudsman), or a member (or former member) of staff appointed under paragraph 13.

*Arrangements for assistance*

- 18 (1) The OLC may make arrangements with such persons as it considers appropriate for assistance to be provided to it or to an ombudsman.
- (2) Arrangements may include the paying of fees to such persons.
- (3) The persons with whom the OLC may make arrangements include approved regulators; and the arrangements it may make include arrangements for assistance to be provided to an ombudsman in relation to the investigation and consideration of a complaint.

*Committees*

- 19 (1) The OLC may establish committees.
- (2) Any committee so established may establish sub-committees.
- (3) Only members of the OLC may be members of a committee or sub-committee.
- (4) A majority of the members of a committee or sub-committee must be lay persons.

*Proceedings*

- 20 (1) The OLC may regulate its own procedure, and the procedure of its committees and sub-committees, including quorum.
- (2) But the quorum of a committee or sub-committee must not be less than 3.
- (3) The OLC must publish any rules of procedure made under this paragraph.
- (4) This paragraph is without prejudice to any other power the OLC has under this Act to make rules.
- 21 The validity of any act of the OLC is not affected—
- (a) by a vacancy in the office of chairman or amongst the other members, or
- (b) by a defect in the appointment or any disqualification of a person as chairman or another member of the OLC.

*Delegation of functions*

- 22 (1) The OLC may authorise—
- (a) the chairman or any other member of the OLC,
- (b) a committee or sub-committee of the OLC,
- (c) an ombudsman, or
- (d) a member of the OLC's staff appointed under paragraph 13,

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

to exercise, on behalf of the OLC, such of its functions, in such circumstances, as it may determine.

- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) does not apply to—
- (a) the OLC's functions under section 118(1) (annual report),
  - (b) the OLC's functions under section 122 (appointment of Chief Ombudsman and assistant ombudsmen),
  - (c) the OLC's functions under paragraph 20 or 23 of this Schedule, or
  - (d) any power or duty the OLC has to make rules under this Part of this Act.
- (3) A committee may delegate functions (including functions delegated to the committee) to—
- (a) a sub-committee,
  - (b) the chairman or any other member of the OLC,
  - (c) an ombudsman, or
  - (d) a member of the OLC's staff appointed under paragraph 13.

#### *Budget*

- 23 (1) The OLC must, before the start of each financial year, adopt an annual budget which has been approved by the Board.
- (2) The OLC may, with the approval of the Board, vary the budget for a financial year at any time after its adoption.
- (3) The annual budget must include an indication of—
- (a) the distribution of resources deployed in the operation of the ombudsman scheme, and
  - (b) the amounts of income of the OLC arising or expected to arise from the operation of the scheme.

#### *Land*

- 24 (1) During the initial 5 year period, the OLC must not acquire or dispose of an interest in land, except with the approval of the Lord Chancellor.
- (2) The initial 5 year period is the period of 5 years beginning with the day on which the appointment of the first Interim Chief Executive under paragraph 10 of Schedule 22 takes effect or the day on which the first appointment of a member of the OLC takes effect, whichever first occurs.

#### *Borrowing*

- 25 (1) The OLC must not borrow money, except—
- (a) with the consent of the Board, or
  - (b) in accordance with a general authorisation given by the Board.
- (2) The Board may not consent or give a general authorisation for the purposes of sub-paragraph (1), except with the consent of the Lord Chancellor.

#### *Accounts*

- 26 (1) The OLC must—

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) keep proper accounts and proper records in relation to the accounts, and
  - (b) prepare in respect of each financial year a statement of accounts.
- (2) Each statement of accounts must comply with any directions given by the Lord Chancellor, with the approval of the Treasury, as to—
- (a) the information to be contained in it and the manner in which it is to be presented;
  - (b) the methods and principles according to which the statement is to be prepared;
  - (c) the additional information (if any) which is to be provided for the information of Parliament.
- (3) The OLC must give a copy of each statement of accounts to the Board before the end of the month of August next following the financial year to which the statement relates.
- (4) The Board must give a copy of each statement received under sub-paragraph (3)—
- (a) to the Lord Chancellor, and
  - (b) to the Comptroller and Auditor General.
- (5) The Comptroller and Auditor General must—
- (a) examine, certify and report on each statement of accounts which is received under sub-paragraph (4), and
  - (b) give a copy of the Comptroller and Auditor General's report to the Lord Chancellor.
- (6) In respect of each financial year, the Lord Chancellor must lay before Parliament a document consisting of—
- (a) a copy of the statement of accounts for that year, and
  - (b) a copy of the Comptroller and Auditor General's report on that statement.
- (7) “Financial year” means—
- (a) the period beginning with the day on which the OLC is established and ending with the next following 31 March, and
  - (b) each successive period of 12 months.

*Status*

- 27 (1) The OLC is not to be regarded—
- (a) as the servant or agent of the Crown, or
  - (b) as enjoying any status, immunity or privilege of the Crown.
- (2) Accordingly—
- (a) the OLC's property is not to be regarded as property of or held on behalf of the Crown, and
  - (b) the staff appointed under paragraph 13 are not to be regarded as servants or agents of the Crown or as enjoying any status, immunity or privilege of the Crown.



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

#### *Application of seal and proof of instruments*

- 28 The application of the seal of the OLC is to be authenticated by the signature of any member of the OLC, or of its staff, who has been authorised (whether generally or specifically) by the OLC for the purpose.
- 29 Any contract or instrument which, if entered into or executed by an individual, would not need to be under seal, may be entered into or executed on behalf of the OLC by any person who has been authorised (whether generally or specifically) by the OLC for the purpose.
- 30 A document purporting to be duly executed under the seal of the OLC, or signed on its behalf—
- (a) is to be received in evidence, and
  - (b) is to be taken to be executed or signed in that way, unless the contrary is proved.

#### *Disqualification*

- 31 (1) In Part 2 of Schedule 1 to the House of Commons Disqualification Act 1975 (c. 24) (bodies of which all members are disqualified) at the appropriate place insert— “The Office for Legal Complaints.”
- (2) In Part 3 of that Schedule (other disqualifying offices) at the appropriate place insert — “The Chief Ombudsman or an assistant ombudsman appointed under section 122 of the Legal Services Act 2007 (Chief Ombudsman and assistant ombudsmen appointed for the purposes of the ombudsman scheme).”
- (3) In Part 2 of Schedule 1 to the Northern Ireland Assembly Disqualification Act 1975 (c. 25) (bodies of which all members are disqualified) at the appropriate place insert — “The Office for Legal Complaints.”
- (4) In Part 3 of that Schedule (other disqualifying offices) at the appropriate place insert — “The Chief Ombudsman or an assistant ombudsman appointed under section 122 of the Legal Services Act 2007 (Chief Ombudsman and assistant ombudsmen appointed for the purposes of the ombudsman scheme).”

#### *Freedom of information*

- 32 In Part 6 of Schedule 1 to the Freedom of Information Act 2000 (c. 36) (other public bodies and offices which are public authorities) at the appropriate place insert— “The Office for Legal Complaints.”

#### *Public records*

- 33 In Schedule 1 to the Public Records Act 1958 (c. 51) (definition of public records) at the appropriate place in Part 2 of the Table at the end of paragraph 3 insert— “The Office for Legal Complaints.”

#### *Exemption from liability in damages*

- 34 (1) This paragraph applies to—
- (a) the OLC,
  - (b) a member of the OLC,

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) an ombudsman, and
  - (d) a member of the OLC's staff appointed under paragraph 13.
- (2) A person to whom this paragraph applies is not liable in damages for anything done or omitted in the exercise or purported exercise of the functions conferred on the person concerned by or by virtue of this or any other enactment.
- (3) But sub-paragraph (2) does not apply—
- (a) if it is shown that the act or omission was in bad faith, or
  - (b) so as to prevent an award of damages made in respect of an act or omission on the ground that the act or omission was unlawful as a result of section 6(1) of the Human Rights Act 1998 (c. 42).

## SCHEDULE 16

Section 177

### THE LAW SOCIETY, SOLICITORS, RECOGNISED BODIES AND FOREIGN LAWYERS

#### PART 1

##### THE SOLICITORS ACT 1974 (C. 47)

- 1 The Solicitors Act 1974 is amended in accordance with this Part of this Schedule.
- 2 In section 1A (practising certificates: employed solicitors)—
- (a) omit “or” at the end of paragraph (b),
  - (b) in paragraph (c) omit “by the Council of the Law Society”, and
  - (c) at the end of that paragraph insert “or
  - (d) by any other person who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to an activity which is a reserved legal activity (within the meaning of that Act).”

#### **Commencement Information**

**I66** Sch. 16 para. 2(b) in force at 7.3.2008 by [S.I. 2008/222](#), [art. 2\(j\)\(i\)](#); Sch. 16 para. 2(a)(c) in force at 1.1.2010 by [S.I. 2009/3250](#), [art. 2\(f\)\(ii\)](#) (with [art. 9](#))

- 3 After section 1A insert—

#### **“1B Restriction on practice as sole solicitor**

- (1) Rules under section 31 (rules as to professional practice etc) must provide that a solicitor may not practise as a sole solicitor unless he has in force—
  - (a) a practising certificate, and
  - (b) an endorsement of that certificate by the Society authorising him to practise as a sole solicitor (a “sole solicitor endorsement”).
- (2) The rules may provide that, for the purposes of the rules and this Act, a solicitor is not to be regarded as practising as a sole solicitor in such circumstances as may be prescribed by the rules.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.**Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) The rules must prescribe the circumstances in which a solicitor may be regarded by the Society as suitable to be authorised to practise as a sole solicitor.”
- 4 In section 2 (training regulations)—
- (a) in subsection (1) omit “, with the concurrence of the Secretary of State, the Lord Chief Justice and the Master of the Rolls,”,
- (b) in subsection (3)(a)—
- (i) in sub-paragraph (i) omit “, whether by service under articles or otherwise,”,
- (ii) in sub-paragraph (v) omit “articles may be discharged or”, and
- (iii) in that sub-paragraph after “be” (in the second place) insert “started or”, and
- (c) omit subsections (4) and (5).

**Commencement Information**

**I67** Sch. 16 para. 4(b) in force at 7.3.2008 by [S.I. 2008/222](#), [art. 2\(j\)\(i\)](#); Sch. 16 para. 4(a)(c) in force at 1.1.2010 by [S.I. 2009/3250](#), [art. 2\(f\)\(ii\)](#) (with [art. 9](#))

- 5 In section 3 (admission as solicitor), in subsection (2)—
- (a) for “Master of the Rolls” (in each place) substitute “ Society ”, and
- (b) for “his” substitute “ its ”.
- 6 In section 6 (keeping of the roll) omit subsections (2) to (4).
- 7 In section 7 (entry of name and restoration of name struck off)—
- (a) for paragraph (a) substitute—
- “(a) of written evidence of admission of any person as a solicitor by the Society,”, and
- (b) for “Council” substitute “ Society ”.

**Commencement Information**

**I68** Sch. 16 para. 7(b) in force at 7.3.2008 by [S.I. 2008/222](#), [art. 2\(j\)\(i\)](#); Sch. 16 para. 7(a) in force at 1.7.2009 by [S.I. 2009/1365](#), [art. 2\(a\)\(i\)](#)

- 8 (1) Section 8 (removal or restoration of name at solicitor's request) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (2) for “Council” substitute “ Society ”.
- (3) In subsection (4) for “Master of the Rolls” substitute “ High Court ”.
- (4) After that subsection insert—
- “(4A) In relation to an appeal under subsection (4) the High Court may make such order as it thinks fit as to payment of costs.
- (4B) The decision of the High Court on an appeal under subsection (4) shall be final.”
- (5) Omit subsection (5).

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Commencement Information

**I69** Sch. 16 para. 8(1)(2) in force at 7.3.2008 by S.I. 2008/222, **art. 2(j)(i)**; Sch. 16 para. 8(3)-(5) in force at 1.7.2009 by S.I. 2009/1365, **art. 2(a)(iii)** (subject to **art. 4**)

9 For sections 9 and 10 (applications for and issue of practising certificates) substitute—

#### “9 Applications for practising certificates

- (1) A person whose name is on the roll may apply to the Society to be issued with a practising certificate.
- (2) An application under this section may include an application for a sole solicitor endorsement.
- (3) An application under this section must be—
  - (a) made in accordance with regulations under section 28, and
  - (b) accompanied by the appropriate fee.
- (4) “The appropriate fee”, in relation to an application, means—
  - (a) any fee payable under subsection (1) of section 11 in respect of the practising certificate applied for, and
  - (b) any additional fee payable under subsection (4) of that section in respect of the application.

#### 10 The issue of practising certificates

- (1) Subject to the following provisions of this section, where an application is made in accordance with section 9, the Society must issue a practising certificate to the applicant if it is satisfied that the applicant—
  - (a) is not suspended from practice, and
  - (b) is complying with any prescribed requirements imposed on the applicant.
- (2) A practising certificate issued to an applicant of a prescribed description must be issued subject to any conditions prescribed in relation to applicants of that description.
- (3) In such circumstances as may be prescribed, the Society must, if it considers it is in the public interest to do so—
  - (a) refuse to issue a practising certificate under this section, or
  - (b) where it decides to issue a practising certificate, issue it subject to one or more conditions.
- (4) The conditions which may be imposed include—
  - (a) conditions requiring the person to whom the certificate is issued to take specified steps that will, in the opinion of the Society, be conducive to the carrying on by that person of an efficient practice as a solicitor (including, if the certificate has a sole solicitor endorsement, an efficient practice as a sole solicitor);

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) conditions which prohibit that person from taking any specified steps, except with the approval of the Society.

(5) In this section —

“prescribed” means prescribed by regulations under section 28;

“specified”, in relation to a condition imposed on a practising certificate, means specified in the condition.”

10 After section 10 (as inserted by paragraph 9) insert—

#### “10A Register of holders of practising certificates

(1) The Society must keep a register of all solicitors who hold practising certificates.

(2) The register must contain—

- (a) the full name of each solicitor who holds a practising certificate,
- (b) in relation to each solicitor who holds a practising certificate, a statement as to whether there is in force a sole solicitor endorsement, and
- (c) such other information as may be specified in regulations under section 28(1)(d).”

11 For section 11 (fee payable on issue of practising certificate) substitute—

#### “11 Fee payable on issue of practising certificates

(1) Before a practising certificate is issued, there must be paid to the Society in respect of the certificate a fee of such amount as the Society may from time to time determine.

(2) Different fees may be specified for different categories of applicant and in respect of different circumstances.

(3) Subsection (4) applies where a solicitor makes an application for a practising certificate if—

- (a) the solicitor has failed to deliver an accountant's report required by rules under section 34(1) by such time or in such circumstances as may be prescribed by those rules, and
- (b) a practising certificate has not been issued by the Society to the solicitor since the Society became aware of the failure.

(4) Where this subsection applies, the solicitor's application must be accompanied by an additional fee of such amount as the Society from time to time determines.”

#### Commencement Information

**I70** Sch. 16 para. 11 wholly in force at 1.7.2009, see s. 211 and S.I. 2009/1365, art. 2(a)(ii) (subject to art. 3)

12 Omit section 12 (discretion of Society with respect to issue of practising certificates in special cases).

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- 13 Omit section 12A (additional fee payable by certain solicitors on applying for practising certificates).
- 14 For section 13 (appeals in connection with issue of practising certificates) substitute—

**“13 Appeals etc in connection with the issue of practising certificates**

- (1) A person who makes an application under section 9 may appeal to the High Court against—
- (a) a decision to refuse the application for a practising certificate,
  - (b) if the application included an application for a sole solicitor endorsement, a decision to refuse the application for the endorsement, or
  - (c) a decision to impose a condition on a practising certificate issued in consequence of the application.
- (2) A person who holds a practising certificate subject to a condition within section 10(4)(b) may appeal to the High Court against any decision by the Society to refuse to approve the taking of any step for the purposes of that condition.
- (3) The Society may make rules which provide, as respects any application under section 9 that is neither granted nor refused by the Society within such period as may be specified in the rules, for enabling an appeal to be brought under this section in relation to the application as if it had been refused by the Society.
- (4) On an appeal under subsection (1), the High Court may—
- (a) affirm the decision of the Society,
  - (b) direct the Society to make a sole solicitor endorsement on the applicant's practising certificate and to issue that certificate subject to such conditions (if any) as the High Court may think fit,
  - (c) direct the Society to issue a certificate to the applicant free from conditions or subject to such conditions as the High Court may think fit,
  - (d) direct the Society not to issue a certificate,
  - (e) if a certificate has been issued, by order suspend it,
  - (f) if the certificate has been endorsed with a sole solicitor endorsement, by order suspend the endorsement, or
  - (g) make such other order as the High Court thinks fit.
- (5) On an appeal under subsection (2), the High Court may—
- (a) affirm the decision of the Society,
  - (b) direct the Society to approve the taking of one or more steps for the purposes of a condition within section 10(4)(b), or
  - (c) make such other order as the High Court thinks fit.
- (6) In relation to an appeal under this section the High Court may make such order as it thinks fit as to payment of costs.
- (7) The decision of the High Court on an appeal under subsection (1) or (2) shall be final.”

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Commencement Information

**I71** Sch. 16 para. 14 wholly in force at 1.7.2009 see s. 211 and [S.I. 2009/1365](#), [art. 2\(a\)\(iii\)](#) (subject to [art. 4](#))

15 After section 13 insert—

#### **“13ZA Application to practise as sole practitioner while practising certificate in force**

- (1) A solicitor whose practising certificate for the time being in force (his “current certificate”) does not have a sole solicitor endorsement, may apply to the Society for such an endorsement.
- (2) For the purposes of subsection (1) a practising certificate with a sole solicitor endorsement which is suspended is to be treated as having such an endorsement.
- (3) A solicitor may not apply under subsection (1) if he is suspended from practice as a sole solicitor.
- (4) An application must be—
  - (a) made in accordance with regulations under section 28, and
  - (b) accompanied by any fee payable under section 13ZB in respect of the endorsement applied for.
- (5) Where a sole solicitor endorsement is granted to an applicant of a prescribed description, the applicant's practising certificate shall have effect subject to any conditions prescribed in relation to applicants of that description.

“Prescribed” means prescribed by regulations under section 28(3B)(f).
- (6) A person who makes an application under this section may appeal to the High Court against—
  - (a) a decision to refuse the application, or
  - (b) a decision to impose a condition on a practising certificate in accordance with subsection (5).
- (7) The Society may by rules make provision, as respects any application under this section that is neither granted nor refused by the Society within such period as may be specified in the rules, for enabling an appeal to be brought under this section in relation to the application as if it had been refused by the Society.
- (8) On an appeal under this section the High Court may—
  - (a) affirm the decision of the Society,
  - (b) direct the Society to grant a sole solicitor endorsement,
  - (c) direct that the applicant's practising certificate is to have effect subject to such conditions (if any) as the High Court thinks fit, or
  - (d) make such other order as the High Court thinks fit.
- (9) In relation to an appeal under this section the High Court may make such order as it thinks fit as to payment of costs.
- (10) The decision of the High Court on an appeal under this section shall be final.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### 13ZB Fee payable on making of sole solicitor endorsement

- (1) Before a sole solicitor endorsement is granted under section 13ZA, there must be paid to the Society in respect of the endorsement a fee of such amount as the Society may from time to time determine.
- (2) Different fees may be specified for different categories of applicant and in different circumstances.
- (3) If a fee payable under this section would not otherwise be a practising fee for the purposes of section 51 of the Legal Services Act 2007, it is to be treated for the purposes of that section as such a fee.
- (4) In subsection (3) “practising fee” has the meaning given by that section.”

#### Commencement Information

**I72** Sch. 16 para. 15 wholly in force at 1.7.2009 see s. 211 and [S.I. 2009/1365](#), [art. 2\(a\)\(ii\)](#) (subject to [art. 3](#))

- 16 (1) Section 13A (imposition of conditions while practising certificates are in force) is amended as follows.
- (2) For subsections (2) to (5) substitute—
- “(2) The power conferred by subsection (1) is exercisable in relation to a solicitor at any time during the period for which the solicitor's current certificate is in force if—
- (a) under section 13ZA the Society grants a sole solicitor endorsement,  
or
- (b) it appears to the Society that the case is of a prescribed description.
- (3) “Prescribed” means prescribed by regulations under section 28.”
- (3) In subsection (6) for “Master” to the end substitute “ High Court against the decision of the Society. ”
- (4) In subsection (7)—
- (a) for “Master of the Rolls” (in both places) substitute “ High Court ”, and
- (b) for “he” substitute “ it ”.
- (5) After that subsection insert—
- “(7A) The decision of the High Court on an appeal under subsection (6) shall be final.”
- (6) For subsection (8) substitute—
- “(8) Subsections (4) and (5) of section 10 apply for the purposes of subsection (1) of this section as they apply for the purposes of that section.”
- (7) After that subsection insert—
- “(9) A solicitor who holds a practising certificate subject to a condition imposed under subsection (1) which prohibits that solicitor from taking any steps specified in the condition, except with the approval of the Society, may



*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

appeal to the High Court against any decision by the Society to refuse to approve the taking of any step for the purposes of that condition.

- (10) On an appeal under subsection (9), the High Court may—
- (a) affirm the decision of the Society,
  - (b) direct the Society to approve the taking of one or more steps for the purposes of the condition, or
  - (c) make such other order as the High Court thinks fit.
- (11) The decision of the High Court on an appeal under subsection (9) shall be final.
- (12) In relation to an appeal under this section the High Court may make such order as it thinks fit as to payment of costs.”

#### Commencement Information

**I73** Sch. 16 para. 16 wholly in force at 1.7.2009 see s. 211 and [S.I. 2009/1365](#), [art. 2\(a\)\(iii\)](#) (subject to [art. 4](#))

- 17 In section 13B (suspension of practising certificates where solicitors convicted of fraud or serious crime)—
- (a) in subsection (1), after “practising certificate” insert “ or sole solicitor endorsement ”,
  - (b) in subsection (6), after “practice” insert “ or from practice as a sole solicitor ”,
  - (c) in subsection (7) for “Master of the Rolls” substitute “ High Court ”,
  - (d) in subsection (8)—
    - (i) for “Master of the Rolls” (in both places) substitute “ High Court ”,
    - (ii) in paragraph (b), for “shall not be suspended but” substitute “ or sole solicitor endorsement shall not be suspended, but that the appellant's certificate ”, and
    - (iii) in paragraph (d) for “he” substitute “ it ”, and
  - (e) after that subsection insert—

“(9) In relation to an appeal under subsection (7) the High Court may make such order as it thinks fit as to payment of costs.

(10) The decision of the High Court on an appeal under subsection (7) shall be final.”

#### Commencement Information

**I74** Sch. 16 para. 17 wholly in force at 1.7.2009 see s. 211 and [S.I. 2009/1365](#), [art. 2\(a\)\(iii\)](#) (subject to [art. 4](#))

- 18 Omit section 14 (commencement, expiry and replacement of practising certificates).
- 19 In section 15 (suspension of practising certificates), in subsection (1A)—
- (a) after “6(1)” insert “ , 6A(1) ”,
  - (b) after “1(1)(a)(i),” insert “ (aa), ”, and
  - (c) after “section” insert “ 31 or ”.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- 20 (1) Section 16 (duration of suspension of practising certificates) is amended as follows.
- (2) For subsection (1) substitute—
- “(1) Where a practising certificate is suspended, it expires on such date as may be prescribed by regulations under section 28.”
- (3) In subsection (3)(c) for “the replacement date of the certificate” substitute “ the date on which his certificate will expire ”.
- (4) In subsection (5)—
- (a) for “Master of the Rolls, who” substitute “ High Court, which ”, and
- (b) in paragraph (b) for “he” substitute “ it ”.
- (5) After that subsection insert—
- “(6) In relation to an appeal under subsection (5) the High Court may make such order as it thinks fit as to payment of costs.
- (7) The decision of the High Court on an appeal under subsection (5) shall be final.”

#### **Commencement Information**

**I75** Sch. 16 para. 20 wholly in force at 1.7.2009 see s. 211 and [S.I. 2009/1365](#), [art. 2\(a\)\(iii\)](#) (subject to [art. 4](#))

- 21 In section 17 (publicity in relation to suspension of practising certificates), in subsections (1) and (2) omit “in the London Gazette”.
- 22 After section 17 insert—

#### **“17A Suspension of sole solicitor endorsement**

- (1) The making by the Tribunal or by the court of an order suspending a solicitor from practice as a sole solicitor shall operate to suspend any sole solicitor endorsement of that solicitor for the time being in force.
- (2) For the purposes of this Act, a sole solicitor endorsement shall be deemed not to be in force at any time while it is suspended.
- (3) Subsection (2) is subject to section 13ZA(2).

#### **17B Duration and publicity of suspension of sole solicitor endorsement**

- (1) Where a sole solicitor endorsement is suspended, it expires on such date as may be prescribed by regulations under section 28.
- (2) Where a solicitor's sole solicitor endorsement is suspended—
- (a) by an order under section 13(4), or
- (b) by virtue of section 17A(1) in circumstances where the period of that suspension expires before the date on which his endorsement will expire,
- the solicitor may at any time before the endorsement expires apply to the Society to terminate the suspension.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) Section 16(4) to (7) apply in relation to an application under subsection (2) as they apply in relation to an application under section 16(3).
- (4) Where a solicitor's sole solicitor endorsement is suspended by an order under section 13(4) or by virtue of section 17A(1), the Society shall forthwith cause notice of that suspension to be published and a note of it to be entered against the name of the solicitor on the roll.
- (5) Where any suspension is terminated by virtue of section 16(4) or (5), as applied by subsection (3) of this section, the Society shall forthwith cause a note of that termination to be entered against the name of the solicitor on the roll and, if so requested in writing by the solicitor, a notice of it to be published.”

23 For section 18 (evidence as to holding of practising certificates) substitute—

**“18 Extracts from the roll or register etc as evidence**

- (1) An extract from the roll, or an extract from the register kept under section 10A, which is certified as correct by the Society is evidence of the matters mentioned in it.
  - (2) A certificate from the Society stating that—
    - (a) a person's name is or was on the roll, or
    - (b) a person is or was registered in the register kept under section 10A, is evidence of the matters stated.”
- 24 Omit section 19 (rights of practising and rights of audience).
- 25 For section 20 (unqualified person not to act as solicitor) substitute—

**“20 Unqualified person not to act as solicitor**

- (1) No unqualified person is to act as a solicitor.
  - (2) Any person who contravenes subsection (1) is guilty of an offence and liable on conviction on indictment to imprisonment for not more than 2 years or to a fine, or to both.”
- 26 Omit—
- (a) sections 22 and 22A (unqualified person not to prepare certain instruments etc), and
  - (b) section 23 (unqualified person not to prepare papers for probate etc).

**Commencement Information**

**I76** Sch. 16 para. 26 wholly in force at 1.1.2010, see s. 211 and [S.I. 2009/3250](#), [art. 2\(f\)\(ii\)](#) (subject to [art. 5](#) and with [art. 9](#))

- 27 In section 24 (application of penal provisions to body corporate), in subsection (2) from “sections” to the end substitute “ section 20 the reference to an unqualified person and the reference to a person both include a reference to a body corporate. ”

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Commencement Information**

**I77** Sch. 16 para. 27 wholly in force at 1.1.2010, see s. 211 and S.I. 2009/3250, **art. 2(f)(ii)** (subject to **art. 5** and with **art. 9**)

28 In section 26 (time limit for commencement of certain proceedings) omit “, 22 or 23”.

**Commencement Information**

**I78** Sch. 16 para. 28 wholly in force at 1.1.2010, see s. 211 and S.I. 2009/3250, **art. 2(f)(ii)** (subject to **art. 5** and with **art. 9**)

29 Omit section 27 (saving for persons authorised to conduct legal proceedings).

30 (1) Section 28 (regulations) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1)—

- (a) for “Master of the Rolls” substitute “ Society ”,
- (b) omit “, with the concurrence of the Secretary of State and the Lord Chief Justice,”,
- (c) in paragraph (c) omit “and applications for them”,
- (d) after that paragraph insert—
  - “(ca) sole solicitor endorsements and applications for them,”, and
- (e) in paragraph (d) for “section 9” substitute “ section 10A ”.

(3) Omit subsections (2) and (3).

(4) In subsection (3A)—

- (a) for “may—” insert “may (among other things)—
  - (za) make provision about the form in which the roll is to be kept and the manner in which entries are to be made, altered and removed;”,
- (b) omit “and” at the end of paragraph (b), and
- (c) after paragraph (d) insert—
  - “(e) require the information on the roll to be made available to the public;
  - (f) specify the manner in which information is to be made so available and require it to be made so available during office hours and without charge.”

(5) After that subsection insert—

“(3B) Regulations about practising certificates or sole solicitor endorsements may (among other things)—

- (a) prescribe the form and manner in which applications for, or relating to, practising certificates or sole solicitor endorsements are to be made;
- (b) prescribe information which must be included in or accompany such applications;

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

**Changes to legislation:** *Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) make provision about time limits for dealing with such applications, and confer on a person power to extend or bring forward such a time limit in prescribed circumstances;
  - (d) prescribe the requirements which applicants for practising certificates must satisfy before they may be issued with a practising certificate;
  - (e) prescribe descriptions of applicants, and conditions in relation to them, for the purposes of section 10(2) (circumstances in which practising certificates must be issued subject to prescribed conditions);
  - (f) prescribe descriptions of applicants, and conditions in relation to them, for the purposes of section 13ZA(5) (circumstances in which a practising certificate endorsed with a sole solicitor endorsement after it was issued must be made subject to prescribed conditions);
  - (g) prescribe circumstances for the purposes of section 10(3) (circumstances in which application may be refused etc in the public interest);
  - (h) make provision about when conditions imposed on practising certificates take effect (including provision conferring power on the Society to direct that a condition is not to have effect until the conclusion of any appeal in relation to it);
  - (i) make provision for the commencement, duration, replacement, withdrawal and expiry of practising certificates or sole solicitor endorsements;
  - (j) prescribe circumstances for the purposes of section 13A(2) (circumstances in which conditions can be imposed during period of practising certificate);
  - (k) require solicitors who hold practising certificates to notify the Society of such matters as may be prescribed, at such times, or in such circumstances as may be prescribed.
- (3C) Regulations about the keeping of the register under section 10A may (among other things)—
- (a) make provision about the form in which the register is to be kept and the manner in which entries are to be made, altered and removed;
  - (b) require information of a specified kind to be included in entries in the register;
  - (c) require information (or information of a specified description) on the register to be made available to the public;
  - (d) specify the manner in which it is to be made so available and require it to be made so available during office hours and without charge.
- (3D) Regulations under this section may make provision for appeals to the High Court against decisions made by the Society under the regulations.
- (3E) In relation to an appeal under regulations made by virtue of subsection (3D), the High Court may make such order as it thinks fit as to payment of costs.
- (3F) The decision of the High Court on such an appeal shall be final.
- (3G) Regulations under this section may—

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) provide for a person to exercise a discretion in dealing with any matter;
- (b) include incidental, supplementary and consequential provision;
- (c) make transitory or transitional provision and savings;
- (d) make provision generally or only in relation to specified cases or subject to specified exceptions;
- (e) make different provision for different cases.”

(6) Omit subsections (4) and (5).

#### Commencement Information

**I79** Sch. 16 para. 30 wholly in force at 1.7.2009 see s. 211 and [S.I. 2009/1365](#), [art. 2\(a\)\(iv\)](#) (subject to [arts. 3, 4](#))

31 (1) Section 31 (rules as to professional practice, conduct and discipline) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1)—

- (a) for “Council may, if they think fit,” substitute “ Society may ”,
- (b) omit “, with the concurrence of the Master of the Rolls,”,
- (c) after “conduct” insert “, fitness to practise ”,
- (d) for “Council” (in the second place) substitute “ Society ”, and
- (e) after “being” insert “, or have been, ”.

(3) After that subsection insert—

“(1A) The powers conferred on the Society by subsection (1) include power to make, in relation to solicitors, provision of a kind which the Society would be prohibited from making but for section 157(5)(c) of the Legal Services Act 2007 (exception from prohibition on approved regulators making provision for redress).”

(4) Omit subsections (3) and (4).

#### Commencement Information

**I80** Sch. 16 para. 31(1)(2)(a)(d) in force at 7.3.2008 by [S.I. 2008/222](#), [art. 2\(j\)\(i\)](#); Sch. 16 para. 31(2)(c)(e) in force at 31.3.2009 by [S.I. 2009/503](#), [art. 2\(b\)\(i\)](#); Sch. 16 para. 31(2)(b)(3)(4) in force at 1.1.2010 by [S.I. 2009/3250](#), [art. 2\(f\)\(ii\)](#) (with [art. 9](#))

32 (1) Section 32 (accounts rules and trust accounts rules) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1)—

- (a) for “Council” (in the first place) substitute “ Society ”,
- (b) omit “, with the concurrence of the Master of the Rolls”,
- (c) for paragraphs (a) and (b) substitute—
  - “(a) as to the opening and keeping by solicitors of accounts at banks or with building societies for money within subsection (1A);

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (aa) as to the operation by solicitors of accounts kept by their clients or other persons at banks or with building societies or other financial institutions;
  - (b) as to the keeping by solicitors of accounts containing information as to money received, held or paid by them for or on account of their clients or other persons (including money received, held or paid under a trust); and”
  - (d) in paragraph (c) of that subsection—
    - (i) for “Council” substitute “ Society ”,
    - (ii) for “them” substitute “ it ”, and
    - (iii) after “being” insert “ , or have been, ”, and
  - (e) omit from “and the rules” to the end.
- (3) After that subsection insert—
- “(1A) The money referred to in subsection (1) is money (including money held on trust) which is received, held or dealt with for clients or other persons.”
- (4) Omit subsection (2).
- (5) In subsection (4)—
- (a) for “Council” substitute “ Society ”,
  - (b) omit “or (2)”, and
  - (c) after “solicitor” (in both places) insert “ or any of his employees ”.
- (6) In subsection (5) for “by virtue” to the end substitute “ or a part of the rules. ”
- (7) Omit subsection (6).

#### Commencement Information

**181** Sch. 16 para. 32(1)(2)(a)(c)-(e)(3)-(7) in force at 31.3.2009 by [S.I. 2009/503](#), [art. 2\(b\)\(i\)](#); Sch. 16 para. 32(2)(b) in force at 1.1.2010 by [S.I. 2009/3250](#), [art. 2\(f\)\(ii\)](#) (with [art. 9](#))

- 33 (1) Section 33 (interest on clients' money) is amended as follows.
- (2) For subsection (1) substitute—
- “(1) Rules under section 32 may require a solicitor to pay interest, or sums in lieu of and equivalent to interest, to a client, any other person or any trust, for whom the solicitor holds money.”
- (3) In subsection (2), omit from “and the rules” to the end.
- (4) For subsection (3) substitute—
- “(3) Except as provided by the rules, a solicitor is not liable to account to any client, other person or trust for interest received by the solicitor on money held at a bank or building society in an account which is for money received or held for, or on account of—
- (a) the solicitor's clients, other persons or trusts, generally, or
  - (b) that client, person or trust, separately.”
- (5) For subsection (4) substitute—

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

“(4) Rules under section 32 may—

- (a) prescribe the circumstances in which a solicitor may make arrangements to limit or exclude an obligation imposed on the solicitor by rules made by virtue of this section, and
- (b) prescribe the requirements to be met by and in relation to those arrangements.”

34 (1) Section 33A (inspection of practice bank accounts etc) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1)—

- (a) for “Council” (in each place) substitute “ Society ”, and
- (b) omit “, with the concurrence of the Master of the Rolls,”.

(3) In subsection (2) for “Council” substitute “ Society ”.

#### **Commencement Information**

**I82** Sch. 16 para. 34(1)(2)(a)(3) in force at 7.3.2008 by [S.I. 2008/222](#), [art. 2\(j\)\(i\)](#); Sch. 16 para. 34(2)(b) in force at 1.1.2010 by [S.I. 2009/3250](#), [art. 2\(f\)\(ii\)](#) (with [art. 9](#))

35 (1) Section 34 (accountants' reports) is amended as follows.

(2) For subsections (1) to (5A) substitute—

- “(1) The Society may make rules requiring solicitors to provide the Society with reports signed by an accountant (in this section referred to as an “accountant's report”) at such times or in such circumstances as may be prescribed by the rules.
- (2) The rules may specify requirements to be met by, or in relation to, an accountant's report (including requirements relating to the accountant who signs the report).”

(3) In subsection (6) for “this section or of any rules made under it” substitute “ any rules made under this section ”.

(4) Omit subsections (7) and (8).

(5) At the end insert—

- “(9) Where an accountant, during the course of preparing an accountant's report—
  - (a) discovers evidence of fraud or theft in relation to money held by a solicitor for a client or any other person (including money held on trust) or money held in an account of a client of a solicitor, or an account of another person, which is operated by the solicitor, or
  - (b) obtains information which the accountant has reasonable cause to believe is likely to be of material significance in determining whether a solicitor is a fit and proper person to hold money for clients or other persons (including money held on trust) or to operate an account of a client of the solicitor or an account of another person,
 the accountant must immediately give a report of the matter to the Society.



*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (10) No duty to which an accountant is subject is to be regarded as contravened merely because of any information or opinion contained in a report under subsection (9).”

36 After section 34 insert—

*“Sole solicitors*

#### **34A Employees of solicitors**

- (1) Rules made by the Society may provide for any rules made under section 31, 32, 33A or 34 to have effect in relation to employees of solicitors with such additions, omissions or other modifications as appear to the Society to be necessary or expedient.
- (2) If any employee of a solicitor fails to comply with rules made under section 31 or 32, as they have effect in relation to the employee by virtue of subsection (1), any person may make a complaint in respect of that failure to the Tribunal.
- (3) If any employee of a solicitor fails to comply with rules made under section 34, as they have effect in relation to the employee by virtue of subsection (1), a complaint in respect of that failure may be made to the Tribunal by or on behalf of the Society.

#### **34B Employees of solicitors: accounts rules etc**

- (1) Where rules made under section 32(1) have effect in relation to employees of solicitors by virtue of section 34A(1), section 85 applies in relation to an employee to whom the rules have effect who keeps an account with a bank or building society in pursuance of such rules as it applies in relation to a solicitor who keeps such an account in pursuance of rules under section 32.
- (2) Subsection (3) applies where rules made under section 32—
  - (a) contain any such provision as is referred to in section 33(1), and
  - (b) have effect in relation to employees of solicitors by virtue of section 34A(1).
- (3) Except as provided by the rules, an employee to whom the rules are applied is not liable to account to any client, other person or trust for interest received by the employee on money held at a bank or building society in an account which is for money received or held for, or on account of—
  - (a) clients of the solicitor, other persons or trusts, generally, or
  - (b) that client, person or trust, separately.
- (4) Subsection (5) applies where rules made under section 33A(1) have effect in relation to employees of solicitors by virtue of section 34A(1).
- (5) The Society may disclose a report on or information about the accounts of any employee of a solicitor obtained in pursuance of such rules for use—
  - (a) in investigating the possible commission of an offence by the solicitor or any employees of the solicitor, and

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(b) in connection with any prosecution of the solicitor or any employees of the solicitor consequent on the investigation.

(6) Where rules made under section 34 have effect in relation to employees of solicitors by virtue of section 34A(1), section 34(9) and (10) apply in relation to such an employee as they apply in relation to a solicitor.”

37 For section 36 (compensation fund) substitute—

**“36 Compensation grants**

(1) The Society may make rules concerning the grant of compensation by the Society in respect of loss that a person has suffered, or is likely to suffer, as a result of—

- (a) an act or omission of a solicitor or former solicitor;
- (b) an act or omission of an employee or former employee of a solicitor or former solicitor;
- (c) the exercise by the Society of any of its powers under Part 2 of Schedule 1.

(2) The rules may (among other things) make provision—

- (a) as to the circumstances in which such grants may and may not be made;
- (b) as to the form and manner in which a compensation claim is to be made;
- (c) as to the procedure for determining compensation claims;
- (d) for the making of grants in respect of a compensation claim before it is finally determined;
- (e) for a grant to be made by way of loan in such circumstances and on such terms as may be prescribed in, or determined in accordance with, the rules;
- (f) for a grant to be made by way of making good a deficiency in monies held in trust by the Society under paragraph 6 or 6A of Schedule 1;
- (g) as to the minimum and maximum grants payable in respect of a compensation claim (or a claim of a prescribed description);
- (h) for the Society to be subrogated, to such extent as may be prescribed, to any rights and remedies of a person to whom a grant is made in relation to the loss in respect of which the grant is made.

(3) The circumstances which may be prescribed by virtue of subsection (2)(a) include in particular—

- (a) the nature of the loss;
- (b) in a case within subsection (1)(a) or (b), the nature of the act or omission.

(4) For the purposes of subsection (2)(f), there is a deficiency if the monies mentioned in that subsection are insufficient to satisfy the claims of all persons with a beneficial interest in the monies.

(5) The Society may prepare and publish guidance as to the criteria it will apply in deciding whether to make a grant in respect of a compensation claim, or any part of a compensation claim.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (6) Where the Society decides—
  - (a) not to make a grant in respect of a compensation claim or any part of a compensation claim, or
  - (b) to make a grant of less than the amount claimed,it must give reasons for its decision.
- (7) Rules under subsection (1) which are not regulatory arrangements within the meaning of the Legal Services Act 2007 are to be treated as such arrangements for the purposes of that Act.
- (8) In this section—
  - “compensation claim” means a claim for the Society to make a grant of the kind mentioned in subsection (1);
  - “prescribed” means prescribed in rules under subsection (1).

### **36A Compensation funds**

- (1) Compensation rules may require or authorise the Society to establish or maintain a fund or funds (“compensation funds”) for the purpose of making grants in respect of compensation claims.
- (2) Compensation rules may require solicitors, or solicitors of a description prescribed in the rules, to make contributions to compensation funds of such amounts, at such times and in such circumstances, as may be prescribed in or determined in accordance with the rules.
- (3) Any amount payable by virtue of such a requirement may be recovered as a debt due to the Society.
- (4) Subsection (2) does not apply to a solicitor who is a Crown Prosecutor.
- (5) The Society may invest any money which forms part of a compensation fund in any investments in which trustees may invest under the general power of investment in section 3 of the Trustee Act 2000 (as restricted by sections 4 and 5 of that Act).
- (6) The Society may insure with authorised insurers, in relation to compensation funds, for such purposes and on such terms as it considers appropriate.
- (7) The Society may, in such circumstances and subject to such conditions as may be prescribed in or determined in accordance with compensation rules—
  - (a) borrow for the purposes of a compensation fund;
  - (b) charge investments which form part of a compensation fund as security for borrowing by the Society for the purposes of that fund.
- (8) A compensation fund may be applied by the Society for the purposes mentioned in subsection (9) (in addition to the making of grants in respect of compensation claims).
- (9) The purposes are—
  - (a) payment of premiums on insurance policies effected under subsection (6);

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) repayment of money borrowed by the Society for the purposes of the fund and payment of interest on any money so borrowed;
- (c) payment of any other costs, charges or expenses incurred by the Society in establishing, maintaining, protecting administering or applying the fund;
- (d) payment of any costs, charges or expenses incurred by the Society in exercising its powers under Part 2 of Schedule 1;
- (e) payment of any costs or damages incurred by the Society, its employees or agents as a result of proceedings against it or them for any act or omission of its or theirs in good faith and in the exercise or purported exercise of such powers.

(10) In this section—

- “compensation claim” has the same meaning as in section 36;
- “compensation fund” has the meaning given by subsection (1);
- “compensation rules” means rules under section 36(1).”

#### Commencement Information

**I83** Sch. 16 para. 37 wholly in force at 31.3.2009, see s. 211 and [S.I. 2009/503](#), [art. 2\(b\)\(i\)](#) (subject to [arts. 4, 5](#))

- 38 In section 37 (professional indemnity)—
- (a) in subsection (1) for “Council, with the concurrence of the Master of the Rolls,” substitute “ Society ”, and
  - (b) in subsection (3)(h)—
    - (i) for “Council” substitute “ Society ”,
    - (ii) for “they consider” substitute “ it considers ”, and
    - (iii) after “being” insert “ , or have been, ”.

#### Commencement Information

**I84** Sch. 16 para. 38(a) in force for certain purposes and Sch. 16 para. 38(b)(i)(ii) in force at 7.3.2008 by [S.I. 2008/222](#), [art. 2\(j\)\(i\)](#); Sch. 16 para. 38(b)(iii) in force at 30.6.2008 by [S.I. 2008/1436](#), [art. 2\(d\)\(i\)](#); Sch. 16 para. 38(a) in force at 1.1.2010 by [S.I. 2009/3250](#), [art. 2\(f\)\(ii\)](#)

VALID FROM 06/10/2010

39 Omit section 37A (redress for inadequate professional services).

40 Omit section 40 (solicitor not to commence or defend actions while in prison).

41 (1) Section 41 (employment by solicitor of person struck off or suspended) is amended as follows.

(2) After subsection (1A) insert—

“(1B) Where—

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) a solicitor (“the employed solicitor”) is employed by another solicitor in accordance with a written permission granted under this section, and
  - (b) the employed solicitor is disqualified from practising as a solicitor by reason of a fact mentioned in subsection (1)(b) or (c),
- section 20(1) does not apply in relation to anything done by the employed solicitor in the course of that employment.”

(3) In subsection (3)—

- (a) for “Master of the Rolls who” substitute “ High Court which ”, and
- (b) in paragraph (b) for “he” substitute “ it ”.

(4) In subsection (4) for “shall” to the end substitute “may—

- (a) order that his name be struck off the roll,
- (b) order that he be suspended from practice for such period as the Tribunal or court thinks fit, or
- (c) make such other order in the matter as it thinks fit.”

(5) After that subsection insert—

“(4A) In relation to an appeal under subsection (3) the High Court may make such order as it thinks fit as to payment of costs.

(4B) The decision of the High Court on an appeal under subsection (3) shall be final.”

(6) Omit subsection (5).

#### Commencement Information

**185** Sch. 16 para. 41(1)(2) in force at 31.3.2009 by [S.I. 2009/503](#), [art. 2\(b\)\(i\)](#); Sch. 16 para. 41(3)-(6) in force at 1.7.2009 by [S.I. 2009/1365](#), [art. 2\(a\)\(iii\)](#) (subject to [art. 4](#))

42 (1) Section 43 (control of solicitors' employees and consultants) is amended as follows.

(2) For subsections (1), (1A) and (2) substitute—

“(1) Where a person who is or was involved in a legal practice but is not a solicitor—

- (a) has been convicted of a criminal offence which is such that in the opinion of the Society it would be undesirable for the person to be involved in a legal practice in one or more of the ways mentioned in subsection (1A), or
- (b) has, in the opinion of the Society, occasioned or been a party to, with or without the connivance of a solicitor, an act or default in relation to a legal practice which involved conduct on his part of such a nature that in the opinion of the Society it would be undesirable for him to be involved in a legal practice in one or more of the ways mentioned in subsection (1A),

the Society may either make, or make an application to the Tribunal for it to make, an order under subsection (2) with respect to that person.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (1A) A person is involved in a legal practice for the purposes of this section if the person—
- (a) is employed or remunerated by a solicitor in connection with the solicitor's practice;
  - (b) is undertaking work in the name of, or under the direction or supervision of, a solicitor;
  - (c) is employed or remunerated by a recognised body;
  - (d) is employed or remunerated by a manager or employee of a recognised body in connection with that body's business;
  - (e) is a manager of a recognised body;
  - (f) has or intends to acquire an interest in such a body.
- (2) An order made by the Society or the Tribunal under this subsection is an order which states one or more of the following—
- (a) that as from the specified date—
    - (i) no solicitor shall employ or remunerate, in connection with his practice as a solicitor, the person with respect to whom the order is made,
    - (ii) no employee of a solicitor shall employ or remunerate, in connection with the solicitor's practice, the person with respect to whom the order is made,
    - (iii) no recognised body shall employ or remunerate that person, and
    - (iv) no manager or employee of a recognised body shall employ or remunerate that person in connection with the business of that body,
 except in accordance with a Society permission;
  - (b) that as from the specified date no recognised body or manager or employee of such a body shall, except in accordance with a Society permission, permit the person with respect to whom the order is made to be a manager of the body;
  - (c) that as from the specified date no recognised body or manager or employee of such a body shall, except in accordance with a Society permission, permit the person with respect to whom the order is made to have an interest in the body.
- (2A) The Society may make regulations prescribing charges to be paid to the Society by persons who are the subject of an investigation by the Society as to whether there are grounds for the Society—
- (a) to make an order under subsection (2), or
  - (b) to make an application to the Tribunal for it to make such an order.
- (2B) Regulations under subsection (2A) may—
- (a) make different provision for different cases or purposes;
  - (b) provide for the whole or part of a charge payable under the regulations to be repaid in such circumstances as may be prescribed by the regulations.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(2C) Any charge which a person is required to pay under regulations under subsection (2A) is recoverable by the Society as a debt due to the Society from the person.”

(3) In subsection (5) omit—

- (a) “by any solicitor”, and
- (b) the words from “but” to the end.

(4) After that subsection insert—

“(5A) In this section—

“manager”, in relation to a recognised body, has the same meaning as it has in relation to a body in the Legal Services Act 2007 (see section 207 of that Act);

“recognised body” means a body recognised under section 9 of the Administration of Justice Act 1985;

“specified date” means such date as may be specified in the order;

“Society permission” means permission in writing granted by the Society for such period and subject to such conditions as the Society may think fit to specify in the permission.

(5B) A person has an interest in a recognised body for the purposes of this section if the person has an interest in that body within the meaning of Part 5 of the Legal Services Act 2007 (see sections 72 and 109 of that Act).”

#### Commencement Information

**186** Sch. 16 para. 42 wholly in force at 31.3.2009, see s. 211 and [S.I. 2009/503](#), [art. 2\(b\)\(i\)](#) (subject to [art. 4](#))

43 In section 44 (offences in connection with orders under section 43(2))—

(a) for subsection (1) substitute—

“(1) It is an offence for a person in respect of whom there is in force an order under section 43(2) which contains provision within section 43(2)(a)—

- (a) to seek or accept any employment or remuneration from a solicitor, or an employee of a solicitor, in connection with the practice carried on by that solicitor without previously informing the solicitor or employee of the order;
- (b) to seek or accept any employment or remuneration from a recognised body, or a manager or employee of a recognised body, in connection with that body's business, without previously informing the body, or manager or employee, of the order.

(1A) It is an offence for a person in respect of whom there is in force an order under section 43(2) which contains provision within section 43(2)(b) to seek or accept a position as a manager of a recognised body, without previously informing that body of the order.

(1B) It is an offence for a person in respect of whom there is in force an order under section 43(2) which contains provision within

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

section 43(2)(c) to seek or accept an interest in a recognised body from any person, without previously informing that person and (if different) the recognised body of the order.

- (1C) A person guilty of an offence under subsection (1), (1A) or (1B) is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale.”
- (b) in subsection (2) for “the employment of that person” substitute “ the taking of any action ”, and
- (c) after subsection (4) insert—

“(5) In this section—

“manager” has the same meaning as in section 43;

“recognised body” means a body recognised under section 9 of the Administration of Justice Act 1985;

and for the purposes of subsection (1B) a person seeks or accepts an interest in a recognised body if the person seeks or accepts an interest which if it were obtained by the person would result in the person having an interest in that body within the meaning of Part 5 of the Legal Services Act 2007 (see sections 72 and 109 of that Act).”

44 For section 44B (examination of files) substitute—

**“44B Provision of information and documents by solicitors etc**

- (1) The Society may by notice require a person to whom this section applies—
- (a) to provide information, or information of a description, specified in the notice, or
  - (b) produce documents, or documents of a description, specified in the notice.
- (2) This section applies to—
- (a) a solicitor;
  - (b) an employee of a solicitor;
  - (c) a recognised body;
  - (d) an employee or manager of, or a person with an interest in, a recognised body.
- (3) The Society may give a notice under this section only if it is satisfied that it is necessary to do so for the purpose of investigating—
- (a) whether there has been professional misconduct by a solicitor;
  - (b) whether a solicitor, or an employee of a solicitor, has failed to comply with any requirements imposed by or by virtue of this Act or any rules made by the Society;
  - (c) whether a recognised body, or any of its managers or employees has failed to comply with any requirement imposed by or by virtue of the Administration of Justice Act 1985 or any rules made by the Society and applicable to the body, manager or employee by virtue of section 9 of that Act;
  - (d) whether there are grounds for making, or making an application to the Tribunal for it to make, an order under section 43(2) with respect



*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

to a person who is or was involved in a legal practice (within the meaning of section 43(1A)).

- (4) A notice under this section—
- (a) may specify the time and place at which, and manner and form in which, the information is to be provided or document is to be produced;
  - (b) must specify the period within which the information is to be provided or the document produced;
  - (c) may require the information to be provided or document to be produced to the Society or to a person specified in the notice.
- (5) The Society may pay to any person such reasonable costs as may be incurred by that person in connection with the provision of any information, or production of any document, by that person pursuant to a notice under this section.
- (6) Paragraphs 9(3) and (4) and 13, 15 and 16 of Schedule 1 apply in relation to the powers to obtain information conferred by this section, but for this purpose—
- (a) paragraph 9 of that Schedule has effect as if—
    - (i) in sub-paragraph (3) for “such documents” there were substituted “ information to which a notice given to him under section 44B applies ”,
    - (ii) in that sub-paragraph for “sub-paragraph (1)” there were substituted “ the notice ”, and
    - (iii) in sub-paragraph (4) for “produce” (in the first place) to the end there were substituted “ provide information pursuant to a notice under section 44B to provide the information to any person appointed by the Society at such time and place as may be specified in the order. ”, and
  - (b) the reference to the solicitor or his personal representative in paragraph 13 of that Schedule is to be construed as a reference to the person to whom the notice was given under this section.
- (7) Paragraphs 9 (other than sub-paragraphs (1) and (3)), 12, 13, 15 and 16 of Schedule 1 apply in relation to the powers to obtain documents conferred by this section as they apply in relation to the powers conferred by paragraph 9(1) of that Schedule, except that for this purpose—
- (a) any reference in paragraph 9 of that Schedule to a person appointed, or to a requirement, under sub-paragraph (1) of that paragraph is to be construed as a reference to a person appointed, or to a requirement to produce documents, under this section,
  - (b) any reference in that paragraph to any such documents as are mentioned in paragraph 9(1) of that Schedule is to be construed as a reference to any documents to which a notice under this section applies,
  - (c) the references to the solicitor or his firm in paragraph 9(5) and (6) of that Schedule, and the reference to the solicitor or personal representative in paragraph 9(7) of that Schedule, are to be construed as references to the person to whom the notice was given under this section, and

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (d) the reference in paragraph 9(12) of that Schedule to the Society is to be construed as including a reference to a person specified under subsection (4)(c).
- (8) Where powers conferred by Part 2 of Schedule 1 to the 1974 Act are exercisable in relation to a person within paragraph (a), (b), (c) or (d) of subsection (2), they continue to be so exercisable after the person has ceased to be a person within the paragraph in question.
- (9) In this section—
- “manager” has the same meaning as in the Legal Services Act 2007 (see section 207 of that Act);
- “recognised body” means a body recognised under section 9 of the Administration of Justice Act 1985;
- and the reference to a person who has an interest in a recognised body is to be construed in accordance with sections 72 and 109 of the Legal Services Act 2007.

#### **44BA Power to require explanation of document or information**

- (1) The Society may, by notice, require a person to whom a notice is given under section 44B (or a representative of the person) to attend at a time and place specified in the notice to provide an explanation of any information provided or document produced pursuant to the notice.
- (2) The Society may pay to any person such reasonable costs as may be incurred by that person in connection with that person's compliance with a requirement imposed under subsection (1).
- (3) Paragraphs 9(3) and (4) and 13, 15 and 16 of Schedule 1 apply in relation to a notice under this section, except that for this purpose—
- (a) paragraph 9 of that Schedule has effect as if—
- (i) in sub-paragraph (3) for “having” to “sub-paragraph (1)” there were substituted “refuses, neglects or otherwise fails to comply with a requirement under section 44BA(1)”, and
- (ii) in sub-paragraph (4) for “produce” (in the first place) to the end there were substituted “provide an explanation of any information provided or document produced pursuant to a notice under section 44B (or a representative of such a person) to attend at a time and place specified in the order to provide an explanation of any information so provided or document so produced.”, and
- (b) the reference to the solicitor or his personal representative in paragraph 13 of that Schedule is to be construed as a reference to the person to whom the notice was given under this section.

#### **44BB Provision of information and documents by other persons**

- (1) The High Court, on the application of the Society, may order a person to whom section 44B does not apply—
- (a) to provide information, or information of a description, specified in the notice, or

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) to produce documents, or documents of a description, specified in the notice.
- (2) The High Court may make an order under this section only if it is satisfied—
- (a) that it is likely that the information or document is in the possession or custody of, or under the control of, the person, and
  - (b) that there is reasonable cause to believe that the information or document is likely to be of material significance to an investigation into any of the matters mentioned in section 44B(3)(a) to (d).
- (3) An order under this section may direct the Society to pay to a person specified in the order such reasonable costs as may be incurred by that person in connection with the provision of any information, or production of any document, by that person pursuant to the order.
- (4) Section 44B(4) applies in relation to an order under this section as it applies in relation to a notice under section 44B.
- (5) Paragraphs 9(5A) and (7) to (12), 12, 13, 15 and 16 of Schedule 1 apply in relation to an order under this section as they apply in relation to an order under paragraph 9(4) of that Schedule, except that for this purpose—
- (a) the reference to the solicitor or personal representative in paragraph 9(7) of that Schedule is to be construed as a reference to the person in respect of whom the order under this section is made,
  - (b) the reference in paragraph 9(12) of that Schedule to the Society is to be read as including a reference to a person specified under section 44B(4)(c) (as applied by subsection (4) of this section), and
  - (c) the reference to the solicitor or his personal representative in paragraph 13 of that Schedule is to be construed as a reference to the person to whom the notice was given under this section.

#### **44BC Information offences**

- (1) It is an offence for a person who knows or suspects an investigation into any of the matters mentioned in section 44B(3)(a) to (d) is being or is likely to be conducted—
- (a) to falsify, conceal, destroy or otherwise dispose of a document which the person knows or suspects is or would be relevant to the investigation, or
  - (b) to cause or permit the falsification, concealment, destruction or disposal of such a document.
- (2) In proceedings for an offence under subsection (1) it is a defence for the accused to show that the accused had no intention of concealing facts disclosed by the documents from the person conducting the investigation.
- (3) It is an offence for a person, in purported compliance with a requirement imposed on the person under section 44B, 44BA or 44BB—
- (a) to provide information which the person knows to be false or misleading in a material particular, or
  - (b) recklessly to provide information which is false or misleading in a material particular.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (4) A person who is guilty of an offence under subsection (1) or (3) is liable—
- (a) on summary conviction, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding 12 months or a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum, or both;
  - (b) on conviction on indictment, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding 2 years or a fine, or both.
- (5) In relation to an offence under subsection (1) or (3) committed before the commencement of section 154(1) of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 the reference in subsection (4)(a) to 12 months is to be read as a reference to 6 months.”

**Commencement Information**

**I87** Sch. 16 para. 44 wholly in force at 31.3.2009, see s. 211 and [S.I. 2009/503, art. 2\(b\)\(i\)](#) (subject to [art. 4](#))

45 For section 44C (payment of costs of investigations) substitute—

**“44C Power to charge for costs of investigations**

- (1) The Society may make regulations prescribing charges to be paid to the Society by solicitors who are the subject of a discipline investigation.
- (2) A “discipline investigation” is an investigation carried out by the Society into—
  - (a) possible professional misconduct by a solicitor, or
  - (b) a failure or apprehended failure by a solicitor to comply with any requirement imposed by or by virtue of this Act or any rules made by the Society.
- (3) Regulations under this section may—
  - (a) make different provision for different cases or purposes;
  - (b) provide for the whole or part of a charge payable under the regulations to be repaid in such circumstances as may be prescribed by the regulations.
- (4) Any charge which a solicitor is required to pay under regulations under this section is recoverable by the Society as a debt due to the Society from the solicitor.
- (5) This section (other than subsection (2)(a)) applies in relation to an employee of a solicitor as it applies in relation to a solicitor.”

**Commencement Information**

**I88** Sch. 16 para. 45 wholly in force at 31.3.2009, see s. 211 and [S.I. 2009/503, art. 2\(b\)\(i\)](#) (subject to [art. 4](#))

46 After that section insert—

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### *“Disciplinary powers of the Society*

#### **44D Disciplinary powers of the Society**

- (1) This section applies where the Society is satisfied—
  - (a) that a solicitor or an employee of a solicitor has failed to comply with a requirement imposed by or by virtue of this Act or any rules made by the Society, or
  - (b) that there has been professional misconduct by a solicitor.
- (2) The Society may do one or both of the following—
  - (a) give the person a written rebuke;
  - (b) direct the person to pay a penalty not exceeding £2,000.
- (3) The Society may publish details of any action it has taken under subsection (2)(a) or (b), if it considers it to be in the public interest to do so.
- (4) Where the Society takes action against a person under subsection (2)(b), or decides to publish under subsection (3) details of any action taken under subsection (2)(a) or (b), it must notify the person in writing that it has done so.
- (5) A penalty imposed under subsection (2)(b) does not become payable until—
  - (a) the end of the period during which an appeal against the decision to impose the penalty, or the amount of the penalty, may be made under section 44E, or
  - (b) if such an appeal is made, such time as it is determined or withdrawn.
- (6) The Society may not publish under subsection (3) details of any action under subsection (2)(a) or (b)—
  - (a) during the period within which an appeal against—
    - (i) the decision to take the action,
    - (ii) in the case of action under subsection (2)(b), the amount of the penalty, or
    - (iii) the decision to publish the details,may be made under section 44E, or
  - (b) if such an appeal has been made, until such time as it is determined or withdrawn.
- (7) The Society must make rules—
  - (a) prescribing the circumstances in which the Society may decide to take action under subsection (2)(a) or (b);
  - (b) about the practice and procedure to be followed by the Society in relation to such action;
  - (c) governing the publication under subsection (3) of details of action taken under subsection (2)(a) or (b);and the Society may make such other rules in connection with the exercise of its powers under this section as it considers appropriate.
- (8) Before making rules under subsection (7), the Society must consult the Tribunal.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (9) A penalty payable under this section may be recovered as a debt due to the Society, and is to be forfeited to Her Majesty.
- (10) The Lord Chancellor may, by order, amend paragraph (b) of subsection (2) so as to substitute for the amount for the time being specified in that paragraph such other amount as may be specified in the order.
- (11) Before making an order under subsection (10), the Lord Chancellor must consult the Society.
- (12) An order under subsection (10) is to be made by statutory instrument subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.
- (13) This section is without prejudice to any power conferred on the Society or any other person to make an application or complaint to the Tribunal.

#### **44E Appeals against disciplinary action under section 44D**

- (1) A person may appeal against—
  - (a) a decision by the Society to rebuke that person under section 44D(2) (a) if a decision is also made to publish details of the rebuke;
  - (b) a decision by the Society to impose a penalty on that person under section 44D(2)(b) or the amount of that penalty;
  - (c) a decision by the Society to publish under section 44D(3) details of any action taken against that person under section 44D(2)(a) or (b).
- (2) Subsections (9)(b), (10)(a) and (b), (11) and (12) of section 46 (Tribunal rules about procedure for hearings etc) apply in relation to appeals under this section as they apply in relation to applications or complaints, except that subsection (11) of that section is to be read as if for “the applicant” to “application” there were substituted “any party to the appeal”.
- (3) Rules under section 46(9)(b) may, in particular, make provision about the period during which an appeal under this section may be made.
- (4) On an appeal under this section, the Tribunal has power to make such order as it thinks fit, and such an order may in particular—
  - (a) affirm the decision of the Society;
  - (b) revoke the decision of the Society;
  - (c) in the case of a penalty imposed under section 44D(2)(b), vary the amount of the penalty;
  - (d) in the case of a solicitor, contain provision for any of the matters mentioned in paragraphs (a) to (d) of section 47(2);
  - (e) in the case of an employee of a solicitor, contain provision for any of the matters mentioned in section 47(2E);
  - (f) make such provision as the Tribunal thinks fit as to payment of costs.
- (5) Where by virtue of subsection (4)(e) an order contains provision for any of the matters mentioned in section 47(2E)(c), section 47(2F) and (2G) apply as if the order had been made under section 47(2E)(c).
- (6) An appeal from the Tribunal shall lie to the High Court, at the instance of the Society or the person in respect of whom the order of the Tribunal was made.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (7) The High Court shall have power to make such order on an appeal under this section as it may think fit.
- (8) Any decision of the High Court on an appeal under this section shall be final.
- (9) This section is without prejudice to any power conferred on the Tribunal in connection with an application or complaint made to it.”

#### Commencement Information

**189** Sch. 16 para. 46 wholly in force at 31.3.2009, see s. 211 and [S.I. 2009/503](#), [art. 2\(b\)\(i\)](#) (subject to [art. 4](#))

- 47 (1) Section 46 (solicitors disciplinary tribunal) is amended as follows.
- (2) For subsection (5) substitute—

“(5) The Tribunal may pay its members such remuneration, fees or allowances as it may determine with the approval of the Legal Services Board.”
  - (3) After that subsection insert—

“(5A) The Tribunal may do anything calculated to facilitate, or incidental or conducive to, the carrying out of any of its functions.”
  - (4) Omit subsections (6) to (8).
  - (5) In subsection (9)—
    - (a) for “Subject to subsections (6) to (8), the” substitute “ The ”,
    - (b) omit “, with the concurrence of the Master of the Rolls,”, and
    - (c) in paragraph (b) after “complaints” insert “ (including provision about the composition of the Tribunal) ”.

#### Commencement Information

**190** Sch. 16 para. 47 wholly in force at 30.6.2008, see s. 211 and [S.I. 2008/1436](#), [art. 2\(d\)](#) (subject to [art. 4](#))

- 48 After that section insert—

#### “46A Funding of the Tribunal

- (1) The Tribunal must submit to the Society in respect of each year a budget for the year approved by the Legal Services Board.
- (2) A budget for a year is a statement of the amount of money which the Tribunal estimates is required to enable it to meet all of its expenditure in that year (having regard to any amounts received but not spent in previous years).
- (3) Before approving a statement for the purposes of subsection (1) the Legal Services Board must consult the Society.
- (4) The budget for a year must be submitted to the Society under subsection (1) no later than the date in the preceding year specified by the Society for the purposes of this subsection.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5) Before specifying a date for this purpose the Society must consult the Tribunal.
- (6) The amount specified in a budget submitted under subsection (1) must be paid by the Society to the Tribunal—
  - (a) in such instalments and at such times as may be agreed between the Society and the Tribunal, or
  - (b) in the absence of such agreement, before the beginning of the year to which the budget relates.
- (7) The Society may pay the Tribunal such other amounts as the Society considers appropriate.
- (8) In this section “year” means a calendar year.”

#### **Commencement Information**

**191** Sch. 16 para. 48 wholly in force at 30.6.2008, see s. 211 and [S.I. 2008/1436](#), **art. 2(d)(i)** (subject to [art. 4](#))

- 49 In section 47 (jurisdiction and powers of Tribunal)—
- (a) in subsection (1), after paragraph (e) insert—
    - “(ea) by a solicitor who has been suspended from practice as a sole solicitor for an unspecified period, by order of the Tribunal, for the termination of that suspension;”,
  - (b) in subsection (2) for “subsection” (where it first occurs) substitute “subsections (2E) and ”,
  - (c) after subsection (2)(b) insert—
    - “(ba) the revocation of that solicitor's sole solicitor endorsement (if any);
    - (bb) the suspension of that solicitor from practice as a sole solicitor indefinitely or for a specified period;”,
  - (d) in subsection (2)(c) omit “not exceeding £5,000”,
  - (e) after subsection (2)(e) insert—
    - “(ea) the termination of that solicitor's unspecified period of suspension from practice as a sole solicitor;”,
  - (f) after subsection (2D) insert—
    - “(2E) On the hearing of any complaint made to the Tribunal by virtue of section 34A(2) or (3), the Tribunal shall have power to make one or more of the following—
      - (a) an order directing the payment by the employee to whom the complaint relates of a penalty to be forfeited to Her Majesty;
      - (b) an order requiring the Society to consider taking such steps as the Tribunal may specify in relation to that employee;
      - (c) if that employee is not a solicitor, an order which states one or more of the matters mentioned in paragraphs (a) to (c) of section 43(2);



*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (d) an order requiring the Society to refer to an appropriate regulator any matter relating to the conduct of that employee.
- (2F) Subsections (1) to (1C), (3) and (4) of section 44 apply in relation to an order under subsection (2E)(c) as they apply in relation to an order under section 43(2).
- (2G) Section 44(2), paragraph 16(1)(d) and (1A)(d) of Schedule 2 to the Administration of Justice Act 1985 and paragraph 15(3A) of Schedule 14 to the Courts and Legal Services Act 1990 apply in relation to an order under subsection (2E)(c) as they apply in relation to an order under section 43(2).
- (2H) For the purposes of subsection (2E)(d) an “appropriate regulator” in relation to an employee means—
  - (a) if the employee is an authorised person in relation to a reserved legal activity (within the meaning of the Legal Services Act 2007), any relevant approved regulator (within the meaning of that Act) in relation to that employee, and
  - (b) if the employee carries on activities which are not reserved legal activities (within the meaning of that Act), any body which regulates the carrying on of such activities by the employee.”
- (g) after subsection (3A) insert—
 

“(3B) For the avoidance of doubt, nothing in this section permits the Tribunal to make an order requiring redress to be made in respect of any act or omission of any person.”, and
- (h) omit subsections (4) and (5).

#### Commencement Information

**I92** Sch. 16 para. 49(b)(d)(f)(h) in force at 31.3.2009 by [S.I. 2009/503](#), [art. 2\(b\)\(i\)](#) (subject to [art. 4](#)); Sch. 16 para. 49(a)(c)(e) in force at 1.7.2009 by [S.I. 2009/1365](#), [art. 2\(a\)\(i\)](#)

- 50 In section 48 (orders of Tribunal)—
- (a) in subsection (2)(b)—
    - (i) after “(e),” insert “(ea),”, and
    - (ii) omit “in the London Gazette”,
  - (b) in subsection (3) for “Subject to section 43(5), any” substitute “Any”, and
  - (c) after subsection (4) insert—
 

“(5) In the case of orders of the Tribunal under section 44E, the reference in subsection (2)(a) to the application or complaint is to be read as a reference to the Tribunal's order.”

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Commencement Information

**I93** Sch. 16 para. 50(a)(ii) in force at 7.3.2008 by S.I. 2008/222, **art. 2(j)(i)**; Sch. 16 para. 50(b)(c) in force at 31.3.2009 by S.I. 2009/503, **art. 2(b)(i)**; Sch. 16 para. 50(a)(i) in force at 1.7.2009 by S.I. 2009/1365, **art. 2(a)(i)**

- 51 (1) Section 49 (appeals from Tribunal) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1) for “lie—” to the end substitute “ lie to the High Court ”.
- (3) In subsection (2), after “(3)” insert “ and to section 43(5) of the Administration of Justice Act 1985 ”.
- (4) In subsection (3) for “legal aid work (within the meaning of that section)” substitute “ providing representation funded by the Legal Services Commission as part of the Criminal Defence Service ”.
- (5) In subsection (4)—
- (a) omit “and the Master of the Rolls”, and
  - (b) for “they” substitute “ it ”.
- (6) For subsection (6) substitute—
- “(6) Any decision of the High Court—
- (a) on an application under section 43(3) or 47(1)(d), (e), (ea) or (f), or
  - (b) against an order under section 43(3A),
- shall be final.”
- (7) Omit subsection (7).

#### Commencement Information

**I94** Sch. 16 para. 51 wholly in force at 1.7.2009 see s. 211 and S.I. 2009/1365, **art. 2(a)(iii)** (subject to **art. 4**)

- 52 After that section insert—

#### “49A Appeals to the Tribunal instead of the High Court

- (1) The Society may, with the approval of the Tribunal, make rules which provide that in such circumstances as may be prescribed by the rules an appeal under any of the provisions listed in subsection (2) lies to the Tribunal and not to the High Court.
- (2) Those provisions are—
  - (a) section 8(4);
  - (b) section 13A(6);
  - (c) section 16(5);
  - (d) section 28(3D);
  - (e) section 41(3);
  - (f) paragraph 14 of Schedule 14 to the Courts and Legal Services Act 1990 (foreign lawyers: appeals against conditions or refusals).

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) Any decision of the Tribunal on an appeal by virtue of rules made under this section shall be final.”
- 53 In section 54 (restrictions on powers to strike names off roll)—
- (a) in subsection (1) for “service under articles” substitute “ persons seeking admission as solicitors ”, and
  - (b) in subsection (2) for paragraphs (a) and (b) substitute—
    - “(a) that a solicitor who undertook a training responsibility for him under training regulations neglected or omitted to take out a practising certificate; or
    - (b) that the name of a solicitor who undertook such a responsibility for a period has been removed from or struck off the roll after the end of that period.”
- 54 (1) Section 56 (orders as to remuneration for non-contentious business) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1)—
    - (a) in paragraph (a) for “Secretary of State” substitute “ Lord Chancellor ”,
    - (b) after paragraph (d) insert—
      - “(da) a member of the Legal Services Board nominated by that Board;”, and
    - (c) in paragraph (e) for “Secretary of State” substitute “ Lord Chancellor ”.
  - (3) In subsection (2) for “(the Secretary of State” to “think fit” substitute “ (the Lord Chancellor being one), may make general orders prescribing the general principles to be applied when determining ”.
  - (4) In subsection (3)—
    - (a) for “Secretary of State” substitute “ Lord Chancellor ”, and
    - (b) for “Council” (in both places) substitute “ Society ”.
  - (5) In subsection (4) for “An order” to the end of paragraph (a) substitute— “ The principles prescribed by an order under this section may provide that solicitors should be remunerated— ”.
  - (6) In subsection (5)—
    - (a) for “An order” to “reference” substitute— “ The general principles prescribed by an order under this section may provide that the amount of such remuneration is to be determined by having regard ”, and
    - (b) in paragraph (d) after “solicitor” insert “ , or any employee of his who is an authorised person, ”.
  - (7) After that subsection insert—
 

“(5A) In subsection (5) “authorised person” means a person who is an authorised person in relation to an activity which is a reserved legal activity, within the meaning of the Legal Services Act 2007 (see section 18 of that Act).”
  - (8) In subsection (6)(a) for “taxation” substitute “ assessment ”.
  - (9) In subsection (7)—
    - (a) for “taxation” substitute “ assessment ”, and
    - (b) for “regulated by” substitute “ subject to ”.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Commencement Information

**I95** Sch. 16 para. 54(1)(4)(b) in force for certain purposes at 7.3.2008 by [S.I. 2008/222](#), [art. 2\(j\)\(i\)](#); Sch. 16 para. 54(2)(a)(c)(3)(4)(a)(5)(6)(a)(9)(b) in force at 30.6.2008 by [S.I. 2008/1436](#), [art. 2\(d\)\(i\)](#); Sch. 16 para. 54(6)(b)(7) in force at 31.3.2009 by [S.I. 2009/503](#), [art. 2\(b\)\(i\)](#) (subject to [art. 4](#)); Sch. 16 para. 54(2)(b) in force at 1.7.2009 by [S.I. 2009/1365](#), [art. 2\(a\)\(i\)](#); Sch. 16 para. 54(8)(9)(a) in force at 1.1.2010 by [S.I. 2009/3250](#), [art. 2\(f\)\(ii\)](#)

- 55 In section 57 (non-contentious business agreements)—
- (a) in subsection (2) for “stamps” substitute “ taxes ”,
  - (b) in subsection (5)—
    - (i) for “taxation” substitute “ assessment ”, and
    - (ii) for “taxing officer” substitute “ costs officer ”, and
  - (c) in subsection (7)—
    - (i) for “taxation” substitute “ assessment ”, and
    - (ii) for “taxing officer” substitute “ costs officer ”.
- 56 In section 60 (effect of contentious business agreements)—
- (a) in subsection (1) for “taxation” substitute “ assessment ”,
  - (b) in subsection (2)—
    - (i) for “taxed” substitute “ assessed ”, and
    - (ii) for “taxation” substitute “ assessment ”, and
  - (c) for subsection (5) substitute—
    - “(5) A provision in a contentious business agreement that the solicitor shall not be liable for his negligence, or that of any employee of his, shall be void if the client is a natural person who, in entering that agreement, is acting for purposes which are outside his trade, business or profession.
    - (6) A provision in a contentious business agreement that the solicitor shall be relieved from any responsibility to which he would otherwise be subject as a solicitor shall be void.”

### Commencement Information

**I96** Sch. 16 para. 56(c) in force at 30.6.2008 by [S.I. 2008/1436](#), [art. 2\(d\)\(i\)](#); Sch. 16 para. 56(a)(b) in force at 1.1.2010 by [S.I. 2009/3250](#), [art. 2\(f\)\(ii\)](#) (with [art. 9](#))

- 57 In section 61 (enforcement of contentious business agreements)—
- (a) in subsection (2)(b) for “taxed” substitute “ assessed ”,
  - (b) in subsection (3) for “taxing officer” substitute “ costs officer ”,
  - (c) in subsection (4)—
    - (i) for “taxing officer” substitute “ costs officer ”, and
    - (ii) for “taxed” substitute “ assessed ”,
  - (d) in subsection (4B)—
    - (i) for “taxation” substitute “ assessment ”, and
    - (ii) for “taxing officer” substitute “ costs officer ”, and
  - (e) in subsection (5) for “taxed” substitute “ assessed ”.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- 58 In section 62 (contentious business agreements by certain representatives)—
- (a) in subsection (1) for “taxing officer” substitute “ costs officer ”, and
  - (b) in subsection (2)—
    - (i) for “taxing officer” substitute “ costs officer ”, and
    - (ii) for “taxed” substitute “ assessed ”.
- 59 In section 63 (effect on contentious business agreement of death etc)—
- (a) in subsection (2)—
    - (i) for “taxation” substitute “ assessment ”, and
    - (ii) for “taxing officer” substitute “ costs officer ”, and
  - (b) in subsection (3)—
    - (i) for “taxation” substitute “ assessment ”,
    - (ii) for “taxing officer” (in both places) substitute “ costs officer ”, and
    - (iii) after “solicitor” (in the third place) insert “ , or any of his employees, ”.

#### Commencement Information

**I97** Sch. 16 para. 59(b)(iii) in force at 31.3.2009 by [S.I. 2009/503](#), [art. 2\(b\)\(i\)](#); Sch. 16 para. 59(a)(b)(i)(ii) in force at 1.1.2010 by [S.I. 2009/3250](#), [art. 2\(f\)\(ii\)](#) (with [art. 9](#))

- 60 In section 64 (form of bill of costs for contentious business)—
- (a) in subsection (3) for “taxed” substitute “ assessed ”, and
  - (b) in subsection (4)—
    - (i) for “taxed” substitute “ assessed ”,
    - (ii) for “taxation” substitute “ assessment ”, and
    - (iii) for “taxing officer” (in both places) substitute “ costs officer ”.
- 61 In section 65 (security for costs and termination of retainer), in subsection (1) for “taxation” substitute “ assessment ”.
- 62 In section 66 (taxations with respect to contentious business)—
- (a) in the section heading for “Taxations” substitute “ Assessments ”,
  - (b) for “taxation” substitute “ assessment ”,
  - (c) for “taxing officer” substitute “ costs officer ”,
  - (d) in paragraph (a), after “solicitor” (in the second place) insert “ or an employee of the solicitor ”, and
  - (e) in paragraph (b), after “him” insert “ or by any employee of his who is an authorised person (within the meaning of section 56(5A)) ”.

#### Commencement Information

**I98** Sch. 16 para. 62(d)(e) in force at 31.3.2009 by [S.I. 2009/503](#), [art. 2\(b\)\(i\)](#) (subject to [art. 4](#)); Sch. 16 para. 62(a)-(c) in force at 1.1.2010 by [S.I. 2009/3250](#), [art. 2\(f\)\(ii\)](#) (with [art. 9](#))

- 63 In section 67 (inclusion of disbursements in bill of costs), in paragraph (b)—
- (a) for “taxed” substitute “ assessed ”,
  - (b) for “taxing officer” substitute “ costs officer ”, and
  - (c) for “taxation” substitute “ assessment ”.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- 64 (1) Section 69 (action to recover solicitor's costs) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1) for “taxed” substitute “ assessed ”.
- (3) For subsection (2) substitute—
- “(2) The requirements referred to in subsection (1) are that the bill must be—
- (a) signed in accordance with subsection (2A), and
- (b) delivered in accordance with subsection (2C).
- (2A) A bill is signed in accordance with this subsection if it is—
- (a) signed by the solicitor or on his behalf by an employee of the solicitor authorised by him to sign, or
- (b) enclosed in, or accompanied by, a letter which is signed as mentioned in paragraph (a) and refers to the bill.
- (2B) For the purposes of subsection (2A) the signature may be an electronic signature.
- (2C) A bill is delivered in accordance with this subsection if—
- (a) it is delivered to the party to be charged with the bill personally,
- (b) it is delivered to that party by being sent to him by post to, or left for him at, his place of business, dwelling-house or last known place of abode, or
- (c) it is delivered to that party—
- (i) by means of an electronic communications network, or
- (ii) by other means but in a form that nevertheless requires the use of apparatus by the recipient to render it intelligible,
- and that party has indicated to the person making the delivery his willingness to accept delivery of a bill sent in the form and manner used.
- (2D) An indication to any person for the purposes of subsection (2C)(c)—
- (a) must state the address to be used and must be accompanied by such other information as that person requires for the making of the delivery;
- (b) may be modified or withdrawn at any time by a notice given to that person.
- (2E) Where a bill is proved to have been delivered in compliance with the requirements of subsections (2A) and (2C), it is not necessary in the first instance for the solicitor to prove the contents of the bill and it is to be presumed, until the contrary is shown, to be a bill bona fide complying with this Act.
- (2F) A bill which is delivered as mentioned in subsection (2C)(c) is to be treated as having been delivered on the first working day after the day on which it was sent (unless the contrary is proved).”
- (4) At the end insert—
- “(5) In this section references to an electronic signature are to be read in accordance with section 7(2) of the Electronic Communications Act 2000 (c. 7).

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(6) In this section—

“electronic communications network” has the same meaning as in the Communications Act 2003 (c. 21);

“working day” means a day other than a Saturday, a Sunday, Christmas Day, Good Friday or a bank holiday in England and Wales under the Banking and Financial Dealings Act 1971 (c. 80).”

#### Commencement Information

**199** Sch. 16 para. 64(1)(3)(4) in force at 7.3.2008 by [S.I. 2008/222](#), [art. 2\(j\)\(i\)](#); Sch. 16 para. 64(2) in force at 1.1.2010 by [S.I. 2009/3250](#), [art. 2\(f\)\(ii\)](#) (with [art. 9](#))

- 65 In section 70 (taxation on application of party chargeable or solicitor)—
- (a) in the section heading for “Taxation” substitute “ Assessment ”,
  - (b) in subsection (1)—
    - (i) for “taxed” substitute “ assessed ”, and
    - (ii) for “taxation” substitute “ assessment ”,
  - (c) in subsection (2)—
    - (i) for “taxation” (in both places) substitute “ assessment ”, and
    - (ii) for “taxed” substitute “ assessed ”,
  - (d) in subsections (3) to (5) for “taxation” (in each place) substitute “ assessment ”,
  - (e) in subsection (6)—
    - (i) for “taxation” substitute “ assessment ”, and
    - (ii) for “taxed” substitute “ assessed ”,
  - (f) in subsection (7)—
    - (i) for “taxation” (in each place) substitute “ assessment ”,
    - (ii) for “taxing officer” substitute “ costs officer ”, and
    - (iii) for “tax” substitute “ assess ”,
  - (g) in subsection (8) for “taxation” (in each place) substitute “ assessment ”,
  - (h) in subsection (9)—
    - (i) for “for taxation” (in both places) substitute “ for assessment ”,
    - (ii) for “the taxation” (in both places) substitute “ the assessment ”,
    - (iii) for “a taxation” substitute “ an assessment ”, and
    - (iv) for “one fifth of the amount of the bill is taxed off” substitute “ the amount of the bill is reduced by one fifth ”,
  - (i) in subsection (10)—
    - (i) for “taxing officer” substitute “ costs officer ”, and
    - (ii) for “taxation” (in both places) substitute “ assessment ”,
  - (j) omit subsection (11), and
  - (k) in subsection (12)—
    - (i) for “of the bill taxed off” substitute “ of the reduction in the bill ”,
    - (ii) for “taxation” substitute “ assessment ”, and
    - (iii) for “taxed” (in the second place) substitute “ assessed ”.
- 66 In section 71 (taxation on application of third parties)—
- (a) in the section heading for “Taxation” substitute “ Assessment ”,

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) in subsection (1) for “taxation” substitute “ assessment ”,
  - (c) in subsection (3) —
    - (i) for “taxed” substitute “ assessed ”, and
    - (ii) for “taxation” substitute “ assessment ”,
  - (d) in subsection (4) for “taxation” substitute “ assessment ”,
  - (e) in subsection (6)—
    - (i) for “taxation” substitute “ assessment ”, and
    - (ii) for “taxed” substitute “ assessed ”, and
  - (f) in subsection (7) for “taxed” substitute “ assessed ”.
- 67 In section 72 (supplementary provisions as to taxations)—
- (a) in the section heading for “taxations” substitute “ assessments ”,
  - (b) in subsection (1) for “taxation” substitute “ assessment ”,
  - (c) in subsection (2)—
    - (i) for “taxing officer” (in each place) substitute “ costs officer ”,
    - (ii) for second and fourth “taxing” substitute “ assessing ”, and
    - (iii) for “tax” substitute “ assess ”,
  - (d) in subsection (3)—
    - (i) for “taxing officer” (in both places) substitute “ costs officer ”,
    - (ii) for “tax” substitute “ assess ”, and
    - (iii) for “taxing” (in second place) substitute “ assessing ”, and
  - (e) in subsection (4)—
    - (i) for “taxing officer” substitute “ costs officer ”, and
    - (ii) for “taxed” substitute “ assessed ”.
- 68 In section 73 (charging orders), in subsection (1)—
- (a) for “taxed” substitute “ assessed ”, and
  - (b) for “taxation” substitute “ assessment ”.
- 69 In section 74 (special provisions as to contentious business done in county courts)—
- (a) in subsection (2)—
    - (i) for “registrar” substitute “ district judge ”,
    - (ii) for “taxing officer” substitute “ costs officer ”, and
    - (iii) for “taxation” (in both places) substitute “ assessment ”, and
  - (b) in subsection (3) for “taxation” substitute “ assessment ”.
- 70 Omit the following provisions—
- section 76 (non-practising solicitors eligible for membership of Society),
  - section 77 (annual subscription to Society), and
  - section 78 (cessation and suspension of membership of Society).
- 71 For section 79 (committees and sub-committees of the Council) substitute—

**“79 Discharge of the Council's functions**

- (1) The Council may arrange for any function of the Council (including any function exercisable by the Council by virtue of section 80) to be exercised by—
  - (a) a committee of the Council,
  - (b) a sub-committee of such a committee,



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

**Changes to legislation:** *Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (c) a body corporate which is established for the purpose of providing services to the Council (or any committee of the Council) and is a wholly-owned subsidiary of the Society, or
  - (d) an individual (whether or not a member of the Society's staff).
- (2) Where by virtue of subsection (1) any function may be discharged by a committee, the committee may arrange for the discharge of the function by—
  - (a) a sub-committee of that committee,
  - (b) a body corporate which is established for the purpose of providing services to the Council (or any committee of the Council) and is a wholly-owned subsidiary of the Society, or
  - (c) an individual (whether or not a member of the Society's staff).
- (3) Where, by virtue of subsection (1) or (2), any function may be discharged by a sub-committee, that sub-committee may arrange for the discharge of the function by an individual (whether or not a member of the Society's staff).
- (4) Arrangements made under this section in respect of a function may provide that the function is to be exercised in accordance with the arrangements only (and not by the delegating body).
- (5) In subsection (4) “the delegating body” means—
  - (a) in the case of arrangements under subsection (1), the Council;
  - (b) in the case of arrangements under subsection (2), the committee;
  - (c) in the case of arrangements under subsection (3), the sub-committee.
- (6) Subsections (2) and (3) have effect subject to any contrary direction given by the Council.
- (7) Where arrangements under subsection (3) relate to a function delegated by a committee under subsection (2), subsection (3) also has effect subject to any contrary direction given by that committee.
- (8) Any power given by subsection (1), (2) or (3) may be exercised so as to impose restrictions or conditions on the body or individual by whom the function is to be discharged.
- (9) A committee or sub-committee may include or consist of individuals other than—
  - (a) members of the Council;
  - (b) members of the Society;
  - (c) solicitors.
- (10) A sub-committee of a committee may also include or consist of individuals other than members of the committee.
- (11) The Council may make arrangements for the appointment and removal of members of any committee to be made other than by the Council.
- (12) A committee or sub-committee may regulate its own procedure, including quorum.
- (13) The validity of any proceedings of a committee or sub-committee is not affected by any vacancy among its members.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(14) In this section “wholly-owned subsidiary” has the meaning given by section 1159 of the Companies Act 2006.

(15) This section is subject to any provision to the contrary made by or under any enactment.”

72 In section 80 (powers to act on behalf of Society)—

- (a) in subsection (1) for “of any instrument made under it” substitute “ any other enactment (or of any instrument made under this Act or any other enactment) ”, and
- (b) omit subsection (2).

**Commencement Information**

**I100** Sch. 16 para. 72(a) in force at 7.3.2008 by [S.I. 2008/222](#), [art. 2\(j\)\(i\)](#); Sch. 16 para. 72(b) in force at 31.3.2009 by [S.I. 2009/503](#), [art. 2\(b\)\(i\)](#)

73 Omit sections 81 and 81A (administration of oaths and taking of affidavits).

**Commencement Information**

**I101** Sch. 16 para. 73 wholly in force at 1.1.2010 see s. 211 and [S.I. 2009/3250](#), [art. 2\(f\)\(ii\)](#) (subject to [art. 9](#))

74 Before section 87 (interpretation) insert—

**Rules**

“86A(1) Rules made by the Society under this Act may —

- (a) make provision generally or subject to exceptions or only in relation to specified cases;
- (b) make different provision for different cases or circumstances or for different purposes.

(2) Without prejudice to the generality of subsection (1), any rules prescribing a fee may provide for that fee to be reduced or waived in such circumstances as may be specified in the rules.”

75 In section 87(1) (interpretation)—

- (a) in the definition of “client account”, for “in” to the end substitute “ subject to rules under section 32(1)(a) ”,
- (b) after the definition of “sole solicitor” insert—
  - ““sole solicitor endorsement” has the same meaning as in section 1B;”, and
- (c) omit the following definitions—
  - “articles”
  - “controlled trust”
  - “duly certificated notary public”
  - “employee”
  - “indemnity conditions”
  - “replacement date”

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

“training conditions”.

#### Commencement Information

**I102** Sch. 16 para. 75(c) in force for certain purposes at 7.3.2008 by [S.I. 2008/222](#), [art. 2\(j\)\(i\)](#); Sch. 16 para. 75(a) in force and Sch. 16 para. 75(c) in force for certain purposes at 31.3.2009 by [S.I. 2009/503](#), [art. 2\(b\)\(i\)](#); Sch. 16 para. 75(b)(c) in force for certain purposes at 1.7.2009 by [S.I. 2009/1365](#), [art. 2\(a\)\(i\)](#); Sch. 16 para. 75(c) in force for certain purposes at 1.1.2010 by [S.I. 2009/3250](#), [art. 2\(f\)\(ii\)](#) (with [art. 9](#))

- 76 In section 89 (consequential amendments etc.), omit subsection (7).
- 77 (1) Schedule 1 (intervention in solicitor's practice) is amended as follows.
- (2) In paragraph 1 (grounds for intervention)—
- (a) in sub-paragraph (1)(a)—
- (i) for “Council have” substitute “ Society has ”,
- (ii) after “solicitor's practice” insert “ or former practice ”, and
- (iii) after “trustee” insert “ or that employee is or was a trustee in his capacity as such an employee ”,
- (b) after that sub-paragraph insert—
- “(aa) the Society has reason to suspect dishonesty on the part of a solicitor (“S) in connection with—
- (i) the business of any person of whom S is or was an employee, or of any body of which S is or was a manager, or
- (ii) any business which is or was carried on by S as a sole trader;”,
- (c) in sub-paragraph (1)(b)—
- (i) for “Council consider” substitute “ Society considers ”, and
- (ii) for “controlled trust” substitute “ trust ”,
- (d) in sub-paragraph (1)(c) for “Council are” substitute “ Society is ”,
- (e) in sub-paragraph (1)(ee)—
- (i) for “Council are” substitute “ Society is ”, and
- (ii) after “illness” insert “ , injury ”,
- (f) in sub-paragraph (1)(h)—
- (i) for “Council are” substitute “ Society is ”, and
- (ii) omit “sole”,
- (g) in sub-paragraph (1)(i) and (k) for “Council are” substitute “ Society is ”,
- (h) in sub-paragraph (1)(l)—
- (i) for “Council are” substitute “ Society is ”,
- (ii) in sub-paragraph (iii) for “an officer” substitute “ a manager ”, and
- (iii) in that sub-paragraph for “Council of the Law Society” substitute “ Society ”,
- (i) after sub-paragraph (1)(l) insert—
- “(m) the Society is satisfied that it is necessary to exercise the powers conferred by Part 2 of this Schedule (or any of them) in relation to a solicitor to protect—
- (i) the interests of clients (or former or potential clients) of the solicitor or his firm, or

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (ii) the interests of the beneficiaries of any trust of which the solicitor is or was a trustee.”,
- (j) after sub-paragraph (1) insert—
  - “(1A) In sub-paragraph (1) “manager” has the same meaning as in the Legal Services Act 2007 (see section 207 of that Act).”, and
- (k) omit sub-paragraph (2).
- (3) In paragraph 3 (intervention following an undue delay)—
  - (a) for “10(3)” substitute “ 10(9) ”,
  - (b) for paragraph (a) substitute—
    - “(a) the Society is satisfied that there has been undue delay—
      - (i) on the part of a solicitor in connection with any matter in which the solicitor or his firm is or was acting on behalf of a client or with any trust, or
      - (ii) on the part of an employee of a solicitor in connection with any trust of which the employee is or was a trustee in his capacity as such an employee; and”,
  - (c) in paragraph (c) for “Council regard” substitute “ Society regards ”.
- (4) In paragraph 4(2) (continuation of powers after death etc of solicitor)—
  - (a) after “6(2) and (3)” insert “ , 6A ”,
  - (b) for “and (5)” substitute “ , (5) and (6) ”, and
  - (c) for “10(1)” substitute “ 10(2) and (7) ”.
- (5) In paragraph 6 (vesting of sums in Society)—
  - (a) in sub-paragraph (1)—
    - (i) for “Council pass” substitute “ Society passes ”,
    - (ii) for “Council's” substitute “ Society's ”, and
    - (iii) after “thereto” insert “ and to rules under paragraph 6B ”,
  - (b) in sub-paragraph (2)(a) for “his practice” to the end substitute—
    - “(i) his practice or former practice,
    - (ii) any trust of which he is or formerly was a trustee, or
    - (iii) any trust of which a person who is or was an employee of the solicitor is or was a trustee in the person's capacity as such an employee;”, and
  - (c) in sub-paragraph (2)(c) for “to which the complaint relates” substitute “ in connection with which the Society is satisfied there has been undue delay as mentioned in sub-paragraph (a) of that paragraph ”.
- (6) After paragraph 6 insert—
  - “6A (1) Without prejudice to paragraph 5, if the Society passes a resolution to the effect that any rights to which this paragraph applies shall vest in the Society, those rights shall vest accordingly.
  - (2) This paragraph applies to any right to recover or receive debts due to the solicitor or his firm in connection with his practice or former practice.
  - (3) Any sums recovered by the Society by virtue of the exercise of rights vested under sub-paragraph (1) shall vest in the Society and shall be held by it on

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

trust to exercise in relation to them the powers conferred by this Part of this Schedule and, subject to those powers and to rules under paragraph 6B, upon trust for the persons beneficially entitled to them.

(4) The Society shall serve on the solicitor or his firm, and any person who owes a debt to which the order applies, a certified copy of the Society's resolution.

6B (1) The Society may make rules governing its treatment of sums vested in it under paragraph 6 or 6A(3).

(2) The rules may in particular make provision in respect of cases where the Society, having taken such steps to do so as are reasonable in all the circumstances of the case, is unable to trace the person or persons beneficially entitled to any sum vested in the Society under paragraph 6 or 6A(3) (including provision which requires amounts to be paid into or out of compensation funds (within the meaning of section 36A)).”

(7) In paragraph 7(1) (holding of sums vested in Society)—

- (a) after “paragraph 6” insert “ or 6A(3) ”, and
- (b) after “thereto” insert “ and to rules under paragraph 6B ”.

(8) In paragraph 8 (information as to money held) for “holds money” to the end substitute—

- “(a) holds money on behalf of the solicitor or his firm, or
- (b) has information which is relevant to identifying any money held by or on behalf of the solicitor or his firm,

the court may require that person to give the Society information as to any such money and the accounts in which it is held. ”

(9) In paragraph 9 (documents)—

- (a) in sub-paragraph (1)(a)—
  - (i) after “possession” insert “ or under the control ”, and
  - (ii) for “or with any controlled trust” substitute “ or former practice or with any trust of which the solicitor is or was a trustee ”,
- (b) in sub-paragraph (1)(b)—
  - (i) after “possession” insert “ or under the control ”, and
  - (ii) for “to which the complaint relates” substitute “ of which the Society is satisfied ”,
- (c) in sub-paragraph (3) after “possession” insert “ or control ”,
- (d) in sub-paragraph (5) after “the possession” insert “ or under the control ”,
- (e) after sub-paragraph (5) insert—

“(5A) In the case of a document which consists of information which is stored in electronic form, a requirement imposed by a notice under sub-paragraph (1) or an order under sub-paragraph (4) or (5), is a requirement to produce or deliver the information in a form in which it is legible or from which it can readily be produced in a legible form.”,

- (f) in sub-paragraph (6) after “possession of” insert “ (a) ”,
- (g) at the end of that sub-paragraph insert—
  - “(b) any property—

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (i) in the possession of or under the control of the solicitor or his firm, or
- (ii) in the case of an order under sub-paragraph (5), which was in the possession or under the control of such a person and has come into the possession or under the control of the person in respect of whom the order is made,

which the Society reasonably requires for the purpose of accessing information contained in such documents,

and to use property obtained under paragraph (b) for that purpose.”,

- (h) in sub-paragraph (7) after “documents” insert “ or other property ”,
- (i) in sub-paragraph (8) after “documents” insert “ or other property ”, and
- (j) in sub-paragraph (10) after “documents” insert “ or other property ”.

(10) For paragraph 10 (mail) substitute—

*“Mail and other forms of communication*

- 10 (1) The High Court, on the application of the Society, may from time to time make a communications redirection order.
- (2) A communications redirection order is an order that specified communications to the solicitor or his firm are to be directed, in accordance with the order, to the Society or any person appointed by the Society.
- (3) For the purposes of this paragraph—
- (a) “specified communications” means communications of such description as are specified in the order;
  - (b) the descriptions of communications which may be so specified include—
    - (i) communications in the form of a postal packet;
    - (ii) electronic communications;
    - (iii) communications by telephone.
- (4) A communications redirection order has effect for such time not exceeding 18 months as is specified in the order.
- (5) Where a communications redirection order has effect, the Society or the person appointed by the Society may take possession or receipt of the communications redirected in accordance with the order.
- (6) Where a communications redirection order is made, the Society must pay to—
- (a) in the case of an order relating to postal packets, the postal operator concerned, and
  - (b) in any other case, the person specified in the order,
- the like charges (if any) as would have been payable for the redirection of the communications to which the order relates if the addressee had permanently ceased to occupy or use the premises or other destination of the communications and had applied to the postal operator or the specified

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

person (as the case may be) to redirect the communications to him as mentioned in the order.

- (7) The High Court may, on the application of the Society, authorise the Society, or a person appointed by it, to take such steps as may be specified in the order in relation to any website purporting to be or have been maintained by or on behalf of the solicitor or his firm if the High Court is satisfied that the taking of those steps is necessary to protect the public interest or the interests of clients (or potential or former clients) of the solicitor or his firm.
- (8) In this paragraph “postal operator” and “postal packet” have the meaning given by section 125(1) of the Postal Services Act 2000.
- (9) This paragraph does not apply where the powers conferred by this Part of this Schedule are exercisable by virtue of paragraph 3.”
- (11) In paragraph 11(1) (trusts) for “controlled trust” substitute “ trust ”.
- (12) In paragraph 12 (liens) for “and documents” substitute “ , documents and other property ”.
- (13) After paragraph 13 (costs) insert—
- “13A(1) The High Court, on the application of the Society, may order a former partner of the solicitor to pay a specified proportion of the costs mentioned in paragraph 13.
- (2) The High Court may make an order under this paragraph only if it is satisfied that the conduct (or any part of the conduct) by reason of which the powers conferred by this Part were exercisable in relation to the solicitor was conduct carried on with the consent or connivance of, or was attributable to any neglect on the part of, the former partner.
- (3) In this paragraph “specified” means specified in the order made by the High Court.”

#### Commencement Information

**I103** Sch. 16 para. 77 wholly in force at 31.3.2009 see s. 211 and [S.I. 2009/503](#), [art. 2\(b\)\(i\)](#) (subject to [art. 4](#))

VALID FROM 06/10/2010

78 Omit Schedule 1A (inadequate professional services).

79 Omit Schedule 2 (the compensation fund).

#### Commencement Information

**I104** Sch. 16 para. 79 wholly in force at 31.3.2009 see s. 211 and [S.I. 2009/503](#), [art. 2\(b\)\(i\)](#) (subject to [art. 5](#))

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## PART 2

### THE ADMINISTRATION OF JUSTICE ACT 1985 (c. 61)

80 The Administration of Justice Act 1985 is amended in accordance with this Part of this Schedule.

81 (1) Section 9 (incorporated practices) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1)—

- (a) for “Council” (in both places) substitute “ Society ”,
- (b) in paragraph (a) for “by solicitors” to the end substitute “ of legal services bodies; ”,
- (c) in paragraph (b) for “any such services” substitute “ any solicitor services or other relevant legal services ”, and
- (d) in paragraph (c)—
  - (i) for “conditions” substitute “ requirements ”, and
  - (ii) omit “corporate”.

(3) After that subsection insert—

“(1A) Where the Society makes rules under subsection (1), it must by rules under subsection (1)(c) prescribe the requirement that (subject to any exceptions provided by the rules) recognised bodies must not provide services other than—

- (a) solicitor services, or
- (b) solicitor services and other relevant legal services.

(1B) “Relevant legal services” means—

- (a) solicitor services, and
- (b) where authorised persons other than solicitors or registered European lawyers are managers or employees of, or have an interest in, a recognised body, services of the kind provided by individuals practising as such authorised persons (whether or not those services involve the carrying on of reserved legal activities within the meaning of the Legal Services Act 2007).

(1C) The Society may by rules under this section provide that services specified, or of a description specified, in the rules are not to be treated as solicitor services or other relevant legal services.”

(4) In subsection (2)—

- (a) for “Council” (in both places) substitute “ Society ”,
- (b) in paragraph (a) for “are to be” to the end substitute “ , or for the renewal of such recognition, are to be made, and requiring such applications to be accompanied by a fee of such amount as the Society may from time to time determine; ”,
- (c) after that paragraph insert—
  - “(aa) for the manner and form in which other applications under the rules are to be made, and requiring such applications to be accompanied by a fee of such amount as the Society may from time to time determine;”
- (d) for paragraphs (c) to (e) substitute—



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

**Changes to legislation:** *Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- “(c) about the time when any recognition, or renewal of recognition, takes effect and the period for which it is (subject to the provisions made by or under this Part) to remain in force;
  - (d) for the suspension or revocation of any such recognition, on such grounds and in such circumstances as may be prescribed by the rules;
  - (e) about the effect on the recognition of a partnership or other unincorporated body (“the existing body”) of any change in the membership of the existing body, including provision for the existing body's recognition to be transferred where the existing body ceases to exist and another body succeeds to the whole or substantially the whole of its business;
  - (ea) for the keeping by the Society of a register containing the names and places of business of all bodies which are for the time being recognised under this section, and such other information relating to those bodies as may be specified in the rules;
  - (eb) for information (or information of a specified description) on such a register to be made available to the public, including provision about the manner in which, and times at which, information is to be made so available;”, and
  - (e) after paragraph (f) insert—
    - “(fa) about the education and training requirements to be met by managers and employees of recognised bodies;
    - (fb) for rules made under any provision of the 1974 Act to have effect in relation to managers and employees of recognised bodies with such additions, omissions or other modifications as appear to the Society to be necessary or expedient;
    - (fc) requiring recognised bodies to appoint a person or persons to monitor compliance, by the recognised body, its managers and its employees, with requirements imposed on them by or by virtue of this Act or any rules applicable to them by virtue of this section;”.
- (5) After subsection (2) insert—
- “(2A) If rules under this section provide for the recognition of legal services bodies which have one or more managers who are not legally qualified, the rules must make provision—
    - (a) for the recognition of such bodies to be suspended or revoked, on such grounds and in such circumstances as may be prescribed by the rules;
    - (b) as to the criteria and procedure for the Society's approving, as suitable to be a manager of a recognised body, an individual who is not legally qualified (and for the Society's withdrawing such approval).
  - (2B) Rules under this section may make provision for appeals to the High Court against decisions made by the Society under the rules—
    - (a) to suspend or revoke the recognition of any body;

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) not to approve, as suitable to be the manager of a recognised body, an individual who is not legally qualified (or to withdraw such approval).
- (2C) The rules may provide for appeals against decisions within subsection (2B) (b) to be brought by the individual to whom the decision relates (as well as the body).
- (2D) In relation to an appeal under rules made by virtue of subsection (2B), the High Court may make such order as it thinks fit as to payment of costs.
- (2E) The decision of the High Court on such an appeal shall be final.
- (2F) Where the Society decides to recognise a body under this section it must grant that recognition subject to one or more conditions if—
  - (a) the case is of a kind prescribed for the purposes of this section by rules made by the Society, and
  - (b) the Society considers that it is in the public interest to do so.
- (2G) While a body is recognised under this section, the Society—
  - (a) must direct that the body's recognition is to have effect subject to one or more conditions if—
    - (i) the case is of a prescribed kind, and
    - (ii) the Society considers that it is in the public interest to do so;
  - (b) may, in such circumstances as may be prescribed, direct that the body's recognition is to have effect subject to such conditions as the Society may think fit.

“Prescribed” means prescribed by rules made by the Society.
- (2H) The conditions which may be imposed under subsection (2F) or (2G) include—
  - (a) conditions requiring the body to take specified steps that will, in the opinion of the Society, be conducive to the carrying on by the body of an efficient business;
  - (b) conditions which prohibit the body from taking any specified steps except with the approval of the Society;
  - (c) if rules under this section provide for the recognition of legal services bodies which have one or more managers who are not legally qualified, a condition that all the managers of the body must be legally qualified.

“Specified” means specified in the condition.
- (2I) Rules made by the Society may make provision about when conditions imposed under this section take effect (including provision conferring power on the Society to direct that a condition is not to have effect until the conclusion of any appeal in relation to it).
- (2J) Section 86A of the 1974 Act applies to rules under this section as it applies to rules under that Act.
- (2K) Rules under this section may contain such incidental, supplemental, transitional or transitory provisions or savings as the Society considers necessary or expedient.”

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(6) For subsection (3) substitute—

“(3) Despite section 24(2) of the 1974 Act, section 20 of that Act (prohibition on unqualified person acting as solicitor) does not apply to a recognised body; and nothing in section 24(1) of that Act applies in relation to such a body.”

(7) Omit subsection (4).

(8) In subsection (5) omit “corporate”.

(9) In subsection (7)—

- (a) for “Secretary of State” (in both places) substitute “ Lord Chancellor ”, and
- (b) for “the commencement of this section” substitute “ or in the same session as the Legal Services Act 2007 was passed ”.

(10) In subsection (8)—

(a) after the definition of “the 1974 Act” insert—

““authorised person” means an authorised person in relation to an activity which is a reserved legal activity (within the meaning of the Legal Services Act 2007);”,

(b) for “the Council” and “the Society” have” substitute “ “the Society” has ”,

(c) after the definition of “the Society” insert—

““legally qualified” and “legal services body” have the meaning given by section 9A;

“manager”, in relation to a body, has the same meaning as in the Legal Services Act 2007 (see section 207 of that Act);”,

(d) omit the definition of “officer”,

(e) in the definition of “recognised body” omit “corporate”, and

(f) after the definition of “registered European lawyer” insert—

““solicitor services” means professional services such as are provided by individuals practising as solicitors or lawyers of other jurisdictions;

and a person has an interest in a body if the person has an interest in the body within the meaning of Part 5 of the Legal Services Act 2007 (see sections 72 and 109 of that Act). ”

(11) Omit subsection (9).

#### Commencement Information

**I105** Sch. 16 para. 81(1)(9) in force at 30.6.2008 by [S.I. 2008/1436](#), [art. 2\(d\)\(ii\)](#); Sch. 16 para. 81 in force at 31.3.2009 by [S.I. 2009/503](#), [art. 2\(b\)\(ii\)](#) (subject to [art. 4](#))

82 After that section insert—

#### “9A Legal services bodies

(1) For the purposes of section 9, a “legal services body” means a body (corporate or unincorporate) in respect of which —

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) the management and control condition, and
  - (b) the relevant lawyer condition,
- are satisfied.
- (2) The management and control condition is satisfied if—
- (a) at least 75% of the body's managers are legally qualified,
  - (b) the proportion of shares in the body held by persons who are legally qualified is at least 75%,
  - (c) the proportion of voting rights in the body which persons who are legally qualified are entitled to exercise, or control the exercise of, is at least 75%,
  - (d) all the persons with an interest in the body who are not legally qualified are managers of the body, and
  - (e) all the managers of the body who are not legally qualified are individuals approved by the Society as suitable to be managers of a recognised body.
- (3) The Society may by rules under section 9 provide that, in relation to specified kinds of bodies, subsection (2) applies as if the references to 75% were to such greater percentage as may be specified (and different percentages may be specified for different kinds of bodies).
- (4) The relevant lawyer condition is satisfied in relation to a body if at least one manager of the body is—
- (a) a solicitor,
  - (b) a registered European lawyer, or
  - (c) a qualifying body.
- (5) For that purpose a qualifying body is a body in respect of which—
- (a) the management and control condition [<sup>F5</sup>is] satisfied <sup>F6</sup> . . .
  - (b) the relevant lawyer condition is satisfied by virtue of subsection (4) (a) or (b), and
  - (c) the services condition is satisfied.
- (6) For the purposes of this section the following are legally qualified—
- (a) an authorised person who is an individual;
  - (b) a registered foreign lawyer (within the meaning of section 89 of the Courts and Legal Services Act 1990 (c. 41));
  - (c) a person entitled to pursue professional activities under a professional title to which the Directive applies in a state to which the Directive applies (other than the title of barrister or solicitor in England and Wales);
  - (d) an authorised person which is a body in respect of which—
    - (i) the services condition is satisfied, and
    - (ii) the management and control condition would be satisfied if the references in subsection (2) to persons who are legally qualified were to persons who are legally qualified by virtue of paragraphs (a) to (c);
  - (e) a body which provides professional services such as are provided by individuals who are authorised persons or lawyers of other jurisdictions, and in respect of which the management and control

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- condition would be satisfied if the references in subsection (2) to persons who are legally qualified were to persons who are legally qualified by virtue of paragraphs (a) to (c).
- [<sup>F7</sup>(f) a legal partnership which—
- (i) was in existence immediately before the commencement of this paragraph,
  - (ii) since that time has continued to be a partnership of the kind mentioned in rule 12.01(1)(b), 12.02(1)(b) or 12.04(1)(c) (i) of the pre-commencement conduct rules (framework of practice), and
  - (iii) has not, since that time, had a body corporate (other than a body within paragraph (g)) as a member;
- (g) a body corporate which—
- (i) was recognised under section 9 immediately before the commencement of this paragraph, and
  - (ii) has since that time continued to satisfy the requirements of rule 14.03(1) and 14.04(1) to (3) or the requirements of rule 14.05(1) to (3) of the pre-commencement conduct rules (restrictions on directors, owners etc. of incorporated practices);
- (h) a body which—
- (i) is an authorised person and satisfies the services condition, or
  - (ii) provides professional services such as are provided by individuals who are authorised persons or lawyers of other jurisdictions,
- and which satisfies the requirements of rules under subsection (6C).
- (6A) For the purposes of subsection (6)(f), a partnership is to be treated as the same partnership despite a change in membership, if any person who was a member before the change remains a member.
- (6B) For the purposes of subsection (6)(f) and (g), the references in the pre-commencement conduct rules to a recognised body are to be construed as references to a body which was recognised under section 9 immediately before the commencement of subsection (6)(f) and (g).
- (6C) The Society must make rules for the purposes of paragraph (h) of subsection (6) prescribing the requirements relating to management and control which must be satisfied by or in relation to a body for it to fall within that paragraph.]
- (7) For the purposes of this section, the services condition is satisfied in relation to a body if the body provides only services which may be provided by a recognised body (having regard to rules under section 9(1A) and (1C)).
- (8) For the purposes of this section—
- “authorised person” has the same meaning as in section 9;
  - [<sup>F8</sup>“the Directive” means Directive 98/5/EC of the European Parliament and the Council, to facilitate practice of the profession of lawyer on a permanent basis in a Member State other than that in which the qualification was obtained;]

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

“legal partnership” means a partnership in which a solicitor, a registered European lawyer or a recognised body is permitted to practise by virtue of rules made under section 31 of the Solicitors Act 1974 (c. 47), as those rules had effect immediately before the commencement of subsection (6)(f);

“manager”, in relation to a body, has the meaning given by section 9;

[<sup>F9</sup>“pre-commencement conduct rules” means rules under Part 2 of the Solicitors Act 1974 or section 9 of this Act, known as the Solicitors' Code of Conduct 2007, as those rules had effect immediately before the commencement of subsection (6)(f) and (g);]

“recognised body” has the same meaning as in section 9 [<sup>F10</sup>(subject to subsection (6B) above)];

“registered European lawyer” has the same meaning as in section 9;

“shares” has the same meaning as for the purposes of Part 5 of the Legal Services Act 2007 (see sections 72 and 109 of that Act);

[<sup>F11</sup>“the Society” has the meaning given by section 87(1) of the Solicitors Act 1974;]

“specified” means specified in rules made by the Society;

and a person has an interest in a body if the person has an interest in the body for the purposes of section 9.”

#### Textual Amendments

- F5** Word in Sch. 16 para. 82 substituted (27.11.2008) by [The Legal Services Act 2007 \(Functions of a Designated Regulator\) Order 2008 \(S.I. 2008/3074\)](#), [art. 2\(2\)\(a\)](#)
- F6** Words in Sch. 16 para. 82 omitted (27.11.2008) by virtue of [The Legal Services Act 2007 \(Functions of a Designated Regulator\) Order 2008 \(S.I. 2008/3074\)](#), [art. 2\(2\)\(b\)](#)
- F7** Words in Sch. 16 para. 82 inserted (27.11.2008) by [The Legal Services Act 2007 \(Functions of a Designated Regulator\) Order 2008 \(S.I. 2008/3074\)](#), [art. 2\(3\)](#)
- F8** Words in Sch. 16 para. 82 inserted (27.11.2008) by [The Legal Services Act 2007 \(Functions of a Designated Regulator\) Order 2008 \(S.I. 2008/3074\)](#), [art. 2\(4\)\(a\)](#)
- F9** Words in Sch. 16 para. 82 inserted (27.11.2008) by [The Legal Services Act 2007 \(Functions of a Designated Regulator\) Order 2008 \(S.I. 2008/3074\)](#), [art. 2\(4\)\(b\)](#)
- F10** Words in Sch. 16 para. 82 inserted (27.11.2008) by [The Legal Services Act 2007 \(Functions of a Designated Regulator\) Order 2008 \(S.I. 2008/3074\)](#), [art. 2\(4\)\(c\)](#)
- F11** Words in Sch. 16 para. 82 substituted (27.11.2008) by [The Legal Services Act 2007 \(Functions of a Designated Regulator\) Order 2008 \(S.I. 2008/3074\)](#), [art. 2\(4\)\(d\)](#)

83 (1) Section 10 (penalty for pretending to be a body recognised under section 9) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1) omit “corporate” (in both places).

(3) In subsection (2) omit “corporate”.

(4) For subsection (3) substitute—

“(3) Where an offence under this section committed by a body corporate is proved to have been committed with the consent or connivance of or to be

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

attributable to any neglect on the part of an officer of the body corporate, that officer (as well as the body corporate) is guilty of the offence and is liable to be proceeded against and punished accordingly.

- (4) Where the affairs of a body corporate are managed by its members, subsection (3) applies in relation to the acts and defaults of a member in connection with the member's functions of management as it applies to an officer of the body corporate.
- (5) Proceedings for an offence under this section alleged to have been committed by an unincorporated body are to be brought in the name of that body (and not in that of any of its members) and, for the purposes of any such proceedings, any rules of court relating to the service of documents have effect as if that body were a corporation.
- (6) A fine imposed on an unincorporated body on its conviction of an offence under this section is to be paid out of the funds of that body.
- (7) If an unincorporated body is charged with an offence under this section, section 33 of the Criminal Justice Act 1925 (c. 86) and Schedule 3 to the Magistrates' Courts Act 1980 (c. 43) (procedure on charge of an offence against a corporation) have effect in like manner as in the case of a corporation so charged.
- (8) Where an offence under this section committed by an unincorporated body (other than a partnership) is proved to have been committed with the consent or connivance of, or to be attributable to any neglect on the part of, any officer of the body or any member of its governing body, that officer or member as well as the unincorporated body is guilty of the offence and liable to be proceeded against and punished accordingly.
- (9) Where an offence under this section committed by a partnership is proved to have been committed with the consent or connivance of, or to be attributable to any neglect on the part of, a partner, that partner as well as the partnership is guilty of the offence and liable to be proceeded against and punished accordingly.
- (10) In this section “officer”, in relation to a body corporate, means—
  - (a) any director, secretary or other similar officer of the body corporate, or
  - (b) any person who was purporting to act in any such capacity.”

84 (1) Section 43 (jurisdiction and powers of Solicitors Disciplinary Tribunal in relation to complaints against solicitors) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (2)(a) for “(7) to” substitute “(9) to”.

(3) After subsection (3) insert—

“(3A) Nothing in section 157 of the Legal Services Act 2007 (approved regulators not to make provision for redress) prevents an order being made under subsection (3).”

(4) For subsection (5) substitute—

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

“(5) An appeal under section 49 of the Solicitors Act 1974 against an order of the Tribunal under subsection (3) lies only at the instance of the solicitor with respect to whom the legal aid complaint was made.”

**Commencement Information**

**I106** Sch. 16 para. 84(1)(2)(4) in force at 31.3.2009 by [S.I. 2009/503](#), [art. 2\(b\)\(ii\)](#)

85 In the title of Schedule 2, for “Incorporated practices” substitute “ Legal services practices ”.

86 In paragraph 1 of that Schedule (interpretation)—

- (a) in sub-paragraph (1) omit “corporate”,
- (b) in sub-paragraph (2) omit—
  - (i) paragraph (b) and the “or” immediately preceding it,
  - (ii) “corporate”, and
  - (iii) “or application”,
- (c) after that sub-paragraph insert—

“(2A) References in this Schedule to a manager or employee of a recognised body, in relation to a complaint (other than such a complaint as is mentioned in paragraph 16(1A)(a)), include references to a person who was such a manager or employee at the time when the conduct to which the complaint relates took place.”,

- (d) omit sub-paragraph (3),
- (e) in sub-paragraph (4) omit from “; and for those purposes” to the end,
- (f) in sub-paragraph (5) for “sub-paragraphs (3) and (4)” substitute “ sub-paragraphs (4) and (6) ”, and
- (g) for sub-paragraph (6) substitute—

“(6) In this Schedule—

“manager”, in relation to a body, has the same meaning as in the Legal Services Act 2007 (see section 207 of that Act);  
 “registered European lawyer” has the same meaning as in section 9A;  
 “the 1974 Act” means the Solicitors Act 1974.”

**Commencement Information**

**I107** Sch. 16 para. 86(g) in force for certain purposes at 30.6.2008 by [S.I. 2008/1436](#), [art. 2\(d\)\(ii\)](#); Sch. 16 para. 86 in force at 31.3.2009 by [S.I. 2009/503](#), [art. 2\(b\)\(ii\)](#) (subject to [art. 4](#))

87 For paragraph 2 of that Schedule (appeal against refusal of Council to grant recognition) substitute—

*“Appeal against refusal of Society to grant recognition etc*

- 2 (1) A body may appeal to the High Court against—
  - (a) a decision to refuse an application by the body for recognition under section 9;



*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) a decision to impose a condition under subsection (2F) of that section on the body's recognition under that section;
  - (c) a decision to impose a condition under subsection (2G) of that section on the body's recognition under that section.
- (2) A recognised body whose recognition is subject to a condition within section 9(2H)(b) may appeal to the High Court against any decision by the Society to refuse to approve the taking of any step for the purposes of that condition.
- (3) Rules made by the Society may make provision, as respects any application for recognition that is neither granted nor refused by the Society within such period as may be specified in the rules, for enabling an appeal to be brought under this paragraph in relation to the application as if it had been refused by the Society.
- (4) On an appeal under sub-paragraph (1)(a) or (b), the High Court may—
- (a) affirm the decision of the Society,
  - (b) direct the Society to grant the body recognition under section 9 free from conditions or subject to such conditions as the High Court may think fit,
  - (c) direct the Society not to recognise the body,
  - (d) if the Society has recognised the body, by order suspend the recognition, or
  - (e) make such other order as the High Court thinks fit.
- (5) On an appeal under sub-paragraph (1)(c), the High Court may—
- (a) affirm the decision of the Society,
  - (b) direct that the body's recognition under section 9 is to have effect subject to such conditions as the High Court may think fit,
  - (c) by order revoke the direction given by the Society under section 9(2G), or
  - (d) make such other order as the High Court thinks fit.
- (6) On an appeal under sub-paragraph (2), the High Court may—
- (a) affirm the decision of the Society,
  - (b) direct the Society to approve the taking of one or more steps for the purposes of a condition within section 9(2H)(b), or
  - (c) make such other order as the High Court thinks fit.
- (7) In relation to an appeal under this paragraph, the High Court may make such order as it thinks fit as to payment of costs.
- (8) The decision of the High Court on an appeal under this paragraph is final.”

88 For paragraph 3 of that Schedule (accounts rules) substitute—

- “3 (1) This paragraph applies where rules made under section 32(1) of the 1974 Act are applied—
- (a) to recognised bodies in accordance with section 9(2)(f) of this Act, or

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) to managers or employees of such bodies in accordance with section 9(2)(fb) of this Act.
- (2) The Society may disclose a report on or information about the accounts of a recognised body, or a manager or employee of a recognised body, obtained in pursuance of such rules for use—
- (a) in investigating the possible commission of an offence by the body or any of its managers or employees, and
- (b) in connection with any prosecution of the body or any of its managers or employees consequent on the investigation.”
- 89 In paragraph 4 of that Schedule (interest on clients' money)—
- (a) in sub-paragraph (1)—
- (i) for “section 33(1)(a)” substitute “ section 33(1) ”, and
- (ii) for the words from “and subject to” to the end substitute “, a recognised body is not liable to account to any client, other person or trust for interest received by the recognised body on money held at a bank or building society in an account which is for money received or held for, or on account of—
- (a) clients of the recognised body, other persons or trusts, generally, or
- (b) that client, person or trust separately.”, and
- (b) omit sub-paragraph (2).
- 90 After that paragraph insert—
- “4ZA Where rules made under section 32 of the 1974 Act and containing any such provision as is referred to in section 33(1) of that Act are applied to managers or employees of recognised bodies in accordance with section 9(2)(fb), then, except as provided by the rules, a manager or employee to whom the rules are applied is not liable to account to any client, other person or trust for interest received by the manager or employee on money held at a bank or building society in an account which is for money received or held for, or on account of—
- (a) clients of the recognised body, other persons or trusts, generally, or
- (b) that client, person or trust, separately.”
- 91 For paragraph 4A of that Schedule (inspection of bank accounts) substitute—
- “4A (1) This paragraph applies where rules made under section 33A(1) of the 1974 Act are applied—
- (a) to recognised bodies in accordance with section 9(2)(f) of this Act, or
- (b) to managers or employees of such bodies in accordance with section 9(2)(fb) of this Act.
- (2) The Society may disclose information about the accounts of a recognised body, or a manager or employee of a recognised body, obtained in pursuance of such rules for use—
- (a) in investigating the possible commission of an offence by the body or any of its managers or employees, and

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) in connection with any prosecution of the body or any of its managers or employees consequent on the investigation.”
- 92 For paragraph 5 of that Schedule (accountants' reports) substitute—
- “5 Where rules made under section 34 of the 1974 Act are applied to recognised bodies in accordance with section 9(2)(f), section 34(9) and (10) of that Act apply in relation to a recognised body as they apply in relation to a solicitor.”
- 93 After that paragraph insert—
- “5A Where rules made under section 34 of the 1974 Act are applied to managers or employees of recognised bodies in accordance with section 9(2)(fb), section 34(9) and (10) of that Act apply in relation to a manager or employee to which the rules are applied as they apply in relation to a solicitor.”
- 94 For paragraph 6 of that Schedule (compensation fund) substitute—
- “6 (1) Section 36 of the 1974 Act applies in relation to recognised bodies as if for paragraphs (a) and (b) of subsection (1) there were substituted—
- “(a) an act or omission of a recognised body or former recognised body;
- (b) an act or omission of a manager or employee, or former manager or employee, of a recognised body or former recognised body;”.
- (2) Section 36A(2) and (3) of the 1974 Act applies in relation to recognised bodies as it applies in relation to solicitors.”

#### Commencement Information

**I108** Sch. 16 para. 94 wholly in force at 31.3.2009, see s. 211 and [S.I. 2009/503](#), [art. 2\(b\)\(ii\)](#) (subject to [art. 5](#))

- 95 In paragraph 7 of that Schedule (solicitor who is justice of the peace not to act in certain proceedings) for “an officer” (in both places) substitute “ a manager ”.
- 96 In paragraph 9 of that Schedule (restriction on employment of person struck off roll or suspended)—
- (a) the existing provision becomes sub-paragraph (1) and in that sub-paragraph after “recognised body” insert “ (and any manager or employee of it) ”, and
- (b) after that sub-paragraph insert—
- “(2) No recognised body (or manager or employee of such a body) may, except in accordance with a written permission granted by the Society under this paragraph, permit a person to whom sub-paragraph (3) applies to—
- (a) be a manager of the body, or
- (b) have an interest in the body;
- and for this purpose a person has an interest in the body if he has an interest in the body within the meaning of Part 5 of the Legal Services Act 2007 (see sections 72 and 109 of that Act).
- (3) This sub-paragraph applies to a person who to the knowledge of the recognised body (or, as the case may be, the manager or employee) is a person—

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) who is disqualified from practising as a solicitor by reason of one of the facts mentioned in section 41(1)(a), (b) or (c) of the 1974 Act (name struck off the roll, suspension etc), or
  - (b) in respect of whom there is a direction in force under section 47(2)(g) of that Act (prohibition on restoration to roll).
- (4) Permission granted for the purposes of sub-paragraph (2) may be granted for such period and subject to such conditions as the Society thinks fit.
- (5) A person aggrieved by the refusal of the Society to grant permission under sub-paragraph (4), or by any conditions attached by the Society to the grant of any such permission may appeal to the High Court which may—
- (a) confirm the refusal or the conditions, as the case may be, or
  - (b) grant a permission under this paragraph for such period and subject to such conditions as it thinks fit.
- (6) In relation to an appeal under sub-paragraph (5) the High Court may make such order as it thinks fit as to payment of costs.
- (7) The decision of the High Court on an appeal under sub-paragraph (5) is final.”
- 97 In paragraph 10 of that Schedule (failure to disclose striking off or suspension)—
- (a) the existing paragraph becomes sub-paragraph (1) of that paragraph,
  - (b) in that sub-paragraph after “recognised body” insert “ (or any manager or employee of such a body) ”, and
  - (c) after that sub-paragraph insert—
    - “(2) It is an offence for a person (“P”) to whom sub-paragraph (3) applies—
    - (a) to seek or accept from any person an interest in a recognised body, without previously informing that person (and, if different, the recognised body) that P is a person to whom that sub-paragraph applies, or
    - (b) to seek or accept a position as a manager of a recognised body, without previously informing that body that P is such a person.
- (3) This sub-paragraph applies to a person—
- (a) who is disqualified from practising as a solicitor by reason of one of the facts mentioned in section 41(1)(a), (b) or (c) of the 1974 Act (name struck off the roll, suspension etc), or
  - (b) in respect of whom there is a direction in force under section 47(2)(g) of that Act (prohibition on restoration to roll).
- (4) A person guilty of an offence under sub-paragraph (2) is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

**Changes to legislation:** *Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5) Subsection (2) of section 42 of the 1974 Act applies in relation to an offence under sub-paragraph (2) as it applies in relation to an offence under that section.
- (6) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (2)(a) a person seeks or accepts an interest in a recognised body if the person seeks or accepts an interest which if it were obtained by the person would result in the person having an interest in that body within the meaning of Part 5 of the Legal Services Act 2007 (see sections 72 and 109 of that Act).”
- 98 Omit paragraph 11 of that Schedule (control of employment of persons convicted of offences of dishonesty and certain other persons).
- 99 Omit paragraph 12 of that Schedule (offences in connection with orders under section 43(2) of the 1974 Act).

VALID FROM 06/10/2010

100 Omit paragraph 13 of that Schedule (redress for inadequate professional services).

101 For paragraph 14 of that Schedule (examination of files) substitute—

*“Information about suitability for recognition*

- 14 (1) The Society may give a notice under this paragraph if it is satisfied that it is necessary to do so for the purpose of investigating whether—
- (a) a recognised body continues to be suitable to be recognised under section 9, or
  - (b) a manager of a recognised body who is not legally qualified (within the meaning of section 9A) continues to be suitable to be a manager of a recognised body.
- (2) A notice under this paragraph is a notice which requires a person within sub-paragraph (3)—
- (a) to provide information, or information of a description, specified in the notice, or
  - (b) to produce documents, or documents of a description, specified in the notice.
- (3) The persons are—
- (a) the recognised body;
  - (b) an employee or manager of the recognised body;
  - (c) a person who has an interest in the recognised body (within the meaning of the Legal Services Act 2007 (see sections 72 and 109 of that Act)).
- (4) For the purposes of this paragraph, section 44B(4) to (7) of the 1974 Act applies—
- (a) in relation to a notice under this paragraph as if it were a notice under section 44B of that Act, and

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) in relation to a person given a notice under this paragraph as if that person were a person given a notice under that section, and references in subsections (6) and (7) of that section to powers conferred by that section are to be read as references to powers conferred by this paragraph.
- (5) Where powers conferred by Part 2 of Schedule 1 to the 1974 Act are exercisable in relation to a person within paragraph (a), (b) or (c) of subparagraph (3), they continue to be so exercisable after the person has ceased to be a person within the paragraph in question.
- (6) Section 44BA of the 1974 Act (power to require explanation of document or information) applies in relation to a notice under this paragraph and the person to whom such a notice is given as it applies in relation to a notice under section 44B of the 1974 Act and the person to whom such a notice is given.
- (7) Subsection (1) of section 44BC of that Act (falsification of documents etc) applies in relation to an investigation of the kind mentioned in subparagraph (1) as it applies in relation to the investigations mentioned in that subsection, and subsections (2), (4) and (5) of that section apply accordingly.
- (8) Subsection (3) of that section (provision of false information etc) applies in relation to a requirement imposed under this paragraph as it applies in relation to a requirement imposed by section 44B of that Act, and subsections (4) and (5) of that section apply accordingly.”

#### Commencement Information

**I109** Sch. 16 para. 101 wholly in force at 31.3.2009 see s. 211 and [S.I. 2009/503](#), [art. 2\(b\)\(ii\)](#) (subject to [art. 4](#))

102 For paragraph 14A of that Schedule (payment of costs of investigations) substitute—

*“Power to charge for costs of investigation*

- 14A (1) The Society may make regulations prescribing charges to be paid to the Society by recognised bodies who are the subject of a discipline investigation.
- (2) A discipline investigation is an investigation carried out by the Society into a failure or apprehended failure by a recognised body to comply with any requirement imposed by or by virtue of this Act or any rules applicable to it by virtue of section 9.
- (3) Regulations under this paragraph may—
- (a) make different provision for different cases or purposes;
  - (b) provide for the whole or part of a charge payable under the regulations to be repaid in such circumstances as may be prescribed by the regulations.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (4) Any charge which a recognised body is required to pay under regulations under this paragraph is recoverable by the Society as a debt due to the Society from the recognised body.
- (5) This paragraph applies in relation to a manager or employee of a recognised body as it applies in relation to a recognised body.”

#### Commencement Information

**I110** Sch. 16 para. 102 wholly in force at 31.3.2009 see s. 211 and S.I. 2009/503, art. 2(b)(ii) (subject to art. 4)

103 After that paragraph insert—

#### *“Disciplinary powers of the Society*

- 14B (1) This paragraph applies where the Society is satisfied that a recognised body, or a manager or employee of a recognised body, has failed to comply with a requirement imposed by or by virtue of this Act or any rules applicable to that person by virtue of section 9 of this Act.
- (2) The Society may do one or both of the following—
    - (a) give the person a written rebuke;
    - (b) direct the person to pay a penalty not exceeding £2,000.
  - (3) The Society may publish details of any action it has taken under sub-paragraph (2)(a) or (b), if it considers it to be in the public interest to do so.
  - (4) Where the Society takes action against a person under sub-paragraph (2)(b), or decides to publish under sub-paragraph (3) details of such action under sub-paragraph (2)(a) or (b), it must notify the person in writing that it has done so.
  - (5) A penalty imposed under sub-paragraph (2)(b) does not become payable until—
    - (a) the end of the period during which an appeal against the decision to impose the penalty, or the amount of the penalty, may be made under paragraph 14C, or
    - (b) if such an appeal is made, such time as it is determined or withdrawn.
  - (6) The Society may not publish under sub-paragraph (3) details of any action under sub-paragraph (2)(a) or (b)—
    - (a) during the period within which an appeal against—
      - (i) the decision to take the action,
      - (ii) in the case of action under sub-paragraph (2)(b), the amount of the penalty, or
      - (iii) the decision to publish the details,may be made under paragraph 14C, or
    - (b) if such an appeal has been made, until such time as it is determined or withdrawn.
  - (7) The Society must make rules—

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) prescribing the circumstances in which the Society may decide to take action under sub-paragraph (2)(a) or (b);
  - (b) about the practice and procedure to be followed by the Society in relation to such action;
  - (c) governing the publication under sub-paragraph (3) of details of action taken under sub-paragraph (2)(a) or (b);
- and the Society may make such other rules in connection with the exercise of its powers under this paragraph as it considers appropriate.
- (8) Before making rules under sub-paragraph (7), the Society must consult the Tribunal.
  - (9) A penalty under this paragraph may be recovered as a debt due to the Society, and is to be forfeited to Her Majesty.
  - (10) The Lord Chancellor may, by order, amend paragraph (b) of sub-paragraph (2) so as to substitute for the amount for the time being specified in that paragraph such other amount as may be specified in the order.
  - (11) Before making an order under sub-paragraph (10), the Lord Chancellor must consult the Society.
  - (12) An order under sub-paragraph (10) is to be made by statutory instrument subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.
  - (13) This paragraph is without prejudice to any power conferred on the Society, or any other person, to make an application or complaint to the Tribunal.
- 14C (1) A person may appeal against—
- (a) a decision by the Society to rebuke that person under paragraph 14B(2)(a) if a decision is also made to publish details of the rebuke;
  - (b) a decision by the Society to impose a penalty on that person under paragraph 14B(2)(b) or the amount of that penalty;
  - (c) a decision by the Society to publish under paragraph 14B(3) details of any action taken against that person under paragraph 14B(2)(a) or (b).
- (2) Subsections (9)(b), (10)(a) and (b), (11) and (12) of section 46 of the 1974 Act (Tribunal rules about procedure for hearings etc) apply in relation to appeals under this paragraph as they apply in relation to applications or complaints, except that subsection (11) of that section is to be read as if for “the applicant” to “application)” there were substituted “ any party to the appeal ”.
  - (3) Rules under section 46(9)(b) of the 1974 Act may, in particular, make provision about the period during which an appeal under this paragraph may be made.
  - (4) On an appeal under this paragraph, the Tribunal has power to make an order which—
    - (a) affirms the decision of the Society;
    - (b) revokes the decision of the Society;
    - (c) in the case of a penalty imposed under paragraph 14B(2)(b), varies the amount of the penalty;



*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (d) in the case of a recognised body, contains provision for any of the matters mentioned in paragraph 18(2);
  - (e) in the case of a manager or employee of a recognised body, contains provision for any of the matters mentioned in paragraph 18A(2);
  - (f) makes such provision as the Tribunal thinks fit as to payment of costs.
- (5) Where, by virtue of sub-paragraph (4)(e), an order contains provision for any of the matters mentioned in sub-paragraph (2)(c) of paragraph 18A, sub-paragraphs (5) and (6) of that paragraph apply as if the order had been made under sub-paragraph (2)(c) of that paragraph.
- (6) An appeal from the Tribunal shall lie to the High Court, at the instance of the Society or the person in respect of whom the order of the Tribunal was made.
- (7) The High Court shall have power to make such order on an appeal under this paragraph as it may think fit.
- (8) Any decision of the High Court on an appeal under this section shall be final.
- (9) This paragraph is without prejudice to any power conferred on the Tribunal in connection with an application or complaint made to it.”

#### Commencement Information

**1111** Sch. 16 para. 103 wholly in force at 31.3.2009 see s. 211 and [S.I. 2009/503](#), [art. 2\(b\)\(ii\)](#) (subject to [art. 4](#))

- 104 In paragraph 16 of that Schedule (complaints to Tribunal with respect to recognised bodies)—
- (a) in sub-paragraph (1), in paragraph (a) omit “in the United Kingdom”,
  - (b) in paragraph (b) of that sub-paragraph for “section 34 of the 1974 Act” substitute “ any requirement imposed by or by virtue of this Act ”,
  - (c) for paragraph (c) of that sub-paragraph substitute—
    - “(c) a complaint that the body has acted in contravention of section 41 of the 1974 Act or paragraph 9(2) of this Schedule or of any conditions subject to which a permission has been granted under section 41 of that Act or that paragraph of this Schedule; or”, and
  - (d) after that sub-paragraph insert—
    - “(1A) The Tribunal shall have jurisdiction to hear and determine any of the following complaints made to it under this paragraph with respect to a manager or employee of a recognised body (“the relevant person”)—
    - (a) a complaint that the relevant person has been convicted by any court of a criminal offence which renders that person unsuitable to be a manager or employee (or both) of a recognised body;
    - (b) a complaint that the relevant person has failed to comply with any requirement imposed by or by virtue of this Act or any rules applicable to the relevant person by virtue of section 9 of this Act;

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) a complaint that the relevant person has acted in contravention of section 41 of the 1974 Act or paragraph 9(2) of this Schedule or of any conditions subject to which a permission has been granted under that section or for the purposes of paragraph 9(2) of this Schedule;
  - (d) a complaint that the relevant person has knowingly acted in contravention of an order under section 43(2) of the 1974 Act or of any conditions subject to which a permission has been granted under such an order.”
- 105 In paragraph 17 of that Schedule (procedure on applications and complaints)—
- (a) for “(7)” substitute “(9)”,
  - (b) in paragraph (a)—
    - (i) omit “11(1), 15(2) or”,
    - (ii) omit “13(3) or”, and
    - (iii) after “16(1)” insert “ or (1A)”, and
  - (c) in paragraph (c) after “body” insert “ or, in the case of such a complaint as is mentioned in paragraph 16(1A), to a manager or employee of such a body”.

#### Commencement Information

**I112** Sch. 16 para. 105(a)(b)(i)(iii)(c) in force at 31.3.2009 by [S.I. 2009/503](#), [art. 2\(b\)\(ii\)](#)

- 106 In paragraph 18 of that Schedule (powers of Tribunal with respect to recognised bodies)—
- (a) in sub-paragraph (1) after “this Schedule” insert “ (other than paragraph 16(1A))”,
  - (b) in paragraph (b) of that sub-paragraph for “section 34 of the 1974 Act” substitute “ any requirement imposed by or by virtue of this Act ”,
  - (c) omit paragraph (d) of that sub-paragraph and the “or” immediately preceding it,
  - (d) in sub-paragraph (2) omit “not exceeding £3,000”, and
  - (e) omit sub-paragraphs (3) and (4).

#### Commencement Information

**I113** Sch. 16 para. 106(a)(b)(d) in force and Sch. 16 para. 106(e) in force for certain purposes at 31.3.2009 by [S.I. 2009/503](#), [art. 2\(b\)\(ii\)](#)

- 107 After that paragraph insert—
- “18A(1) Where, on the hearing of any complaint made to it under paragraph 16(1A) of this Schedule, the Tribunal is satisfied that a manager or employee of a recognised body—
- (a) has been convicted as mentioned in paragraph (a) of paragraph 16(1A),
  - (b) has failed to comply with any requirement imposed by or by virtue of this Act or any rules applicable to the relevant person by virtue of section 9 of this Act, or

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) has acted as mentioned in paragraph (c) or (d) of paragraph 16(1A), the Tribunal may, if it thinks fit, make one or more of the orders referred to in sub-paragraph (2).
- (2) Those orders are—
- (a) an order directing the payment by the relevant person of a penalty to be forfeited to Her Majesty;
  - (b) an order requiring the Society to consider taking such steps as the Tribunal may specify in relation to the relevant person;
  - (c) if the person is not a solicitor, an order which states one or more of the matters mentioned in sub-paragraph (3);
  - (d) an order requiring the Society to refer to an appropriate regulator any matter relating to the conduct of the relevant person.
- (3) The matters referred to in sub-paragraph (2)(c) are—
- (a) that as from the specified date—
    - (i) no solicitor or employee of a solicitor shall employ or remunerate, in connection with the practice carried on by that solicitor, the person with respect to whom the order is made, and
    - (ii) no recognised body, or manager or employee of such a body, shall employ or remunerate that person, in connection with the business of the recognised body, except in accordance with a Society permission;
  - (b) that as from the specified date no recognised body or manager or employee of such a body shall, except in accordance with a Society permission, permit the person with respect to whom the order is made to be a manager of the body;
  - (c) that as from the specified date no recognised body or manager or employee of such a body shall, except in accordance with a Society permission, permit the person with respect to whom the order is made to have an interest in the body.
- (4) For this purpose a person has an interest in a body if the person has an interest in the body within the meaning of Part 5 the Legal Services Act 2007 (see sections 72 and 109 of that Act).
- (5) Subsections (1) to (1C), (3) and (4) of section 44 of the 1974 Act (offences in connection with orders under section 43(2) of that Act) apply in relation to an order under sub-paragraph (2)(c) as they apply in relation to an order under section 43(2) of that Act, except that references in those subsections to provision within section 43(2)(a), (b) or (c) of that Act are to be read as references to provision within sub-paragraph (3)(a), (b) or (c).
- (6) Section 44(2) of the 1974 Act, paragraph 16(1)(d) and (1A)(d) of this Schedule and paragraph 15(3A) of Schedule 14 to the Courts and Legal Services Act 1990 apply in relation to an order under sub-paragraph (2)(c) as they apply in relation to an order under section 43(2) of the 1974 Act.
- (7) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (2)(d) an “appropriate regulator” in relation to the relevant person means—

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) if the person is an authorised person in relation to a reserved legal activity for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, any relevant approved regulator (within the meaning of that Act) in relation to that person, and
- (b) if the person carries on activities which are not reserved legal activities, any body which regulates the carrying on of such activities by the person.”

#### **Commencement Information**

**I114** Sch. 16 para. 107 wholly in force at 31.3.2009 see s. 211 and [S.I. 2009/503](#), [art. 2\(b\)\(ii\)](#) (subject to [art. 4](#))

- 108 In paragraph 20 of that Schedule (powers of Tribunal in respect of legal aid complaints), in sub-paragraph (1)—
- (a) for “an officer” substitute “ a manager ”,
  - (b) for “director” substitute “ manager ”, and
  - (c) for “legal aid work” substitute “ providing representation funded by the Legal Services Commission as part of the Criminal Defence Service ”,
- and omit sub-paragraph (2).
- 109 In paragraph 21 of that Schedule (revocation of recognition by reason of default by director)—
- (a) in sub-paragraph (1), in paragraph (a) for “director” substitute “ manager ”,
  - (b) in paragraph (b) of that sub-paragraph for “director” (in both places) substitute “ manager ”,
  - (c) in paragraph (c) of that sub-paragraph for “director” (in both places) substitute “ manager ”,
  - (d) in sub-paragraph (3) for “director” (in both places) substitute “ manager ”, and
  - (e) after that sub-paragraph insert—
    - “(4) The reference in paragraph (c) of sub-paragraph (1) to a person employed by a recognised body includes a reference to a person who was so employed at the time of the conduct leading to the making of the order referred to in that paragraph.”
- 110 In paragraph 23 (orders as to remuneration for non-contentious business)—
- (a) the existing provision becomes sub-paragraph (1) of that paragraph,
  - (b) in that sub-paragraph for “regulating (in accordance with paragraph 22)” substitute “ prescribing (by virtue of paragraph 22) general principles to be applied when determining ”,
  - (c) in that sub-paragraph for paragraph (b) substitute—
    - “(b) in paragraph (d), the reference to the solicitor or any employee of the solicitor who is an authorised person were a reference to any manager or employee of the recognised body who is an authorised person.”, and
  - (d) after that sub-paragraph insert—
    - “(2) In this paragraph “authorised person” means a person who is an authorised person in relation to an activity which is a reserved legal

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.**Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

activity, within the meaning of the Legal Services Act 2007 (see section 18 of that Act).”

111 For paragraph 24 of that Schedule (effect of contentious business agreements) substitute—

- “24 (1) This paragraph applies in relation to a contentious business agreement made between a recognised body and a client.
- (2) A provision in the agreement that the body shall not be liable for the negligence of any of its managers or employees shall be void if the client is a natural person who, in entering that agreement, is acting for purposes which are outside his trade, business or profession.
- (3) A provision in the agreement that the body shall be relieved from any responsibility to which it would otherwise be subject in the course of carrying on its business as a recognised body shall be void.
- (4) A provision in the agreement that any manager of the body shall be relieved from any responsibility to which the manager would otherwise be subject in the course of the carrying on by the body of its business as a recognised body shall be void.”

112 In paragraph 25 of that Schedule (effect of supervening incapacity on contentious business agreements)—

- (a) for sub-paragraph (1)(b) substitute—
- “ (b) a relevant insolvency event occurs in relation to the body;”,
- (b) in sub-paragraphs (2) and (3)—
- (i) for “taxation” (in each place) substitute “ assessment ”, and
- (ii) for “taxing officer” (in each place) substitute “ costs officer ”,
- (c) in sub-paragraph (3) for “any officer” substitute “ any manager ”, and
- (d) after that sub-paragraph insert—
- “(4) For the purposes of this paragraph a relevant insolvency event occurs in relation to a recognised body if—
- (a) a resolution for a voluntary winding-up of the body is passed without a declaration of solvency under section 89 of the Insolvency Act 1986;
- (b) the body enters administration within the meaning of paragraph 1(2)(b) of Schedule B1 to that Act;
- (c) an administrative receiver within the meaning of section 251 of that Act is appointed;
- (d) a meeting of creditors is held in relation to the body under section 95 of that Act (creditors' meeting which has the effect of converting a members' voluntary winding up into a creditors' voluntary winding up);
- (e) an order for the winding up of the body is made.”

#### Commencement Information

**I115** Sch. 16 para. 112(a)(c)(d) in force at 30.6.2008 by [S.I. 2008/1436](#), [art. 2\(d\)\(ii\)](#); Sch. 16 para. 112(b) in force at 1.1.2010 by [S.I. 2009/3250](#), [art. 2\(f\)\(ii\)](#) (with [art. 9](#))

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- 113 In paragraph 26 of that Schedule (taxations with respect to contentious business)—
- (a) in the paragraph heading for “Taxations” substitute “ Assessments ”,
  - (b) the existing paragraph becomes sub-paragraph (1) and in that sub-paragraph —
    - (i) for “taxation” substitute “ assessment ”,
    - (ii) for “taxing officer” substitute “ costs officer ”,
    - (iii) after “the body” (in the second place) insert “ or any manager or employee of the body ”, and
    - (iv) for “any solicitor, being an officer” substitute “ any authorised person, being a manager ”, and
  - (c) after that sub-paragraph insert—
    - “(2) In this paragraph “authorised person” means an authorised person, in relation to an activity which is a reserved legal activity, within the meaning of the Legal Services Act 2007.”

#### Commencement Information

**I116** Sch. 16 para. 113(b)(iii) in force at 30.6.2008 by [S.I. 2008/1436](#), [art. 2\(d\)\(ii\)](#) (as amended by [S.I. 2008/1591](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#)); Sch. 16 para. 113(b)(iv)(c) in force at 31.3.2009 by [S.I. 2009/503](#), [art. 2\(b\)\(ii\)](#); Sch. 16 para. 113(a)(b)(i)(ii) in force at 1.1.2010 by [S.I. 2009/3250](#), [art. 2\(f\)\(ii\)](#) (with [art. 9](#))

- 114 In paragraph 28 (power of court to order recognised body to pay over clients' money) after “client” (in the third place) insert “ or any manager or employee of such a body ”.
- 115 For paragraph 29 of that Schedule (actions to recover costs) substitute—
- “29 (1) Subsection (2A) of section 69 of the 1974 Act shall have effect in relation to a bill of costs delivered by a recognised body as if for paragraphs (a) and (b) there were substituted—
- “(a) signed on behalf of the recognised body by any manager or employee of the body authorised by it to do so, or
  - (b) enclosed in, or accompanied by, a letter which is so signed and refers to the bill.”
- (2) Subsection (2E) of that section shall have effect in relation to such a bill as if for “the solicitor” there were substituted “ the recognised body ”.”
- 116 In paragraph 30 (power of Society to inspect files relating to certain proceedings), for paragraph (b) substitute—
- “(b) for the appointment of an administrative receiver within the meaning of section 251 of the Insolvency Act 1986; or”.
- 117 In paragraph 31 of that Schedule (bank accounts)—
- (a) omit “or (2)”, and
  - (b) after “bank” insert “ or building society ”.
- 118 After that paragraph insert—
- “31A Where rules made under section 32(1) of the 1974 Act are applied to managers or employees in accordance with section 9(2)(fb) of this Act, section 85 of the 1974 Act shall apply in relation to a manager or employee to whom the rules are applied who keeps an account with a bank or building

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

society in pursuance of any such rules as it applies in relation to a solicitor who keeps such an account in pursuance of rules under section 32.”

- 119 (1) Paragraph 32 of that Schedule (intervention by Society) is amended as follows.
- (2) In sub-paragraph (1)(a)—
- (a) for “Council are” substitute “ Society is ”,
  - (b) after “recognised body” insert “ or a manager of such a body ”, and
  - (c) for “it” substitute “ the body or manager ”.
- (3) For sub-paragraph (1)(c) substitute—
- “(c) a relevant insolvency event occurs in relation to a recognised body; or”.
- (4) In sub-paragraph (1)(d)—
- (a) for “Council have” substitute “ Society has ”,
  - (b) for “officer” substitute “ manager ”, and
  - (c) for “that body's” to the end substitute—
    - “(i) that body's business,
    - (ii) any trust of which that body is or was a trustee,
    - (iii) any trust of which the manager or employee is or was a trustee in his capacity as such a manager or employee, or
    - (iv) the business of another body in which the manager or employee is or was a manager or employee or the practice (or former practice) of the manager or employee; or”.
- (5) After sub-paragraph (1)(d) insert—
- “(e) the Society is satisfied that it is necessary to exercise the powers conferred by Part 2 of Schedule 1 to the 1974 Act (or any of them) in relation to a recognised body to protect—
- (i) the interests of clients (or former or potential clients) of the recognised body,
  - (ii) the interests of the beneficiaries of any trust of which the recognised body is or was a trustee, or
  - (iii) the interests of the beneficiaries of any trust of which a person who is or was a manager or employee of the recognised body is or was a trustee in that person's capacity as such a manager or employee;”.
- (6) After sub-paragraph (1) insert—
- “(1A) For the purposes of this paragraph a relevant insolvency event occurs in relation to a recognised body if—
- (a) a resolution for a voluntary winding-up of the body is passed without a declaration of solvency under section 89 of the Insolvency Act 1986;
  - (b) the body enters administration within the meaning of paragraph 1(2)(b) of Schedule B1 to that Act;
  - (c) an administrative receiver within the meaning of section 251 of that Act is appointed;

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (d) a meeting of creditors is held in relation to the body under section 95 of that Act (creditors' meeting which has the effect of converting a members' voluntary winding up into a creditors' voluntary winding up);
  - (e) an order for the winding up of the body is made.”
- (7) Omit sub-paragraph (2).
- 120 For paragraph 33 of that Schedule (further grounds for intervention)—
- (a) for paragraph (a) substitute—
    - “(a) the Society is satisfied that there has been undue delay—
      - (i) on the part of a recognised body in connection with any matter in which it is or was acting on behalf of a client or with any trust of which it is or was a trustee, or
      - (ii) on the part of a person who is or was a manager or employee of a recognised body in connection with any trust of which the manager or employee is or was a trustee in his capacity as such a manager or employee;”, and
    - (b) in paragraph (c) for “Council regard” substitute “ Society regards ”.
- 121 In paragraph 34 of that Schedule (powers of intervention on revocation of recognition etc), in sub-paragraph (1)—
- (a) omit “corporate” (in both places), and
  - (b) in paragraph (a), after “revoked” insert “ in accordance with rules under that section or ”.
- 122 In paragraph 35 of that Schedule (provision relating to the application of Part 2 of Schedule 1 to the Solicitors Act 1974)—
- (a) in paragraph (a) omit “corporate”, and
  - (b) omit “and” at the end of paragraph (b) and after paragraph (c) insert—
    - “(d) paragraph 6(2)(a) of that Schedule is to be construed as including a reference to sums of money held by or on behalf of the recognised body in connection with any trust of which a person who is or was a manager of the recognised body is or was a trustee in his capacity as such a manager;
    - (e) paragraph 9 of that Schedule is to be construed—
      - (i) as if sub-paragraph (1) included a reference to documents in the possession or under the control of the recognised body in connection with any trust of which a person who is or was a manager or employee of the recognised body is or was a trustee in his capacity as such a manager or employee, and
      - (ii) as applying to such a manager or employee and documents and property in his possession or under his control in connection with such a trust as it applies to a solicitor and documents and property in the possession or under the control of the solicitor;



*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (f) paragraph 11(1) of that Schedule is to be construed as including a power for the Society to apply to the High Court for an order for the appointment of a new trustee to a trust in substitution for a person who is a trustee, in his capacity as a manager or employee of the recognised body; and
- (g) paragraph 13A of that Schedule is to be read as if the references to a former partner were references—
- (i) in the case of a recognised body which is a partnership, to a former partner in the partnership, and
  - (ii) in any other case to a manager or former manager of the recognised body.”
- 123 In paragraph 36 of that Schedule (privilege from disclosure etc)—
- (a) for sub-paragraph (1) substitute—
 

“(1) Where a recognised body acts as such for a client, any communication, document, material or information is privileged from disclosure in like manner as if the recognised body had at all material times been a solicitor acting for the client.”,
  - (b) in sub-paragraph (3) for “an officer” substitute “a manager”, and
  - (c) after that sub-paragraph insert—
 

“(4) This paragraph does not apply to a recognised body which holds a licence under Part 5 of the Legal Services Act 2007 (alternative business structures).”

### PART 3

#### THE COURTS AND LEGAL SERVICES ACT 1990 (C. 41)

- 124 The Courts and Legal Services Act 1990 is amended in accordance with this Part of this Schedule.
- 125 In section 89 (foreign lawyers: recognised bodies and partnerships with solicitors)
- (a) for subsection (3)(a)(iv) substitute—
 

“(iv) sections 36 and 36A (compensation grants); and”,
  - (b) in subsection (4), for paragraphs (a) to (d) substitute “to make different provision with respect to registered foreign lawyers to the provision made with respect to solicitors.”,
  - (c) in subsection (5) for “Secretary of State” substitute “Lord Chancellor”,
  - (d) in paragraph (a) of that subsection for “the commencement of this section” substitute “or in the same Session as the Legal Services Act 2007 was passed”,
  - (e) in subsection (6) for “Secretary of State” substitute “Lord Chancellor”,
  - (f) in subsection (7) for “Secretary of State” (in both places) substitute “Lord Chancellor”,

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (g) in paragraph (a) of that subsection for “the commencement of this section” substitute “ or in the same Session as the Legal Services Act 2007 was passed ”,
- (h) in that subsection for “officers” substitute “ managers ”,
- (i) after subsection (8) insert—
  - “(8A) Rules and regulations made by the Law Society under, or by virtue of, this section or Schedule 14 which are not regulatory arrangements within the meaning of the Legal Services Act 2007 are to be treated as such arrangements for the purposes of that Act.”, and
- (j) in subsection (9), after the definition of “foreign lawyer” insert—
  - ““manager”, in relation to a body, has the same meaning as in the Legal Services Act 2007 (see section 207 of that Act);”.

#### Commencement Information

**II17** Sch. 16 para. 125(c)(d)(e)(f)(g) in force at 30.6.2008 by [S.I. 2008/1436](#), [art. 2\(d\)\(iii\)](#) (as amended by [S.I. 2008/1591](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#)); Sch. 16 para. 125 in force at 31.3.2009 by [S.I. 2009/503](#), [art. 2\(b\)\(iii\)](#) (subject to [art. 4](#))

- 126 Schedule 14 to that Act (foreign lawyers: partnerships and recognised bodies) is amended as follows.
- 127 In paragraph 1 (interpretation) omit the definitions of “the Council” and “controlled trust”.
- 128 In paragraph 2 (application for registration)—
  - (a) for “Council” in each place substitute “ Society ”,
  - (b) in sub-paragraph (1)(b) for “the Master of the Rolls” substitute “ the Legal Services Board ”,
  - (c) in sub-paragraph (2)—
    - (i) for “Law Society” substitute “ Society ”, and
    - (ii) for paragraphs (a) and (b) substitute “ for members of that profession to be managers of recognised bodies. ”,
  - (d) omit sub-paragraph (3),
  - (e) in sub-paragraph (4)—
    - (i) for “Master of the Rolls” substitute “ Legal Services Board ”, and
    - (ii) in paragraph (a) after “including” insert “ the form of the register and ”,
  - (f) in that sub-paragraph, after paragraph (b) insert “and
    - (c) the making available to the public of the information contained in the register (including the manner in which, and hours during which, the information is to be made so available and whether the information is to be made available free of charge).”, and
  - (g) omit sub-paragraph (5).

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Commencement Information

**I118** Sch. 16 para. 128(a)(c)(i) in force at 7.3.2008 by S.I. 2008/222, **art. 2(j)(iii)**; Sch. 16 para. 128(c)(ii) in force at 30.6.2008 by S.I. 2008/1436, **art. 2(d)(iii)** (as amended by S.I. 2008/1591, **art. 2(2)**); Sch. 16 para. 128(d)(e)(ii)(f)(g) in force at 1.7.2009 by S.I. 2009/1365, **art. 2(b)(i)**; Sch. 16 para. 128(b)(e)(i) in force at 1.1.2010 by S.I. 2009/3250, **art. 2(f)(ii)** (with **art. 9**)

- 129 After paragraph 2 insert—
- “2A (1) The Society may direct that a foreign lawyer's registration is to have effect subject to such conditions as the Society thinks fit to impose.
- (2) A direction under sub-paragraph (1) may be given in respect of a foreign lawyer
- (a) at the time he is first registered, or
- (b) at any time when the registration has effect.”
- 130 In paragraph 3 (duration of registration) in sub-paragraphs (2) and (3)(c) for “Council” substitute “ Society ”.
- 131 In paragraph 5 (intervention in practices)—
- (a) in sub-paragraph (3)(a) and (b)—
- (i) for “Council have” substitute “ Society has ”, and
- (ii) omit “by virtue of his being a member of that partnership”,
- (b) after sub-paragraph (3)(b) insert—
- “(ba) the Society has reason to suspect dishonesty on the part of the registered foreign lawyer (“L”) in connection with—
- (i) the business of any person of whom L is or was an employee, or of any body of which L is or was a manager, or
- (ii) any business which is or was carried on by L as a sole trader;”,
- (c) in sub-paragraph (3)(c) for “Council are” substitute “ Society is ”,
- (d) after sub-paragraph (3)(e) insert—
- “(ea) the Society is satisfied that he has abandoned his practice;”,
- (e) in sub-paragraph (3)(i)—
- (i) for “Council are” substitute “ Society is ”, and
- (ii) for “an officer” (in both places) substitute “ a manager ”,
- (f) after that sub-paragraph insert—
- “(j) the Society is satisfied that it is necessary to exercise the intervention powers (or any of them) in relation to the registered foreign lawyer to protect—
- (i) the interests of clients (or former or potential clients) of the registered foreign lawyer or the multi-national partnership, or
- (ii) the interests of the beneficiaries of any trust of which the registered foreign lawyer is or was a trustee.”,
- (g) omit sub-paragraph (4),

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (h) in sub-paragraph (5)(a) for “a complaint is made to the Society” substitute “the Society is satisfied”,
- (i) in sub-paragraph (5)(a)(ii) for “controlled trust” substitute “trust”,
- (j) in sub-paragraph (5)(c) for “Council regard” substitute “Society regards”, and
- (k) after sub-paragraph (9) insert—

“(10) In this paragraph “manager”, in relation to a recognised body, has the same meaning as in the Legal Services Act 2007 (see section 207 of that Act).”

132 For paragraph 6 (compensation fund) substitute—

- “6 Section 36 of the 1974 Act applies in relation to registered foreign lawyers as if for paragraphs (a) and (b) of subsection (1) there were substituted—
- “(a) an act or omission of a registered foreign lawyer or former registered foreign lawyer;
  - (b) an act or omission of an employee or former employee of a registered foreign lawyer or former registered foreign lawyer;”.

#### **Commencement Information**

**I119** Sch. 16 para. 132 wholly in force at 31.3.2009 see s. 211 and [S.I. 2009/503](#), [art. 2\(b\)\(iii\)](#) (subject to [art. 5](#))

133 For paragraph 7 (contributions to fund) substitute—

- “7 Section 36A(2) and (3) of the 1974 Act applies in relation to registered foreign lawyers as it applies in relation to solicitors.”

134 For paragraph 8 (accountants' reports) substitute —

- “8 Section 34 of the Act of 1974 applies in relation to registered foreign lawyers as it applies in relation to solicitors.”

135 In paragraph 14 (appeal against conditions or refusals)—

- (a) in sub-paragraph (1)—
  - (i) for “Master of the Rolls” substitute “High Court”, and
  - (ii) for “2(3)” substitute “2A”,
- (b) omit sub-paragraph (2),
- (c) in sub-paragraph (3)—
  - (i) omit “to him”,
  - (ii) for “Master of the Rolls” substitute “High Court”, and
  - (iii) for “he” substitute “it”, and
- (d) after that sub-paragraph insert—

“(4) In relation to an appeal under this paragraph the High Court may make such order as it thinks fit as to payment of costs.

(5) The decision of the High Court on an appeal under this paragraph shall be final.”

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Commencement Information**

**I120** Sch. 16 para. 135 wholly in force at 1.7.2009 see s. 211 and S.I. 2009/1365, **art. 2(b)(ii)** (subject to **art. 4**)

- 136 In paragraph 15 (jurisdiction and powers of disciplinary tribunal)—
- (a) after sub-paragraph (3) insert—

“(3A) Any person who alleges that a registered foreign lawyer has knowingly acted in contravention of any order under section 43(2) of the Act of 1974 or of any conditions subject to which a permission has been granted under such an order may make a complaint to the Tribunal.”,
  - (b) in sub-paragraph (4)(c), omit “not exceeding £5,000”, and
  - (c) omit sub-paragraph (5).
- 137 In paragraph 16(2) (foreign lawyers assisting Tribunal) for “Master of the Rolls” substitute “Legal Services Board”.
- 138 In paragraph 17 (appeals from Tribunal)—
- (a) in sub-paragraph (1) for “lie—” to the end substitute “lie to the High Court”,
  - (b) in sub-paragraph (2)—
    - (i) omit “and the Master of the Rolls”, and
    - (ii) for “they” substitute “it”,
  - (c) in sub-paragraph (3) for “of the Master of the Rolls on an appeal under this paragraph” substitute “of the High Court on an appeal in the case of an order on an application under paragraph 15(2)(d) or (e), or the refusal of any such application,”, and
  - (d) omit sub-paragraph (4).

**Commencement Information**

**I121** Sch. 16 para. 138 wholly in force at 1.7.2009 see s. 211 and S.I. 2009/1365, **art. 2(b)(ii)** (subject to **art. 4**)

SCHEDULE 17

Section 182

LICENSED CONVEYANCING

**PART 1**

ADMINISTRATION OF JUSTICE ACT 1985 (C. 61)

- 1 Part 2 of the Administration of Justice Act 1985 (licensed conveyancing) is amended in accordance with this Part.
- 2 In section 11 (provision of conveyancing services by licensed conveyancers)—
- (a) in subsection (1) for “by persons” to the end substitute “and other services by persons who hold licences in force under this Part or who are recognised bodies.”,

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) for subsection (3) substitute—
- “(3) References in this Part to conveyancing services are references to—
- (a) the preparation of transfers, conveyances, contracts and other documents in connection with, and other services ancillary to, the disposition or acquisition of estates or interests in land, and
- (b) any other activities which are reserved instrument activities for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007 (see section 12 of and Schedule 2 to that Act).
- (3A) For the purposes of subsection (3)—
- (a) “disposition”
- (i) does not include a testamentary disposition or any disposition in the case of such a lease as is referred to in section 54(2) of the Law of Property Act 1925 (short leases), but
- (ii) subject to that, includes in the case of leases both their grant and their assignment, and
- (b) “acquisition” has a corresponding meaning.”, and
- (c) omit subsection (4).

#### Commencement Information

**I122** Sch. 17 para. 2 wholly in force at 1.1.2010; Sch. 17 para. 2 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 17 para. 2(a) in force at 31.3.2009 by [S.I. 2009/503](#), [art. 2\(e\)\(i\)](#); Sch. 17 para. 2 in force otherwise at 1.1.2010 by [S.I. 2009/3250](#), [art. 2\(f\)\(iii\)](#) (with [art. 9](#))

- 3 In section 12 (establishment of the Council), omit subsection (2).
- 4 (1) Section 15 (issue of licences by Council) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (3)(b), for “21” substitute “ 42 ”.
- (3) In subsection (4), for “the period of” to the end substitute “ such period, beginning with the date of issue of the licence, as may be specified in the licence. ”
- (4) Omit subsections (7) and (8).
- 5 (1) Section 16 (conditional licences) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1)—
- (a) after paragraph (c) insert—
- “(ca) after the Investigating Committee established under section 24 has made any order in his case under section 24A;”, and
- (b) after paragraph (e) insert—
- “(ea) when, having been required by rules made under section 22 to deliver to the Council a report by an accountant, he has not delivered such a report within the period required by the rules;

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (eb) after having been disqualified under section 99 of the Legal Services Act 2007 (disqualification from being manager or employee of a licensed body etc);
- (ec) after his holding of a restricted interest in a licensed body has been approved subject to conditions under paragraph 17, 28 or 33 of Schedule 13 to that Act (ownership of licensed bodies) or objected to under paragraph 19, 31 or 36 of that Schedule;”.

(3) In subsection (4)—

- (a) after “paragraph” insert “ (ca), ”, and
- (b) after “(e),” insert “ (ea), (eb), (ec), ”.

(4) In subsection (5) for “or” at the end of paragraph (a) substitute—

- “(aa) pending the hearing and determination of any appeal brought by the applicant under paragraph 18, 20, 29, 32, 34 or 37 of Schedule 13 to the Legal Services Act 2007;
- (ab) pending the review by a licensing authority, in accordance with its licensing rules, of a determination that the applicant should be disqualified under section 99 of the Legal Services Act 2007; or”.

(5) After that subsection insert—

“(6) In this section—

“licensed body”, “licensing authority” and “licensing rules” have the same meaning as in the Legal Services Act 2007 (see sections 71, 73 and 83 of that Act);

“restricted interest”, in relation to a body, has the same meaning as in Schedule 13 to that Act (ownership of licensed bodies).”

#### **Commencement Information**

**I123** Sch. 17 para. 5(1)(2)(a)(3)(a) in force and Sch. 17 para. 5(2)(b)(3)(b) in force for certain purposes at 31.3.2009 by [S.I. 2009/503](#), [art. 2\(c\)\(i\)](#)

6 After section 16 insert—

#### **“16A Additional fee payable by certain persons when applying for licences**

- (1) This section applies where a person applies for a licence at a time when section 16 has effect in relation to him by reason of the circumstances mentioned in section 16(1)(ea).
- (2) The application must be accompanied by an additional fee of an amount prescribed by rules made by the Council for the purposes of this section.”

7 (1) Section 17 (imposition of conditions during currency of licence) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (2)(a)—

- (a) after “paragraph” insert “ (ca), ”, and
- (b) after “(e),” insert “ (ea), (eb), (ec), ”.

(3) In subsection (4), for “or” at the end of paragraph (a) substitute—

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- “(aa) pending the hearing and determination of any appeal brought by the licensed conveyancer under paragraph 18, 20, 29, 32, 34 or 37 of Schedule 13 to the Legal Services Act 2007;
- (ab) pending the review by a licensing authority, in accordance with its licensing rules, of a determination that the licensed conveyancer should be disqualified under section 99 of the Legal Services Act 2007; or”.

(4) After subsection (5) insert—

“(6) In this section “licensing authority” and “licensing rules” have the same meaning as in the Legal Services Act 2007 (see sections 73 and 83 of that Act).”

#### Commencement Information

**I124** Sch. 17 para. 7(1)(2)(a) in force and Sch. 17 para. 7(2)(b) in force for certain purposes at 31.3.2009 by S.I. 2009/503, [art. 2\(c\)\(i\)](#)

8 After section 17 insert—

#### “17A Variation of conditions

- (1) This section applies where a licensed conveyancer's licence has effect subject to conditions.
- (2) On an application made by the licensed conveyancer, the Council may in prescribed circumstances direct—
  - (a) the removal of a condition;
  - (b) the variation of a condition in the manner described in the application.
- (3) “Prescribed” means prescribed by rules made by the Council.
- (4) Section 14 (applications for licences) applies in relation to an application under this section as it applies in relation to applications for a licence under this Part.”

9 In section 18 (suspension or termination of licences), after subsection (2) insert—

- “(2A) Where the power conferred by paragraph 6(1) or 9(1) of Schedule 5 has been exercised in relation to a licensed conveyancer by virtue of paragraph 1(1)(a) (i), (aa), (c) or (e) of that Schedule, the exercise of that power shall operate immediately to suspend any licence held by that person under this Part.
- (2B) Subsection (2A) does not apply if, at the time when the power referred to there is exercised, the Council directs that subsection (2A) is not to apply in relation to the licensed conveyancer concerned.
- (2C) If, at the time when the power referred to in subsection (2A) is exercised, the Council gives a direction to that effect, the licensed conveyancer concerned may continue to act in relation to any matter specified in the direction as if the licence had not been suspended by virtue of subsection (2A), but subject to such conditions (if any) as the Council sees fit to impose.



*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2D) Subject to subsection (2E), where a licence is suspended by virtue of subsection (2A) the suspension of the licence shall continue until the licence expires.
- (2E) The licensed conveyancer may, at any time before the licence expires, apply to the Council to terminate the suspension.
- (2F) On an application under subsection (2E), the Council may in its discretion—
- (a) by order terminate the suspension either unconditionally or subject to such conditions as the Council may think fit, or
  - (b) refuse the application.
- (2G) If on an application by a licensed conveyancer under subsection (2E) the Council refuses the application or terminates the suspension subject to conditions, the licensed conveyancer may appeal against the decision of the Council to the High Court which may—
- (a) affirm the decision, or
  - (b) terminate the suspension either unconditionally or subject to such conditions as it may think fit.
- (2H) In relation to an appeal under subsection (2G) the High Court may make such order as it thinks fit as to payment of costs.”
- 10 In section 20 (rules as to professional practice, conduct and discipline), in subsection (1) omit “, in pursuance of its general duty referred to in section 12(2),”.
- 11 In section 22 (keeping of accounts and establishment of client accounts)—
- (a) in subsection (3)(a) omit “qualified”, and
  - (b) for subsections (4) and (5) substitute—  
“(4) Provision made in rules by virtue of subsection (3)(a) may provide that the reports delivered to the Council must be reports given by accountants in respect of whom requirements prescribed by the rules are met.”
- 12 (1) Section 24 (preliminary investigation of disciplinary cases) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1)—
- (a) for “preliminary investigation” substitute “ consideration ”,
  - (b) omit paragraph (b), and
  - (c) omit from “with a view” to the end.
- (3) After subsection (1) insert—
- “(1A) The Investigating Committee shall make a preliminary investigation of such an allegation and—
- (a) hear and determine the allegation, or
  - (b) refer the allegation to the Discipline and Appeals Committee established under section 25 for hearing and determination by that Committee under section 26.”
- (4) Omit subsection (2).
- (5) In subsection (3) omit—
- (a) “or (2)”,

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) “or complaint” (in both places), and
- (c) “or paragraph (b)”.

(6) After subsection (4) insert—

“(4A) The Council shall make rules as to the cases in which the Investigating Committee may hear and determine an allegation, and the cases in which they must refer an allegation to the Discipline and Appeals Committee.”

(7) In subsection (5) omit “or complaint” (in both places).

(8) After that subsection insert—

“(6) Before making a direction under subsection (5), the Investigating Committee must give the licensed conveyancer an opportunity to make representations against the making of the proposed direction.

- (7) In relation to proceedings under subsection (6), the Investigating Committee may make such order as they think fit as to the payment of costs by—
  - (a) the Council, or
  - (b) the licensed conveyancer.

(8) Where a direction under subsection (5) has been made, the licensed conveyancer may appeal to the Discipline and Appeals Committee, and on any such appeal the Committee may make such order as they think fit.

(9) Where an order has been made under subsection (7) the Council or the licensed conveyancer may appeal to the Discipline and Appeals Committee, and on any such appeal the Committee may make such order as they think fit.

- (10) Where an order is made by the Discipline and Appeals Committee under subsections (8) or (9)—
  - (a) the person against whom the order is made, and
  - (b) if not within paragraph (a), the Council,
 may appeal against the order to the High Court.

(11) On an appeal under subsection (10) the High Court may make such order as it thinks fit.

(12) The decision of the High Court on an appeal under subsection (10) shall be final.”

13 After section 24 insert—

**“24A Determination of allegations by Investigating Committee**

- (1) Where, on hearing an allegation by virtue of section 24(1A)(a), the Investigating Committee are satisfied that a licensed conveyancer—
  - (a) has, while holding a licence in force under this Part, failed to comply with any condition to which that licence was subject, or
  - (b) has failed to comply with any rules made by the Council under this Part,

the Committee may, if they think fit, make an order directing the payment by the licensed conveyancer of a penalty to be forfeited to Her Majesty.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) In relation to proceedings before the Investigating Committee by virtue of section 24(1A)(a), the Committee may make such order as they consider fit as to the payment of costs by—
    - (a) the Council,
    - (b) the licensed conveyancer against whom the proceedings were brought, or
    - (c) if the person on whose allegation the proceedings were brought was heard (in person, or through a representative) by the Committee in the course of the proceedings, that person.
  - (3) In subsection (2), for the purposes of paragraph (a) or (b) of that subsection, the reference to costs includes costs incurred in connection with a preliminary investigation of the allegation under section 24(1A).
  - (4) The amount of any penalty required to be paid under subsection (1) may not exceed such amount as may be prescribed by rules made by the Council for the purposes of this subsection.
  - (5) Paragraphs 1, 2(1) and (3) and 4 of Schedule 4 have effect in relation to—
    - (a) proceedings for the hearing and determination of an allegation by the Investigating Committee, as they have effect in relation to proceedings before the Discipline and Appeals Committee under section 26, and
    - (b) orders of the Investigating Committee, as they have effect in relation to orders of the Discipline and Appeals Committee.
  - (6) A person against whom an order is made by the Investigating Committee by virtue of subsection (1) may appeal to the Discipline and Appeals Committee, and on any such appeal the Discipline and Appeals Committee may make such order as they think fit.
  - (7) Where an order is made by the Investigating Committee by virtue of subsection (2), a person listed in paragraphs (a) to (c) of that subsection may appeal to the Discipline and Appeals Committee, and on any such appeal the Discipline and Appeals Committee may make such order as they think fit.
  - (8) Where an order is made by the Discipline and Appeals Committee under subsection (6) or (7)—
    - (a) a party to the appeal, or
    - (b) if not within paragraph (a), the Council,may appeal against the order to the High Court.
  - (9) On an appeal under subsection (8) the High Court may make such order as it thinks fit.
  - (10) The decision of the High Court on an appeal under subsection (8) shall be final.”
- 14 In section 25 (the Discipline and Appeals Committee), in subsection (1)(b) for “sections 27 to” substitute “ section 24A, 27, 28 or ”.
- 15 (1) Section 26 (proceedings in disciplinary cases) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1) after “allegation” insert “ referred to them under section 24(1A)(b) ”.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) In subsection (2)—
- (a) in paragraph (e), for “£3,000” substitute “such amount as may be prescribed by rules made by the Council for the purposes of this paragraph”,
  - (b) for paragraph (f) substitute—  
“(f) an order reprimanding the licensed conveyancer.”, and
  - (c) omit paragraph (g).
- (4) After subsection (2) insert—
- “(2A) In relation to proceedings before the Discipline and Appeals Committee under this section, the Committee may make such order as they consider fit as to the payment of costs by—
- (a) the Council;
  - (b) the licensed conveyancer against whom the proceedings were brought;
  - (c) if the person on whose allegation the proceedings were brought was heard (in person, or through a representative) by the Committee in the course of the proceedings, that person.
- (2B) In subsection (2A), for the purposes of paragraph (a) or (b) of that subsection, the reference to costs includes costs incurred in connection with a preliminary investigation of the allegation under section 24(1A).”
- (5) Omit subsections (5) and (6).
- (6) After subsection (7) insert—
- “(7A) Where the Discipline and Appeals Committee make an order under subsection (2A), a person listed in paragraphs (a) to (c) of that subsection may appeal to the High Court, and on any such appeal the High Court may make such order as it thinks fit.”
- (7) In subsection (8), after “(7)” insert “or (7A)”.
- 16 In section 27 (removal of disqualification from holding a licence), after subsection (2) insert—
- “(3) In relation to proceedings on an application under subsection (1), the Discipline and Appeals Committee may make such order as they consider fit as to the payment of costs by—
- (a) the Council;
  - (b) the applicant.”
- 17 In section 28 (revocation of licence on grounds of fraud or error), after subsection (4) insert—
- “(5) In relation to proceedings for the revocation of a licence under subsection (1), the Discipline and Appeals Committee may make such order as they consider fit as to the payment of costs by—
- (a) the Council;
  - (b) the licensed conveyancer to whose licence the proceedings relate.
- (6) In relation to proceedings on an application under subsection (2), the Discipline and Appeals Committee may make such order as they consider fit as to the payment of costs by—

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) the Council;
  - (b) the applicant.”
- 18 In section 29 (appeals from decisions of Council in relation to licences)—
  - (a) in subsection (1), omit “or” at the end of paragraph (b),
  - (b) in that subsection, at the end of paragraph (c) insert “or
    - (d) refuses an application made by that person under section 17A,” and
  - (c) in subsection (2), after paragraph (b) insert—
    - “(ba) in the case of an appeal under subsection (1)(d), by order direct the Council to grant the application;”.
- 19 (1) Section 31 (application of Schedule 5) is amended as follows.
  - (2) In subsection (2) omit—
    - (a) “or complaint” (in each place), and
    - (b) “or paragraph (b)”.
  - (3) In subsection (3), for “and 12” substitute “ to 12A ”.
  - (4) In subsection (4) omit “or complaint”.
- 20 (1) Section 32 (provision of conveyancing services by recognised bodies) is amended as follows.
  - (2) In subsection (1)(a) for “by licensed” (in the first place) to the end substitute “ of conveyancing services bodies; ”.
  - (3) In subsection (1)(b) for “such services” substitute “ conveyancing services or other relevant legal services ”.
  - (4) After subsection (1)(b) insert—
    - “(ba) prescribing the Council's arrangements for authorising recognised bodies, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, to carry on reserved instrument activities, or the administration of oaths, within the meaning of that Act;”.
  - (5) In subsection (1)(c) for “conditions” substitute “ requirements ”.
  - (6) In subsection (2) omit “corporate”.
  - (7) In subsection (3)—
    - (a) in paragraph (a) after “section” insert “ , or for the renewal of such recognition, ”,
    - (b) after that paragraph insert—
      - “(aa) for the payment of fees in connection with other applications under the rules;”,
    - (c) for paragraph (c) substitute—
      - “(c) about the time when any recognition granted under this section, or renewal of such recognition, takes effect and the period for which it is (subject to the provisions of this Part) to remain in force;
      - (ca) for the suspension or revocation of any such recognition, on such grounds and in such circumstances as may be prescribed in the rules;

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (cb) about the effect on the recognition of a partnership or other unincorporated body (“the existing body”) of any change in its membership, including provision for the existing body's recognition to be transferred where the existing body ceases to exist and another body succeeds to the whole or substantially the whole of its business;”,
  - (d) omit paragraph (d),
  - (e) in paragraph (e)—
    - (i) for “a list” substitute “ a register ”,
    - (ii) omit “corporate”, and
    - (iii) for “, and for the” to the end substitute “ and such other information relating to those bodies as may be specified in the rules; ”,
  - (f) after that paragraph insert—
    - “(ea) for information (or information of a specified description) on such a register to be made available to the public, and about the manner in which and times at which, information is to be made so available;”,
  - (g) after paragraph (f) insert—
    - “(fa) about the education and training requirements to be met by managers and employees of recognised bodies;
    - (fb) for rules made under any other provision of this Part to have effect in relation to managers and employees of recognised bodies with such additions, omissions or other modifications as appear to the Council to be necessary or expedient;”, and
  - (h) in paragraph (g) after “recognised bodies” insert “ or managers or employees of such bodies ”.
- (8) After subsection (3) insert—
- “(3A) Rules made by the Council may provide for the Council to grant a body recognition under this section subject to one or more conditions.
- (3B) At any time while a body is recognised under this section, the Council may, in such circumstances as may be prescribed, direct that the body's recognition is to have effect subject to such conditions as the Council may think fit.
- “Prescribed” means prescribed by rules made by the Council.
- (3C) The conditions which may be imposed under subsection (3A) or (3B) include—
- (a) conditions restricting the kinds of conveyancing services that may be provided by the body;
  - (b) conditions imposed by reference to criteria of general application;
  - (c) conditions requiring the body to take any specified steps that will, in the opinion of the Council, be conducive to the body carrying on an efficient business;
- and conditions may be imposed despite the fact that they may result in expenditure being incurred by the body.
- (3D) On an application made by a recognised body, the Council may, in such circumstances as may be prescribed, direct—

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) the removal of a condition subject to which the body's recognition has effect;
  - (b) the variation of such a condition in the manner described in the application.
- (3E) For the purposes of subsection (3D)—
- (a) section 14 applies in relation to an application under that subsection as it applies in relation to an application for a licence under this Part of this Act, and
  - (b) “prescribed” means prescribed by rules made by the Council.
- (3F) Rules under subsection (3A) or (3B) may make provision about when conditions imposed take effect (including provision conferring power on the Council to direct that a condition is not to have effect until the conclusion of any appeal in relation to it).
- (3G) Rules under this section may contain such incidental, supplemental, transitional or transitory provisions or savings as the Council considers necessary or expedient.”
- (9) Omit subsections (4) and (5).
- (10) In subsection (6)—
- (a) in paragraph (a) omit “corporate”, and
  - (b) for paragraph (b) substitute—
    - “(b) that a body's recognition under this section does not have effect subject to any conditions or has effect subject to any particular conditions.”.
- (11) After subsection (7) insert—
- “(8) In this section “conveyancing services body” and “relevant legal services” have the meaning given by section 32A.
- (9) The Council is capable of being designated as a licensing authority for the purposes of, and subject to, Part 5 of the Legal Services Act 2007 (alternative business structures).”

**Commencement Information**

**I125** Sch. 17 para. 20 wholly in force at 31.3.2009 see s. 211 and S.I. 2009/503, art. 2(c)(i) (subject to art. 4)

21 After section 32 (provision of conveyancing by recognised bodies) insert—

**“32A Conveyancing services bodies**

- (1) For the purposes of section 32 a “conveyancing services body” means a body (corporate or unincorporate) in respect of which—
  - (a) the management and control condition, and
  - (b) the services condition,are satisfied.
- (2) The management and control condition is satisfied in the case of a partnership if at least one of the partners is a licensed conveyancer.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) The management and control condition is satisfied in the case of an unincorporated body (other than a partnership), or a body corporate which is managed by its members, if at least one of those members is a licensed conveyancer.
- (4) The management and control condition is satisfied in the case of any other body corporate if at least one director of the body is a licensed conveyancer.
- (5) The services condition is satisfied in respect of a body if the body is carrying on a business consisting of the provision of—
  - (a) conveyancing services, or
  - (b) conveyancing services and other relevant legal services.
- (6) For the purposes of this section—
  - “authorised person” means an authorised person in relation to an activity which is a reserved legal activity (within the meaning of the Legal Services Act 2007);
  - “relevant legal services”, in relation to a body, means—
    - (a) conveyancing services, and
    - (b) where authorised persons are managers or employees of, or have an interest in, the body, services such as are provided by individuals practising as such authorised persons (whether or not those services involve the carrying on of reserved legal activities within the meaning of the Legal Services Act 2007);
 and a person has an interest in a body if the person has an interest in the body within the meaning of Part 5 of the Legal Services Act 2007 (see sections 72 and 109 of that Act).”

22 For section 33 (legal professional privilege), substitute—

**“33 Legal professional privilege**

- (1) Subsection (2) applies where a licensed conveyancer or recognised body acts as such for a client.
- (2) Any communication, document, material or information is privileged from disclosure in like manner as if the licensed conveyancer or body had at all material times been acting as the client's solicitor.
- (3) This section does not apply to a recognised body which holds a licence under Part 5 of the Legal Services Act 2007 (alternative business structures).”

23 After that section insert—

**“33A Administration of oaths by licensed conveyancers**

The Council may make rules prescribing its arrangements for authorising licensed conveyancers, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, to carry on activities which consist of the administration of oaths.”

24 In section 34 (modification of existing enactments relating to conveyancing etc), omit subsection (2)(c) to (e).

25 In section 35 (penalty for pretending to be a licensed conveyancer or recognised body), in subsection (2) omit “corporate”.



*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- 26 In section 36 (offences by bodies corporate)—
- (a) the existing section becomes subsection (1) of that section and in that subsection for “director” to “capacity” substitute “ officer of the body corporate ”, and
  - (b) after that subsection insert—
    - “(2) Where the affairs of a body corporate are managed by its members, subsection (1) applies in relation to the acts and defaults of a member in connection with the member's functions of management as it applies to an officer of the body corporate.
    - (3) Proceedings for an offence under this section alleged to have been committed by an unincorporated body are to be brought in the name of that body (and not in that of any of its members) and, for the purposes of any such proceedings, any rules of court relating to the service of documents have effect as if that body were a corporation.
    - (4) A fine imposed on an unincorporated body on its conviction of an offence under this section is to be paid out of the funds of that body.
    - (5) If an unincorporated body is charged with an offence under this section, section 33 of the Criminal Justice Act 1925 and Schedule 3 to the Magistrates' Courts Act 1980 (procedure on charge of an offence against a corporation) have effect in like manner as in the case of a corporation so charged.
    - (6) Where an offence under this section committed by an unincorporated body (other than a partnership) is proved to have been committed with the consent or connivance of, or to be attributable to any neglect on the part of, any officer of the body or any member of its governing body, that officer or member as well as the unincorporated body is guilty of the offence and liable to be proceeded against and punished accordingly.
    - (7) Where an offence under this section committed by a partnership is proved to have been committed with the consent or connivance of, or to be attributable to any neglect on the part of, a partner, that partner as well as the partnership is guilty of the offence and liable to be proceeded against and punished accordingly.
    - (8) In this section “officer”, in relation to a body corporate, means—
      - (a) any director, secretary or other similar officer of the body corporate, or
      - (b) any person who was purporting to act in any such capacity.”
- 27 In section 38 (rules)—
- (a) omit subsection (1), and
  - (b) in subsection (2) for “such rules” substitute “ rules made by the Council under this Part ”.
- 28 In section 39(1) (interpretation of Part 2)—
- (a) in the definition of “client”, in paragraph (a) omit “or his firm”,
  - (b) omit the definitions of “director” and “officer”,

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) at the appropriate place insert—
- ““manager”, in relation to a body, has the same meaning as in the Legal Services Act 2007 (see section 207 of that Act);”, and
- (d) in the definition of “recognised body” omit “corporate”.
- 29 (1) Schedule 3 (Council for Licensed Conveyancers: supplementary provisions) is amended as follows.
- (2) In paragraph 2(1), for “elected or nominated” substitute “ appointed ”.
- (3) In paragraph 2(2), for “elect” substitute “ appoint ”.
- (4) Omit paragraph 2(3).
- (5) Omit paragraph 3.
- (6) In paragraph 4(1)—
- (a) for “election or nomination” (in both places) substitute “ appointment ”,
- (b) for “election of” substitute “ appointment of ”, and
- (c) for “elected or nominated” substitute “ appointed ”.
- (7) In paragraph 4(2), for “elected or nominated” (in each place) substitute “ appointed ”.
- (8) In paragraph 4(3), for the words from “Secretary of State” (in the first place) to the end substitute “ Legal Services Board. ”
- (9) In paragraph 4(4)—
- (a) for “Secretary of State” (in both places) substitute “ Legal Services Board ”,
- (b) for “him” substitute “ it ”, and
- (c) for “he” (in both places) substitute “ it ”.
- (10) In paragraph 9, for “election or nomination” substitute “ appointment ”.
- (11) In paragraph 10 for “Secretary of State” (in both places) substitute “ Lord Chancellor ”.
- (12) In paragraph 11(3) for “Secretary of State” substitute “ Lord Chancellor ”.
- 30 (1) Schedule 4 (the Discipline and Appeals Committee: supplementary provisions) is amended as follows.
- (2) In paragraph 1 (rules of procedure)—
- (a) omit sub-paragraphs (3) and (4), and
- (b) in sub-paragraph (5), for “paragraphs 2 and 3” substitute “ paragraph 2 ”.
- (3) Omit paragraph 3.

#### Commencement Information

**I126** Sch. 17 para. 30 wholly in force at 1.1.2010; Sch. 17 para. 30 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 17 para. 30(1)(2)(b)(3) in force at 31.3.2009 by [S.I. 2009/503](#), [art. 2\(c\)\(i\)](#); Sch. 17 para. 30 in force otherwise at 1.1.2010 by [S.I. 2009/3250](#), [art. 2\(f\)\(iii\)](#) (with [art. 9](#))

- 31 (1) Schedule 5 (intervention in licensed conveyancer's practice) is amended as follows.
- (2) In paragraph 1 (grounds for intervention)—

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) in sub-paragraph (1)(a) after “practice” insert “ or former practice or in connection with any trust of which that licensed conveyancer is or was a trustee ”,
  - (b) after that sub-paragraph insert—
    - “(aa) the Council has reason to suspect dishonesty on the part of a licensed conveyancer (“L”) in connection with—
      - (i) the business of any person of whom L is or was an employee, or of any body of which L is or was a manager, or
      - (ii) any business which is or was carried on by L as a sole trader;”
  - (c) in sub-paragraph (1)(b) after “practice” insert “ or in connection with any trust ”,
  - (d) in sub-paragraph (1)(c), after “section” insert “ 20, 21(3)(c), ”,
  - (e) after sub-paragraph (1)(e) insert—
    - “(ea) the Council is satisfied that a licensed conveyancer has abandoned his practice;
    - (eb) the Council is satisfied that a licensed conveyancer has been practising in breach of any conditions subject to which his licence has effect;”
  - (f) in sub-paragraph (1)(f), after “illness” insert “ , injury ”,
  - (g) for sub-paragraph (1)(g) substitute—
    - “(g) a licensed conveyancer lacks capacity (within the meaning of the Mental Capacity Act 2005) to act as a licensed conveyancer and powers under section 15 to 20 or section 48 of that Act are exercisable in relation to the licensed conveyancer;”
  - (h) after sub-paragraph (1)(h) insert—
    - “(i) the Council is satisfied that it is necessary to exercise the powers conferred by Part 2 of this Schedule (or any of them) in relation to a licensed conveyancer to protect—
      - (i) the interests of clients (or former or potential clients) of the licensed conveyancer or his firm, or
      - (ii) the interests of the beneficiaries of any trust of which the licensed conveyancer is or was a trustee.” and
  - (i) omit sub-paragraph (2).
- (3) In paragraph 3 (intervention following an undue delay)—
- (a) for “10(3)” substitute “ 10(9) ”,
  - (b) in paragraph (a) for “a complaint is made to the Council” substitute “ the Council is satisfied ”,
  - (c) in that paragraph for “was instructed” substitute “ is or was acting ”, and
  - (d) in that paragraph after “client” insert “ or in connection with any trust ”.
- (4) In paragraph 4(2) (continuation of powers after death etc of licensed conveyancer)—
- (a) after “and (3)” insert “ , 6A ”,
  - (b) for “and (5)” substitute “ , (5) and (6) ”, and
  - (c) for “10(1)” substitute “ 10(2) and (7) ”.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5) In paragraph 6 (vesting of sums in Council)—
- (a) in sub-paragraph (1) after “thereto” insert “ and to rules under paragraph 6B ”, and
  - (b) in sub-paragraph (2)(a) after “practice” insert “ or former practice or with any trust of which he is or was a trustee ”.
- (6) After paragraph 6 insert—
- “6A (1) Without prejudice to paragraph 5, if the Council passes a resolution to the effect that any rights to which this paragraph applies shall vest in the Council, those rights shall vest accordingly.
- (2) This paragraph applies to any right to recover or receive debts due to the licensed conveyancer or his firm in connection with his practice or former practice.
- (3) Any sums recovered by the Council by virtue of the exercise of rights vested under sub-paragraph (1) shall vest in the Council and shall be held by it on trust to exercise in relation to them the powers conferred by this Part of this Schedule and, subject to those powers and to rules under paragraph 6B, upon trust for the persons beneficially entitled to them.
- (4) The Council shall serve on the licensed conveyancer or his firm, and any person who owes a debt to which the order applies a certified copy of the Council's resolution.
- 6B (1) The Council may make rules governing its treatment of sums vested in it under paragraph 6 or 6A(3).
- (2) The rules may, in particular, make provision in respect of cases where the Council, having taken such steps to do so as are reasonable in all the circumstances of the case, is unable to trace the person or persons beneficially entitled to any sum vested in the Council under paragraph 6 or 6A(3) (including provision which requires amounts to be paid into or out of a fund maintained under section 21).”
- (7) In paragraph 7(1) (holding of sums vested in Council) after “thereto” insert “ and to rules under paragraph 6B ”.
- (8) In paragraph 8 for “holds money” to the end substitute—
- “(a) holds money on behalf of the licensed conveyancer or his firm, or
  - (b) has information which is relevant to identifying any money held by or on behalf of the licensed conveyancer or his firm,
- the court may require that person to give the Council information as to any such money and the accounts in which it is held. ”
- (9) In paragraph 9 (documents)—
- (a) in sub-paragraph (1)(a)—
    - (i) after “possession” insert “ or under the control ”, and
    - (ii) after “practice” insert “ or former practice or with any trust of which the licensed conveyancer is or was a trustee ”,
  - (b) in sub-paragraph (1)(b)—
    - (i) after “possession” insert “ or under the control ”, and

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (ii) for “to which the complaint relates” substitute “ of which the Council is satisfied ”,
  - (c) in sub-paragraph (3) after “possession” insert “ or control ”,
  - (d) in sub-paragraph (5) after “possession” insert “ or are under the control ”,
  - (e) after that sub-paragraph insert—
    - “(5A) In the case of a document which consists of information which is stored in electronic form, the requirement imposed by a notice under sub-paragraph (1) or an order under sub-paragraph (4) or (5), is a requirement to produce or deliver the information in a form in which it is legible or from which it can readily be produced in a legible form.”,
  - (f) in sub-paragraph (6) after “possession of” insert “ (a) ”,
  - (g) at the end of that sub-paragraph insert—
    - “(b) any property—
      - (i) in the possession or under the control of the licensed conveyancer or his firm, or
      - (ii) in the case of an order under sub-paragraph (5), which was in the possession or under the control of such a person and has come into the possession or under the control of the person in respect of whom the order is made,which the Council reasonably requires for the purpose of accessing information contained in such documents,
  - and to use property obtained under paragraph (b) for that purpose. ”,
  - (h) in sub-paragraph (7) after “documents” insert “ or other property ”,
  - (i) in sub-paragraph (8) after “documents” insert “ or other property ”, and
  - (j) in sub-paragraph (10) after “documents” insert “ or other property ”.
- (10) For paragraph 10 (mail) substitute—

*“Redirection of communications*

- 10 (1) The High Court, on the application of the Council, may from time to time make a communications redirection order.
- (2) A communications redirection order is an order that specified communications to the licensed conveyancer or his firm are to be directed, in accordance with the order, to the Council, or any person appointed by the Council.
- (3) For the purposes of this paragraph—
- (a) “specified communications” means communications of such description as are specified in the order;
  - (b) the descriptions of communications which may be so specified include—
    - (i) communications in the form of a postal packet;
    - (ii) electronic communications;
    - (iii) communications by telephone.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (4) A communications redirection order has effect for such time not exceeding 18 months as is specified in the order.
- (5) Where a communications redirection order has effect, the Council or the person appointed by the Council may take possession or receipt of the communications redirected in accordance with the order.
- (6) Where a communications redirection order is made the Council must pay to—
- (a) in the case of an order relating to postal packets, the postal operator concerned, and
  - (b) in any other case, the person specified in the order,
- the like charges (if any) as would have been payable for the redirection of the communications to which the order relates if the addressee had permanently ceased to occupy or use the premises or other destination of the communications and had applied to the postal operator or the specified person (as the case may be) to redirect the communications to him as mentioned in the order.
- (7) The High Court may, on the application of the Council, authorise the Council, or a person appointed by it, to take such steps as may be specified in the order in relation to any website purporting to be or have been maintained by or on behalf of the licensed conveyancer or his firm if the High Court is satisfied that the taking of those steps is necessary to protect the public interest or the interests of clients (or potential or former clients) of the licensed conveyancer or his firm.
- (8) In this paragraph “postal operator” and “postal packet” have the meaning given by section 125(1) of the Postal Services Act 2000.
- (9) This paragraph does not apply where the powers conferred by this Part of this Schedule are exercisable by virtue of paragraph 3.”
- (11) After paragraph 10 insert—

*“Trusts*

- 10A(1) If the licensed conveyancer or his personal representative is a trustee of a trust, the Council may apply to the High Court for an order for the appointment of a new trustee in substitution for him.
- (2) The Trustee Act 1925 has effect in relation to an appointment of a new trustee under this paragraph as it has effect in relation to an appointment under section 41 of that Act.”
- (12) In paragraph 11 (liens) for “and documents” substitute “ , documents and other property ”.
- (13) After paragraph 12 (costs) insert—
- “12A(1) The High Court, on the application of the Council, may order a former partner of the licensed conveyancer to pay a specified proportion of the costs mentioned in paragraph 12.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) The High Court may make an order under this paragraph only if it is satisfied that the conduct (or any part of the conduct) by reason of which the powers conferred by this Part were exercisable in relation to the licensed conveyancer was conduct carried on with the consent or connivance of, or was attributable to any neglect on the part of, the former partner.
- (3) In this paragraph “specified” means specified in the order made by the High Court.”

#### Commencement Information

**I127** Sch. 17 para. 31 wholly in force at 31.3.2009 see s. 211 and [S.I. 2009/503, art. 2\(c\)\(i\)](#) (subject to [art. 4](#))

- 32 (1) Schedule 6 (bodies recognised under section 32: supplementary provisions) is amended as follows.
  - (2) In paragraph 1—
    - (a) omit “corporate” (in both places), and
    - (b) in sub-paragraph (2) omit—
      - (i) “or complaint” (in both places), and
      - (ii) “or (b)”.
  - (3) In paragraph 2 (disciplinary control of recognised bodies) after “24” insert “, 24A ”.
  - (4) In paragraph 3—
    - (a) in sub-paragraph (1), in paragraph (a)(i) omit “by any court in the United Kingdom”,
    - (b) after paragraph (a) of that sub-paragraph insert—
      - “(aa) it is alleged that a manager or employee of a recognised body who is not a licensed conveyancer has failed to comply with any rules applicable to him by virtue of section 32;
      - (ab) it is alleged that a recognised body (while a recognised body) has failed to comply with a condition subject to which its recognition has effect.”,
    - (c) in that sub-paragraph omit—
      - (i) paragraph (b), and
      - (ii) from “with a view” to the end, and
    - (d) after sub-paragraph (1) insert—
      - “(1A) After making such an investigation, the Investigating Committee may—
        - (a) hear and determine the allegation, or
        - (b) refer the allegation to the Discipline and Appeals Committee for hearing and determination by that Committee under paragraph 4.
      - (1B) The Council shall make rules as to the cases in which the Investigating Committee may hear and determine an allegation, and the cases in which they must refer an allegation to the Discipline and Appeals Committee.”
  - (5) After paragraph 3 insert—

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- “3A (1) Where, on hearing an allegation by virtue of paragraph 3(1A)(a), the Investigating Committee are satisfied—
- (a) in a case within paragraph 3(1)(a), that a recognised body has failed to comply with any such rules as are mentioned in sub-paragraph (ii) of that paragraph, or
  - (b) in a case within paragraph 3(1)(aa), that a manager or employee has failed to comply with any such rules as are mentioned in that paragraph, or
  - (c) in a case within paragraph 3(1)(ab), that a recognised body has failed to comply with any condition mentioned in that paragraph,
- the Committee may make an order directing the payment by the recognised body, manager or employee of a penalty to be forfeited to Her Majesty.
- (2) In relation to proceedings before the Investigating Committee by virtue of paragraph 3(1A)(a), the Committee may make such order as they consider fit as to the payment of costs by—
- (a) the Council;
  - (b) the recognised body, manager or employee against whom the proceedings were brought;
  - (c) if the person on whose allegation the proceedings were brought was heard (in person, or through a representative) by the Committee in the course of the proceedings, that person.
- (3) In sub-paragraph (2), for the purposes of paragraph (a) or (b) of that sub-paragraph, the reference to costs includes costs incurred in connection with a preliminary investigation of the allegation under paragraph 3.
- (4) The amount of any penalty required to be paid under sub-paragraph (1) may not exceed such amount as is prescribed by rules made by the Council for the purposes of this sub-paragraph.
- (5) Paragraphs 1, 2(1) and (3) and 4 of Schedule 4 have effect in relation to—
- (a) proceedings for the hearing and determination of an allegation by the Investigating Committee, as they have effect in relation to proceedings before the Discipline and Appeals Committee under section 26, and
  - (b) orders of the Investigating Committee, as they have effect in relation to orders of the Discipline and Appeals Committee.
- (6) A person against whom an order is made by the Investigating Committee by virtue of sub-paragraph (1) may appeal to the Discipline and Appeals Committee, and on any such appeal the Discipline and Appeals Committee may make such order as they think fit.
- (7) If an order is made by the Investigating Committee by virtue of sub-paragraph (2), a person listed in paragraphs (a) to (c) of that sub-paragraph may appeal to the Discipline and Appeals Committee, and on any such appeal the Discipline and Appeals Committee may make such order as they think fit.
- (8) Where an order is made by the Discipline and Appeals Committee under sub-paragraph (6) or (7)—
- (a) a party to the appeal, or



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) if not within paragraph (a), the Council, may appeal against the order to the High Court.
- (9) On an appeal under sub-paragraph (8) the High Court may make such order as it thinks fit.
- (10) The decision of the High Court on an appeal under sub-paragraph (8) shall be final.”
- (6) In paragraph 4—
  - (a) in sub-paragraph (1) after “allegation” insert “ within paragraph 3(1)(a) or (ab) ”,
  - (b) in that sub-paragraph, after paragraph (b) insert “, or
    - (c) has failed to comply with any such condition as is mentioned in paragraph 3(1)(ab),”
  - (c) in sub-paragraph (2), in paragraph (b), for “£3,000” substitute “ such amount as may be prescribed by rules made by the Council for the purposes of this sub-paragraph ”,
  - (d) after paragraph (b) of that sub-paragraph insert—
    - “(ba) an order reprimanding that body;
    - (bb) an order that the recognition of that body under section 32 is to have effect subject to such conditions as may be specified in the order;”
  - (e) omit paragraph (c) of that sub-paragraph,
  - (f) after that sub-paragraph insert—
    - “(2A) Where on the hearing of any allegation within paragraph 3(1)(aa) the Discipline and Appeals Committee are satisfied that a manager or employee has failed to comply with any such rules as are mentioned in sub-paragraph (ii) of that paragraph, the Committee may, if they think fit, make one or more of the orders referred to in sub-paragraph (2B).
    - (2B) Those orders are—
      - (a) an order directing the payment by the manager or employee of a penalty not exceeding such amount as may be prescribed by rules made by the Council for the purposes of this sub-paragraph;
      - (b) an order requiring the Council to consider taking such steps as the Committee may specify in relation to the manager or employee;
      - (c) an order requiring the Council to refer to an appropriate regulator any matter relating to the conduct of the manager or employee.
    - (2C) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (2B)(c) an “appropriate regulator” in relation to a manager or employee means—
      - (a) if the person is an authorised person in relation to a reserved legal activity for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, any relevant approved regulator (within the meaning of that Act) in relation to that person, and

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) if the person carries on activities which are not reserved legal activities, any person who exercises regulatory functions in relation to the carrying on of such activities by the person.

(2D) In relation to proceedings under this paragraph, the Committee may make such order as they consider fit as to the payment of costs by—

- (a) the Council;
- (b) the recognised body or manager or employee against whom the proceedings were brought;
- (c) if the person on whose allegation the proceedings were brought was heard (in person, or through a representative) by the Committee in the course of the proceedings, that person.

(2E) In sub-paragraph (2D), for the purposes of paragraph (a) or (b) of that sub-paragraph, the reference to costs includes costs incurred in connection with a preliminary investigation of the allegation under paragraph 3.”, and

- (g) omit sub-paragraphs (3), (3A) and (4).

(7) In paragraph 5—

- (a) in sub-paragraph (1)—
  - (i) after “26” insert “ or paragraph 4 ”, and
  - (ii) for “director” (in each place) substitute “ manager ”,
- (b) in sub-paragraph (3) for “director” (in both places) substitute “ manager ”, and
- (c) after sub-paragraph (3) insert—

“(4) In relation to proceedings for the revocation of a recognition under sub-paragraph (1), the Discipline and Appeals Committee may make such order as they consider fit as to the payment of costs by—

- (a) the Council;
- (b) the body to whose recognition the proceedings relate.”.

(8) In paragraph 6 (appeals against orders of the Committee)—

- (a) in sub-paragraph (1)—
  - (i) for “body corporate” substitute “ person ”,
  - (ii) after “4(1)” insert “ or (2A) ”, and
  - (iii) for “5” substitute “ 5(1) ”, and
- (b) after that sub-paragraph insert—

“(1A) Where an order is made by the Committee under paragraph 4(2D) or 5(4) a person listed in that paragraph may appeal to the High Court, and on any such appeal the High Court may make such order as it thinks fit.”

(9) After paragraph 7 (revocation of recognition on grounds of fraud or error)—

- (a) in sub-paragraph (1) and (2) omit “corporate”, and
- (b) after sub-paragraph (2) insert—

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- “(3) In relation to proceedings for the revocation of a recognition under sub-paragraph (1), the Discipline and Appeals Committee may make such order as they consider fit as to the payment of costs by—
- (a) the Council;
  - (b) the body to whose recognition the proceedings relate.
- (4) In relation to proceedings on an application under sub-paragraph (2), the Discipline and Appeals Committee may make such order as they consider fit as to the payment of costs by—
- (a) the Council;
  - (b) the applicant.”
- (10) In paragraph 8 (appeal against decision of Council in relation to grant of recognition)
- (a) in sub-paragraph (1) omit “corporate”,
  - (b) in paragraph (b) of that sub-paragraph for “restrictions” substitute “conditions”,
  - (c) after that paragraph insert “, or
    - (c) decides to give a direction in relation to that body under section 32(3B), or
    - (d) refuses an application by that body under section 32(3D),”,
  - (d) in sub-paragraph (2) for “this paragraph” substitute “ sub-paragraph (1)(a) or (b) ”,
  - (e) in paragraph (a) of that sub-paragraph—
    - (i) for “restrictions” (in the first place) substitute “ conditions ”, and
    - (ii) for “restrictions falling within subsection (3)(d) of that section” substitute “ conditions ”, and
  - (f) after that sub-paragraph insert—
- “(2A) On an appeal under sub-paragraph (1)(c), the Discipline and Appeals Committee may—
- (a) revoke the direction of the Council under section 32(3B),
  - (b) direct that the body's recognition is to have effect subject to such conditions as may be specified by the Council in the direction, or
  - (c) affirm the decision of the Council,
- and the Committee may make such order as to the payment of costs by the Council or by that body as they think fit.
- (2B) On an appeal under sub-paragraph (1)(d), the Discipline and Appeals Committee may—
- (a) direct the Council to grant the application, or
  - (b) affirm the decision of the Council,
- and the Committee may make such order as to the payment of costs by the Council or by that body as they think fit.”
- (11) In paragraph 9 (rules of procedure etc) in sub-paragraph (1)—
- (a) for “, 2 and 3” substitute “ and 2 ”, and
  - (b) for “paragraph 4 or 5” substitute “ paragraph 3A, 4 or 5 ”.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (12) In paragraph 10 (intervention by Council)—
- (a) in sub-paragraph (1), in paragraph (a) after “recognised body” insert “ or a manager of such a body ”,
  - (b) after that paragraph insert—
    - “(aa) the Council is satisfied that a recognised body has been carrying on business in breach of any condition subject to which the body's recognition under section 32 of this Act has effect; or”,
  - (c) for paragraph (c) of that sub-paragraph substitute—
    - “(c) a relevant insolvency event occurs in relation to a recognised body; or”,
  - (d) in paragraph (d) of that sub-paragraph for “officer” substitute “ manager ”,
  - (e) in that paragraph for “that body's” to the end of the paragraph substitute—
    - “(i) that body's business,
    - (ii) any trust of which that body is or was a trustee,
    - (iii) any trust of which the manager or employee is or was a trustee in his capacity as such a manager or employee, or
    - (iv) the business of another body in which the manager or employee is or was a manager or employee or the practice (or former practice) of the manager or employee;”,
  - (f) after that paragraph insert “or
    - (e) the Council is satisfied that it is necessary to exercise the powers conferred by Part 2 of Schedule 5 (or any of them) in relation to a recognised body to protect—
      - (i) the interests of clients (or former or potential clients) of the recognised body,
      - (ii) the interests of the beneficiaries of any trust of which the recognised body is or was a trustee, or
      - (iii) the interests of the beneficiaries of any trust of which a person who is or was a manager or employee of the recognised body is or was a trustee in that person's capacity as such a manager or employee;”,
  - (g) after sub-paragraph (1) insert—
    - “(1A) For the purposes of this paragraph a relevant insolvency event occurs in relation to a recognised body if—
      - (a) a resolution for a voluntary winding-up of the body is passed without a declaration of solvency under section 89 of the Insolvency Act 1986;
      - (b) the body enters administration within the meaning of paragraph 1(2)(b) of Schedule B1 to that Act;
      - (c) an administrative receiver within the meaning of section 251 of that Act is appointed;
      - (d) a meeting of creditors is held in relation to the body under section 95 of that Act (creditors' meeting which has the

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- effect of converting a members' voluntary winding up into a creditors' voluntary winding up);
- (e) an order for the winding up of the body is made.”, and
- (h) omit sub-paragraph (2).
- (13) For paragraph 11(a) substitute—
- “ (a) the Council is satisfied that there has been undue delay on the part of—
- (i) a recognised body in connection with any matter in which it is or was acting on behalf of a client or with any trust of which it is or was a trustee, or
- (ii) a person who is or was a manager or employee of a recognised body in connection with any trust of which he is or was a trustee in his capacity as such a manager or employee; and”.
- (14) In paragraph 12(1) omit “corporate” (in both places).
- (15) In paragraph 13—
- (a) in paragraph (a) omit “corporate”, and
- (b) omit “and” at the end of paragraph (b) and after paragraph (c) insert—
- “ (d) paragraph 6(2)(a) of that Schedule is to be construed as including a reference to sums of money held by or on behalf of the recognised body in connection with any trust of which a person who is or was manager or employee of that body is or was a trustee in his capacity as such a manager or employee;
- (e) paragraph 9 of that Schedule is to be construed—
- (i) as if sub-paragraph (1) included a reference to documents in the possession or under the control of the recognised body in connection with any trust of which a person who is or was a manager or employee of that body is or was a trustee in his capacity as such a manager or employee, and
- (ii) as applying to a person who is or was a manager or employee of the recognised body and documents and property in his possession or under his control in connection with such a trust as it applies to a recognised body and documents and property in the possession or under the control of that body;
- (f) paragraph 10A(1) of that Schedule is to be construed as including power for the Council to apply to the High Court for an order for the appointment of a new trustee to a trust in substitution for a person who is a trustee in his capacity as a manager or employee of the recognised body; and
- (g) paragraph 12A of that Schedule is to be read as if the references to a former partner were references—
- (i) in the case of a recognised body which is a partnership, to a former partner in the partnership, and

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(ii) in any other case to a manager or former manager of the recognised body.”

(16) In paragraph 14 (examination of files)—

(a) for sub-paragraph (1) substitute—

“(1) Where the Investigating Committee are satisfied that it is necessary to do so for the purpose of investigating any such allegation as is mentioned in paragraph 3(1)(a)(ii), (aa) or (ab), the Committee may give an information notice to a relevant person.

(1A) An information notice is a notice requiring the production or delivery to any person appointed by the Committee, at a time and a place to be fixed by the Committee, of all documents in the possession or under the control of the relevant person in connection with the matters to which the allegation relates (whether or not they relate also to other matters).

(1B) In this section “relevant person” means—

- (a) in the case of an allegation against a recognised body, the recognised body or any of its managers or employees, and
- (b) in the case of an allegation against a manager or employee of a recognised body, the manager or employee, the recognised body or any other manager or employee of the recognised body.”, and

(b) in sub-paragraph (2)—

- (i) for “and 12” substitute “ to 12A ”,
- (ii) for “sub-paragraph (1) of this paragraph” (except where it appears in paragraph (d)) substitute “ sub-paragraphs (1) and (1A) of this paragraph ”,
- (iii) in paragraph (b) after “body” insert “ , manager or employee ”, and
- (iv) in paragraph (d) for “sub-paragraph (1)” substitute “ sub-paragraph (1A) ”.

(17) Omit paragraph 15 (application of rules relating to accounts etc).

(18) In paragraph 16 (interest on client's money)—

(a) in sub-paragraph (1)—

- (i) after “recognised bodies” insert “ or managers or employees of such bodies, ”,
- (ii) after “recognised body” insert “ , manager or employee ”,
- (iii) for “it keeps” substitute “ it or he keeps ”,
- (iv) for “its clients” substitute “ clients of the recognised body ”, and
- (v) after “received by it” insert “ or him ”, and

(b) in sub-paragraph (2), for “and any of its clients” substitute “ , or any manager or employee of such a body, and any of the clients of the recognised body ”.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Commencement Information

**1128** Sch. 17 para. 32 partly in force; Sch. 17 para. 32 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 17 para. 32(1)-(6)(f) in force and Sch. 17 para. 32(6)(f) in force for certain purposes at 31.3.2009 by [S.I. 2009/503](#), [art. 2\(c\)\(i\)](#) (subject to [art. 4](#))

## PART 2

### COURTS AND LEGAL SERVICES ACT 1990 (C. 41)

- 33 The Courts and Legal Services Act 1990 is amended in accordance with this Part.
- 34 (1) Section 53 (the Council for Licensed Conveyancers) is amended as follows.
- (2) For subsections (1) to (3) substitute—
- “(1) The Council for Licensed Conveyancers has the powers necessary to enable it to become designated as an approved regulator in relation to one or more of the reserved legal activities within subsection (1A).
- (1A) The reserved legal activities to which this subsection applies are—
- (a) the exercise of a right of audience;
- (b) the conduct of litigation;
- (c) probate activities.
- (2) If the Council becomes an approved regulator in relation to one or more of those activities, it may, in that capacity, authorise a person to carry on a relevant activity only if the person is a licensed conveyancer.
- (3) Where the Council authorises a licensed conveyancer to carry on a relevant activity, it is to do so by issuing a licence to the licensed conveyancer.”
- (3) Omit subsection (5).
- (4) For subsection (6) substitute—
- “(6) Where the Council exercises any of its powers in connection with—
- (a) an application for designation as an approved regulator in relation to a reserved legal activity within subsection (1A), or
- (b) the authorising of a person to carry on a relevant activity,
- it is to do so subject to any requirements to which it is subject in accordance with the provisions of the Legal Services Act 2007.”
- (5) In subsection (8), for “Secretary of State” substitute “ Lord Chancellor ”.
- (6) In subsection (9)—
- (a) for “Secretary of State” substitute “ Lord Chancellor ”, and
- (b) omit paragraph (e).
- (7) After that subsection insert—
- “(10) For the purposes of this section—

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) “right of audience”, “conduct of litigation”, “probate activities” and “reserved legal activity” have the same meaning as in the Legal Services Act 2007;
- (b) references to designation as an approved regulator are to designation as an approved regulator—
  - (i) by Part 1 of Schedule 4 to the Legal Services Act 2007, by virtue of an order under paragraph 5 of Schedule 22 to that Act, or
  - (ii) under Part 2 of Schedule 4 to that Act;
- (c) “relevant activity” means an activity which is a reserved legal activity—
  - (i) which is within subsection (1A), and
  - (ii) in relation to which the Council is designated as an approved regulator by Part 1 of Schedule 4 to that Act (by virtue of an order under paragraph 5 of Schedule 22 to that Act) or under Part 2 of that Schedule.”

#### Commencement Information

**I129** Sch. 17 para. 34 wholly in force at 1.1.2010; Sch. 17 para. 34 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 17 para. 34(1)(5)(6) in force at 31.3.2009 by S.I. 2009/503, art. 2(c)(ii); Sch. 17 para. 34 in force otherwise at 1.1.2010 by S.I. 2009/3250, art. 2(f)(iii) (with art. 9)

- 35 (1) Schedule 8 (licensed conveyancers) is amended as follows.
- (2) In paragraph 1 (definitions)—
- (a) in the definition of “advocacy licence” for “and constituting” to the end substitute “ by which the Council authorises the licensed conveyancer concerned to exercise a right of audience; ”,
  - (b) in the definition of “litigation licence” for “and constituting” to the end substitute “ by which the Council authorises the licensed conveyancer concerned to carry on activities which constitute the conduct of litigation; ”,
  - (c) in the definition of “probate licence” for “and constituting” to the end substitute “ by which the Council authorises the licensed conveyancer concerned to carry on activities which constitute probate activities; ”, and
  - (d) at the end insert—
 

““reserved legal activity” has the same meaning as in the Legal Services Act 2007 (see section 12 of and Schedule 2 to that Act).”
- (3) In paragraph 2 (qualification regulations and rules of conduct), in sub-paragraph (1) —
- (a) for “rules of conduct” substitute “ conduct rules ”, and
  - (b) for “granting of the rights or exemption” substitute “ carrying on of the reserved legal activities ”.
- (4) In paragraph 4 (issue of licences), in sub-paragraph (1)—
- (a) in paragraph (a) for “rules of conduct” substitute “ conduct rules ”, and
  - (b) in paragraph (c) for “provide the advocacy, litigation or probate services” substitute “ carry on the reserved legal activities ”.
- (5) In paragraph 5 (conditional licences)—



*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) for sub-paragraph (1)(d) substitute—
  - “(d) after the Investigating Committee have made any order in his case under section 24A(1) of the Act of 1985 or the Discipline and Appeals Committee have made any order in his case under section 26(1) of that Act.”,
- (b) in sub-paragraph (6)—
  - (i) in paragraph (a) for “service that may be provided” substitute “activities that may be carried on”, and
  - (ii) in paragraph (b) for “provides the additional services” substitute “carries on the additional activities”, and
- (c) after sub-paragraph (7) insert—
  - “(8) Where a person applies for an advocacy, litigation or probate licence at a time when this paragraph has effect in relation to that person by reason of the circumstances mentioned in section 16(1)(ea) of the Act of 1985, section 16A(2) of that Act has effect as it has effect in relation to an application for a licence under Part 2 of that Act.”
- (6) Omit paragraph 7 (code of conduct).
- (7) In paragraph 9 (removal of disqualification from holding a licence) after sub-paragraph (2) insert—
  - “(3) In relation to proceedings on an application under sub-paragraph (1), the Discipline and Appeals Committee may make such order as they consider fit as to the payment of costs by—
    - (a) the Council;
    - (b) the applicant.”
- (8) In paragraph 10 (revocation on grounds of error or fraud), after sub-paragraph (4) insert—
  - “(5) In relation to proceedings for the revocation of a licence under sub-paragraph (1), the Discipline and Appeals Committee may make such order as they consider fit as to the payment of costs by—
    - (a) the Council;
    - (b) the licensed conveyancer to whose licence the proceedings relate.
  - (6) In relation to proceedings on an application under sub-paragraph (2), the Discipline and Appeals Committee may make such order as they consider fit as to the payment of costs by—
    - (a) the Council;
    - (b) the applicant.”
- (9) Omit paragraph 11.
- (10) In paragraph 12 (delegation of powers etc)—
  - (a) in sub-paragraph (1) for “Subject” to “enactment, the” substitute “The”,
  - (b) in that sub-paragraph, for paragraph (b) substitute—
    - “(b) by a sub-committee of such a committee; or
    - (c) by an individual (whether or not a member of the Council's staff).”,
  - (c) after that sub-paragraph insert—

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- “(1A) Where by virtue of sub-paragraph (1) any function may be discharged by a committee, the committee may arrange for the discharge of that function by—
- (a) a sub-committee of that committee; or
  - (b) an individual, whether or not a member of the Council's staff.
- (1B) Sub-paragraph (1A) is subject to any contrary direction given by the Council.
- (1C) Arrangements made under sub-paragraph (1) or (1A) in respect of a function may provide that the function is to be exercised in accordance with the arrangements only (and not by the delegating body).
- (1D) For this purpose “the delegating body” means—
- (a) in the case of arrangements under sub-paragraph (1), the Council, and
  - (b) in the case of arrangements under sub-paragraph (1A), the committee.”,
- (d) for sub-paragraph (3) substitute—
- “(3) Any power conferred by sub-paragraph (1), (1A) or (2) may be exercised so as to impose restrictions or conditions on the body or individual by whom the function is to be discharged.”,
- (e) for sub-paragraphs (6) and (7) substitute—
- “(6) A committee or sub-committee established under this paragraph may include or consist of individuals other than—
- (a) members of the Council;
  - (b) licensed conveyancers.
- (7) A sub-committee of a committee established under this paragraph may also include or consist of individuals other than members of the committee.
- (7A) The Council may make arrangements for the appointment and removal of members of any committee to be made other than by the Council.
- (7B) A committee or sub-committee may regulate its own procedure, including quorum.”, and
- (f) after sub-paragraph (9) insert—
- “(10) This paragraph is subject to any provision to the contrary made by or under any enactment.”
- (11) Omit paragraph 13 (Council's intervention powers).

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Commencement Information

**I130** Sch. 17 para. 35 wholly in force at 1.1.2010; Sch. 17 para. 35 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 17 para. 35(1)(5)(7)-(11) in force at 31.3.2009 by S.I. 2009/503, art. 2(c)(ii); Sch. 17 para. 35(2)-(4)(6) in force at 1.1.2010 by S.I. 2009/3250, art. 2(f)(iii) (with art. 9)

VALID FROM 01/04/2011

## SCHEDULE 18

Section 186

### IMMIGRATION ADVICE AND IMMIGRATION SERVICES

#### PART 1

#### QUALIFYING REGULATORS

##### *Designation orders*

- 1 In this Part of this Schedule “designation order” means an order made under section 86A(6) of the Immigration and Asylum Act 1999 (c. 33) (designated qualifying regulators entitled to authorise persons to provide immigration advice and immigration services).

##### *Continuity of existing rights*

- 2 Each of the following bodies is a qualifying regulator for the purposes of Part 5 of the Immigration and Asylum Act 1999—
- (a) the Law Society;
  - (b) the Institute of Legal Executives;
  - (c) the General Council of the Bar.

##### *Application to become a qualifying regulator*

- 3 (1) This paragraph applies where a body wishes to become a qualifying regulator for the purposes of Part 5 of the Immigration and Asylum Act 1999.
- (2) A body may apply to the Board for the Board—
- (a) to designate the body as a qualifying regulator for those purposes, and
  - (b) to approve what the applicant proposes as its regulatory arrangements if a designation order is made (“the proposed regulatory arrangements”).
- (3) But a body may make an application under this paragraph only if—
- (a) it is an approved regulator (other than the Board), or
  - (b) it has made an application under Part 2 of Schedule 4 (designation of approved regulators).

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (4) An application under this paragraph must be made in such form and manner as the Board may specify in rules and must be accompanied by—
  - (a) details of the applicant's proposed regulatory arrangements,
  - (b) such explanatory material as the applicant considers is likely to be needed for the purposes of this Part of this Schedule, and
  - (c) the prescribed fee.
- (5) The prescribed fee is the fee prescribed in, or determined in accordance with, rules made by the Board with the consent of the Lord Chancellor.
- (6) An applicant may, at any time, withdraw the application by giving notice to that effect to the Board.

*Consultation and representations*

- 4 Paragraphs 4 to 12 of Schedule 4 (consultation requirements etc in relation to applications for designation as approved regulator) apply in relation to an application under paragraph 3 as they apply in relation to an application under paragraph 3 of that Schedule, but as if—
- (a) in paragraphs 6(2), 7(2), and 9(3) of that Schedule the references to making an order under paragraph 17 in accordance with the recommendation were references to making a designation order in respect of the applicant, and
  - (b) in paragraph 6(2) of that Schedule the reference to the market for reserved legal services were a reference to the market for immigration advice and immigration services.

*Determination of application*

- 5 (1) The Board must make rules specifying how it will determine applications under paragraph 3.
- (2) Rules under sub-paragraph (1) must, in particular, provide that the Board may grant an application only if it is satisfied—
- (a) that, if a designation order were to be made in relation to the applicant, the applicant would have appropriate internal governance arrangements in place at the time the order takes effect,
  - (b) that, if such an order were made, the applicant would be competent to perform the role of designated qualifying regulator (within the meaning of section 86A of the Immigration and Asylum Act 1999 (c. 33)) at that time,
  - (c) that the arrangements made by the applicant for authorising persons to provide immigration advice or immigration services provide that persons may not be so authorised unless they are persons who are also authorised by the applicant to carry on activities which are reserved legal activities,
  - (d) that the applicant's proposed regulatory arrangements make appropriate provision, and
  - (e) that the applicant's proposed regulatory arrangements comply with the requirements imposed by sections 112 and 145 (requirements imposed in relation to the handling of complaints).
- (3) The rules made for the purposes of sub-paragraph (2)(a) must in particular require the Board to be satisfied—

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) that the exercise of the applicant's regulatory functions would not be prejudiced by any of its representative functions, and
    - (b) that decisions relating to the exercise of its regulatory functions would so far as reasonably practicable be taken independently from decisions relating to the exercise of its representative functions.
  - (4) In subsection (2)(c) the reference to persons who are also authorised by the applicant to carry on activities which are reserved legal activities includes, in relation to any application by the Law Society, registered foreign lawyers (within the meaning of section 89 of the Courts and Legal Services Act 1990).
- 6 (1) After considering—
  - (a) the application and accompanying material,
  - (b) any other information provided by the applicant,
  - (c) any advice duly given and representations duly made by virtue of paragraph 4, and
  - (d) any other information which the Board considers relevant to the application,the Board must decide whether to grant the application.
- (2) The Board must give notice of its decision to the applicant (“the decision notice”).
- (3) Where the Board decides to refuse the application, the decision notice must specify the reasons for that decision.
- (4) The Board must publish the decision notice.
- (5) Paragraph 15 of Schedule 4 (period within which decision must be made) applies in relation to a decision notice under this paragraph as it applies in relation to a decision notice under paragraph 14 of that Schedule.

*Effect of application*

- 7 (1) Where an application is granted under paragraph 6, the decision notice must specify that the applicant is a qualifying regulator for the purposes of Part 5 of the Immigration and Asylum Act 1999 (c. 33).
- (2) Where an application is granted under paragraph 6, the proposed regulatory arrangements are at the same time treated as having been approved by the Board.
- (3) But if the application was made in reliance upon paragraph 3(3)(b), the applicant's status as such a qualifying regulator and the approval of its proposed regulatory arrangements under sub-paragraph (2) are conditional upon the Lord Chancellor making an order under Part 2 of Schedule 4 designating the body as an approved regulator in relation to one or more reserved legal activities.

*Loss of qualifying regulator status*

- 8 (1) Where a qualifying regulator—
  - (a) ceases to be an approved regulator, or
  - (b) ceases to be a designated qualifying regulator within the meaning of section 86A of the Immigration and Asylum Act 1999 by virtue of an order under subsection (3) or (4) of that section,it also ceases to be a qualifying regulator.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(2) But sub-paragraph (1) is without prejudice to a body's ability to make a further application under paragraph 3.

(3) If a body in the list in paragraph 2 ceases to be a qualifying regulator by virtue of sub-paragraph (1), the Lord Chancellor must, by order, remove it from that list.

## PART 2

### AMENDMENTS OF THE IMMIGRATION AND ASYLUM ACT 1999 (C. 33)

9           The Immigration and Asylum Act 1999 is amended in accordance with this Part of this Schedule.

10           In section 82(1) (interpretation of Part 5), after the definition of “designated professional body” insert—

““designated qualifying regulator” has the meaning given by section 86A;”.

11           In section 83 (the Immigration Services Commissioner), after subsection (6) insert—

“(6A) The duties imposed on the Commissioner by subsections (3) and (5) apply in relation to persons within section 84(2)(ba) only to the extent that those duties have effect in relation to the Commissioner's functions under section 92 or 92A.”

12           (1) Section 84 (provision of immigration services) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (2)—

(a) after paragraph (b) insert—

“(ba) a person authorised to provide immigration advice or immigration services by a designated qualifying regulator;”, and

(b) in paragraph (c)(ii) after “(b)” insert “ or (ba) ”.

(3) After subsection (3) insert—

“(3A) A person's entitlement to provide immigration advice or immigration services by virtue of subsection (2)(ba)—

(a) is subject to any limitation on that person's authorisation imposed by the regulatory arrangements of the designated qualifying regulator in question, and

(b) does not extend to the provision of such advice or services by the person other than in England and Wales (regardless of whether the persons to whom they are provided are in England and Wales or elsewhere).

(3B) In subsection (3A) “regulatory arrangements” has the same meaning as in the Legal Services Act 2007 (see section 21 of that Act).”

13           (1) Section 86 (designated professional bodies) is amended as follows.

(2) Omit subsections (1)(a), (d) and (e) and (4)(b).

(3) In subsection (5)(a) omit “England and Wales or”.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (4) In subsection (6)—
- (a) omit paragraph (a), and
  - (b) in paragraph (b) for “it” substitute “ the order ”.
- (5) In subsection (8) after “that a body” insert “ (other than a body in England and Wales) ”.
- 14 After section 86 insert—
- “86A Designated qualifying regulators**
- (1) “Designated qualifying regulator” means a body which is a qualifying regulator and is listed in subsection (2).
  - (2) The listed bodies are—
    - (a) the Law Society;
    - (b) the Institute of Legal Executives;
    - (c) the General Council of the Bar.
  - (3) The Secretary of State may by order remove a body from the list in subsection (2) if the Secretary of State considers that the body has failed to provide effective regulation of relevant authorised persons in their provision of immigration advice or immigration services.
  - (4) If a designated qualifying regulator asks the Secretary of State to amend subsection (2) so as to remove its name, the Secretary of State may by order do so.
  - (5) Where, at a time when a body is listed in subsection (2), the body ceases to be a qualifying regulator by virtue of paragraph 8(1)(a) of Schedule 18 to the Legal Services Act 2007 (loss of approved regulator status), the Secretary of State must, by order, remove it from the list.
  - (6) If the Secretary of State considers that a body which—
    - (a) is a qualifying regulator,
    - (b) is not a designated qualifying regulator, and
    - (c) is capable of providing effective regulation of relevant authorised persons in their provision of immigration advice or immigration services,ought to be designated, the Secretary of State may, by order, amend the list in subsection (2) to include the name of that body.
  - (7) If the Secretary of State is proposing to act under subsection (3) or (6), the Secretary of State must, before doing so, consult the Commissioner.
  - (8) If the Secretary of State is proposing to act under subsection (3), the Secretary of State must, before doing so, also —
    - (a) notify the body concerned of the proposal and give it a reasonable period within which to make representations, and
    - (b) consider any representations duly made.
  - (9) An order under subsection (3) or (6) requires the approval of the Lord Chancellor.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (10) If the Legal Services Board considers that a designated qualifying regulator is failing to provide effective regulation of relevant authorised persons in their provision of immigration advice or immigration services, the Legal Services Board must make a report to this effect to—
- (a) the Secretary of State, and
  - (b) the Lord Chancellor.
- (11) In this section—
- “qualifying regulator” means a body which is a qualifying regulator for the purposes of this Part of this Act by virtue of Part 1 of Schedule 18 to the Legal Services Act 2007 (approved regulators approved by the Legal Services Board in relation to immigration matters);
- “relevant authorised persons”, in relation to a designated qualifying regulator, means persons who are authorised by the designated qualifying regulator to provide immigration advice or immigration services.”
- 15 (1) Section 90 (orders by disciplinary bodies) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (2), for paragraph (a) substitute—
- “(a) appearing to the Secretary of State to be established for the purpose of hearing disciplinary charges against—
- (i) members of a designated professional body, or
  - (ii) persons regulated by designated qualifying regulators; and”.

(3) In subsection (3) after “body” insert “ or designated qualifying regulator ”.

(4) In subsection (5)—

    - (a) after “means” insert “—
      - (a)”,
      - and    - (b) after “that body” insert “, or
      - (b) a person who is authorised by the designated qualifying regulator concerned to provide immigration advice or immigration services.”

16 In section 166(4) (orders requiring approval by Parliament), after paragraph (d) insert—

“(da) section 86A(3).”.

17 (1) Schedule 5 (the Immigration Services Commissioner) is amended as follows.

(2) In paragraph 3 (code of standards)—

    - (a) after sub-paragraph (3)(a) insert—

“(aa) a person who is authorised by a designated qualifying regulator to provide immigration advice or immigration services;”,

    - (b) in sub-paragraph (3)(b) after “paragraph (a)” insert “ or (aa) ”,
    - (c) after sub-paragraph (6)(a) insert—

“(aa) each of the designated qualifying regulators;”, and



*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(d) omit sub-paragraph (6)(b).

(3) In paragraph 4 (extension of scope of the code)—

- (a) omit sub-paragraph (2)(b),
- (b) in sub-paragraph (3)(a) omit “England and Wales or”, and
- (c) omit sub-paragraph (4)(a).

(4) In paragraph 5 (investigation of complaints)—

- (a) in sub-paragraph (3), for the words from “but” to the end substitute— “ but not if the complaint is excluded by sub-paragraph (3A). ”,
- (b) after that sub-paragraph insert—

“(3A) A complaint is excluded if—

- (a) it relates to a person who is excluded from the application of subsection (1) of section 84 by subsection (6) of that section, or
- (b) it relates to a person within section 84(2)(ba).”

PROSPECTIVE

### PART 3

#### TRANSITIONAL PROVISION

##### *The transitional period*

- 18 (1) In this Part of this Schedule references to “the transitional period” are to the period which—
- (a) begins with the day appointed for the coming into force of section 13 (entitlement to carry on reserved legal activities), and
  - (b) ends with the day appointed by the Lord Chancellor by order for the purposes of this paragraph.
- (2) Different days may be appointed under sub-paragraph (1)(b) for different purposes.
- (3) An order may be made under sub-paragraph (1)(b) only on the recommendation of the Board.

##### *Barristers etc*

- 19 (1) During the transitional period, every barrister is deemed to be authorised by the General Council of the Bar to provide immigration advice and immigration services.
- (2) That authority is exercisable in accordance with, and subject to, the regulatory arrangements of the General Council of the Bar.
- (3) A person is not authorised under sub-paragraph (1) unless the person has in force a certificate issued by the General Council of the Bar authorising the person to practise as a barrister.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- 20 (1) During the transitional period, every registered European lawyer registered with the Inns of Court and the General Council of the Bar is deemed to be authorised by the General Council of the Bar to provide immigration advice and immigration services if the registered European lawyer is entitled to provide immigration advice and immigration services under his home professional title by virtue of the European regulations.
- (2) That authority is exercisable in accordance with, and subject to, the regulatory arrangements of the General Council of the Bar (as they apply to the registered European lawyer by virtue of the European regulations).
- (3) In this paragraph—  
“European regulations” means the European Communities (Lawyer's Practice) Regulations 2000 (S.I. 2000/1119);  
“home professional title” and “registered European lawyer” have the same meaning as in the European regulations.
- Solicitors etc*
- 21 (1) During the transitional period, each of the following is deemed to be authorised by the Law Society to provide immigration advice and immigration services—  
(a) every qualified solicitor;  
(b) every registered foreign lawyer (within the meaning of section 89 of the Courts and Legal Services Act 1990 (c. 41));  
(c) every legal partnership (within the meaning of paragraph 7(4) of Schedule 5);  
(d) every body recognised under section 9 of the Administration of Justice Act 1985 (c. 61).
- (2) That authority is exercisable in accordance with, and subject to, the regulatory arrangements of the Law Society.
- (3) “Qualified solicitor” means a person who is qualified under section 1 of the Solicitors Act 1974 (c. 47) to act as a solicitor.
- 22 (1) During the transitional period, every registered European lawyer registered with the Law Society is deemed to be authorised by the Law Society to provide immigration advice and immigration services if the registered European lawyer is entitled to provide immigration advice and immigration services under his home professional title by virtue of the European regulations.
- (2) That authority is exercisable in accordance with, and subject to, the regulatory arrangements of the Law Society (as they apply to the registered European lawyer by virtue of the European regulations).
- (3) In this paragraph—  
“European regulations” means the European Communities (Lawyer's Practice) Regulations 2000 (S.I. 2000/1119);  
“home professional title” and “registered European lawyer” have the same meaning as in the European regulations.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

*Legal Executives*

- 23 (1) During the transitional period, a person who is authorised by the Institute of Legal Executives to practise as a member of the profession of legal executives is deemed to be authorised by that Institute to provide immigration advice and immigration services.
- (2) That authority is exercisable in accordance with and subject to the regulatory arrangements of the Institute of Legal Executives.
- (3) A person is not authorised under sub-paragraph (1) unless the person has in force a certificate issued by the Institute of Legal Executives authorising the person to practise as a legal executive.

SCHEDULE 19

Section 187

CLAIMS MANAGEMENT SERVICES

1 The Compensation Act 2006 (c. 29) is amended in accordance with this Schedule.

PROSPECTIVE

F12 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F12** Sch. 19 omitted (29.11.2018 for specified purposes, 1.4.2019 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Claims Management Activity\) Order 2018 \(S.I. 2018/1253\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3), **95(7)** (with arts. 106, 108)

PROSPECTIVE

F12 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F12** Sch. 19 omitted (29.11.2018 for specified purposes, 1.4.2019 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Claims Management Activity\) Order 2018 \(S.I. 2018/1253\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3), **95(7)** (with arts. 106, 108)

PROSPECTIVE

F12 .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

**F12** Sch. 19 omitted (29.11.2018 for specified purposes, 1.4.2019 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Claims Management Activity\) Order 2018 \(S.I. 2018/1253\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3), **95(7)** (with arts. 106, 108)

- 5 (1) Section 7 (enforcement: offence) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (2)(b)—
- (a) in sub-paragraph (i) for “51 weeks” substitute “ 12 months ”, and
- (b) in sub-paragraph (ii) for “level 5 on the standard scale” substitute “ the statutory maximum ”.
- (3) For subsection (3) substitute—
- “(3) In relation to an offence committed before the commencement of section 154(1) of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 the reference in subsection (2)(b)(i) to 12 months is to be read as a reference to 6 months.”
- 6 (1) Section 8 (enforcement: the Regulator) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (5)—
- (a) after “the Regulator” (in the second place) insert “—
- (a) ”, and
- (b) after “Part” insert “, and
- (b) to take possession of any written or electronic records found on the search for the purposes of subsection (6).”
- (3) After subsection (8) insert—
- “(9) The Secretary of State may not make regulations under subsection (8) unless—
- (a) they are made in accordance with a recommendation made by the Legal Services Board, or
- (b) the Secretary of State has consulted the Legal Services Board about the making of the regulations.”

### Commencement Information

**I131** Sch. 19 para. 6 partly in force; Sch. 19 para. 6 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 19 para. 6(1) (2) in force at 30.6.2008 by [S.I. 2008/1436](#), **art. 2(e)**

PROSPECTIVE

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F12** Sch. 19 omitted (29.11.2018 for specified purposes, 1.4.2019 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Claims Management Activity\) Order 2018 \(S.I. 2018/1253\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3), **95(7)** (with arts. 106, 108)

- 8 (1) Section 11 (pretending to be authorised etc) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (4)(b)—
- (a) in sub-paragraph (i) for “51 weeks” substitute “ 12 months ”, and
  - (b) in sub-paragraph (ii) for “level 5 on the standard scale” substitute “ the statutory maximum ”.
- (3) For subsection (6) substitute—
- “(6) In relation to an offence committed before the commencement of section 154(1) of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 the reference in subsection (4)(b)(i) to 12 months is to be read as a reference to 6 months.”

9 **F13** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F13** Sch. 19 para. 9 repealed (18.1.2010) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/22\)](#), arts. 1(1), 5(3), **Sch. 4 Pt. 1**

PROSPECTIVE

**F12** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F12** Sch. 19 omitted (29.11.2018 for specified purposes, 1.4.2019 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Claims Management Activity\) Order 2018 \(S.I. 2018/1253\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3), **95(7)** (with arts. 106, 108)

- 11 (1) The Schedule (claims management regulations) is amended as follows.
- (2) In paragraph 5(3)(a) for “, guidance or a code given or issued” substitute “ or guidance given ”.
- (3) In paragraph 7—
- (a) in paragraph (e) for “Secretary of State” substitute “ Legal Services Board ”,
  - (b) in paragraph (g)—
    - (i) for “Secretary of State” substitute “ Legal Services Board ”, and
    - (ii) after “Fund” insert “ after consultation with the Secretary of State ”.
- (4) In paragraph 8(2)(a)(ii) for “Secretary of State” substitute “ Legal Services Board ”.
- (5) In paragraph 9(2)(a)(ii) for “Secretary of State” substitute “ Legal Services Board ”.
- (6) In paragraph 14, in sub-paragraph (2) for “to enter” to the end substitute—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.

**Changes to legislation:** *Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- “(a) to enter and search premises on which a person conducts or is alleged to conduct regulated claims management business, for the purposes of—
- (i) investigating a complaint about the activities of an authorised person, or
  - (ii) assessing compliance with terms and conditions of an authorisation, and
- (b) to take possession of written or electronic records found on the search for the purposes of taking copies in accordance with regulations under sub-paragraph (3).”

#### Commencement Information

**I132** Sch. 19 para. 11 partly in force; Sch. 19 para. 11 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 19 para. 11(1)(6) in force at 30.6.2008 by [S.I. 2008/1436](#), [art. 2\(e\)](#)

## SCHEDULE 20

Section 195

### AMENDMENTS IN RELATION TO THE LEGAL PROFESSION AND LEGAL AID (SCOTLAND) ACT 2007 (ASP 5)

#### *Solicitors (Scotland) Act 1980 (c. 46)*

- 1 (1) The Solicitors (Scotland) Act 1980 is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 3A(5), omit paragraphs (a) and (ad).
- (3) In section 15(2)—
- (a) in paragraph (e), for “38” substitute “ 62A ”, and
  - (b) omit paragraph (j).
- (4) In section 20(2), omit “, 53A(2)(ba)”.
- (5) In section 24C(2)—
- (a) in paragraph (d), for “38” substitute “ 62A ”, and
  - (b) omit paragraph (i).
- (6) In section 34, omit subsections (4), (4C) and (4D).
- (7) Omit sections 38, 39, 42A and 42B.
- (8) In section 42C—
- (a) in subsection (1)—
    - (i) omit paragraphs (a) and (c),
    - (ii) omit “to the solicitor or his firm or”, and
    - (iii) omit “or, where” to the end,
  - (b) in subsection (2), in paragraphs (a) and (b) omit (in each place) “solicitor, firm or”,
  - (c) in subsection (3)—

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (i) in paragraph (a), omit “the solicitor or his firm or, as the case may be,”,
  - (ii) in paragraph (b), omit “of which the solicitor” to “be,”,
  - (d) in subsection (4), omit (in each place) “38,” and
  - (e) omit subsection (5).
- (9) In section 51—
- (a) in subsection (2)—
    - (i) omit “a solicitor may have been guilty” to “Fund) or”, and
    - (ii) omit “or a solicitor” to “services”, and
  - (b) omit subsection (2A).
- (10) In section 52, in subsection (2)(aa) omit “42A(7) or”.
- (11) In section 53, omit subsections (3), (10) and (11).
- (12) Omit sections 53A, 53B and 53C.
- (13) In section 54, omit subsections (1), (2B) and (2C).
- (14) In section 55, omit subsection (8).
- (15) Omit section 56A.
- (16) In section 62A, in subsections (1) and (2) omit (in each place) “38,”.
- (17) In section 65—
- (a) in subsection (1), omit the definition of “inadequate professional services”, and
  - (b) omit subsection (5).
- (18) In Part 2 of Schedule 3, in paragraph 5(1), (2) and (3) omit (in each place) “38,”.
- (19) In Part 2 of Schedule 4—
- (a) in paragraph 9(a) and (b), omit (in each place) “or, as the case may be, of provision of inadequate professional services”,
  - (b) in paragraph 16, omit sub-paragraphs (f) and (g), and
  - (c) in paragraph 23, omit “, 42A(7)”.
- (20) In the side-note to section 62A, omit “38,”.

*Law Reform (Miscellaneous Provisions) (Scotland) Act 1990 (c. 40)*

- 2 In the Law Reform (Miscellaneous Provisions) (Scotland) Act 1990, omit section 33.

SCHEDULE 21

Section 208

MINOR AND CONSEQUENTIAL AMENDMENTS

*Public Notaries Act 1801 (c. 79)*

- 1 The Public Notaries Act 1801 is amended in accordance with paragraphs 2 and 3.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

2 In section 1 (no person to be created to act as public notary, to do any notarial act etc unless duly admitted), omit “, or use and exercise the office of a notary, or do any notarial act.”.

3 In section 14 (Act not to extend to certain persons), omit from “proctor” to “any other”.

*Public Notaries Act 1843 (c. 90)*

4 The Public Notaries Act 1843 is amended in accordance with paragraphs 5 to 7.

5 After section 7 insert—

**“7A Effect of admission or grant of faculty**

(1) Despite any provision made by the Public Notaries Acts, a person's entitlement to carry on an activity which is a notarial activity is to be determined in accordance with the Legal Services Act 2007.

(2) Nothing in the Public Notaries Acts is to be regarded, for the purposes of paragraph 5(2) of Schedule 3 to the Legal Services Act 2007 (exempt persons in relation to notarial activities) as authorising a person to carry on such an activity.

(3) For this purpose—

“the Public Notaries Acts” means this Act and the Public Notaries Act 1801;

“exempt person” and “notarial activity” have the same meaning as in the Legal Services Act 2007.”

6 In section 8 (Master of Faculties may issue commissions to take oaths)—

(a) the existing provision becomes subsection (1), and

(b) after that subsection insert—

“(2) For the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, the issue of a commission under subsection (1) is to be treated as an authorisation to carry on the relevant activities by virtue of another enactment (see paragraph 6(2) of Schedule 3 to that Act).

(3) In subsection (2), “relevant activities” means the activities authorised by the commission.”

7 Omit section 10 (offence of practising as notary without authorisation).

*Bills of Exchange Act 1882 (c. 61)*

8 The Bills of Exchange Act 1882 is amended in accordance with paragraphs 9 and 10.

9 In section 51 (noting or protest of bill), after subsection (7) insert—

“(7A) In subsection (7) “notary” includes a person who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to any activity which constitutes a notarial activity (within the meaning of that Act).”

10 In section 94 (protest when notary not accessible)—

(a) the existing provision becomes subsection (1), and



*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(b) after that subsection insert—

“(2) In subsection (1), “notary” includes a person who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to any activity which constitutes a notarial activity (within the meaning of that Act).”

*Commissioners for Oaths Act 1889 (c. 10)*

11 The Commissioners for Oaths Act 1889 is amended in accordance with paragraphs 12 and 13.

12 In section 1(3) (powers of commissioners for oaths) omit from “in which” (in the first place) to “solicitor, or”.

13 In section 6 (powers as to oaths and notarial acts abroad), after subsection (1) insert—

“(1A) In subsection (1), “notary public” includes a person who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to any activity which constitutes a notarial activity (within the meaning of that Act).”

*Benefices Act 1898 (c. 48)*

14 In section 3 of the Benefices Act 1898 (appeal against refusal of benefice)—

(a) in subsection (2) for “counsel or a solicitor” substitute “ an authorised person ”, and

(b) after that subsection insert—

“(2A) In subsection (2) “authorised person” means a person who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to an activity which constitutes the exercise a right of audience (within the meaning of that Act).”

*Children and Young Persons Act 1933 (c. 12)*

15 The Children and Young Persons Act 1933 is amended in accordance with paragraphs 16 to 20.

16 In section 37(1) (power to clear court while child or young person giving evidence), for “counsel or solicitors” substitute “ legal representatives ”.

17 In section 43 (admission of deposition in evidence), for “counsel or solicitor” substitute “ legal representative ”.

18 In section 47(2)(b) (procedure in youth courts), for “solicitors and counsel” substitute “ legal representatives ”.

19 In section 49(11) (restrictions on reports of proceedings), omit the definition of “legal representative”.

20 In section 107 (interpretation), after the definition of “legal guardian” insert—

““legal representative” means a person who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to an activity which

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

constitutes the exercise of a right of audience or the conduct of litigation (within the meaning of that Act);”.

*London Building Acts (Amendment) Act 1939 (c. xcvii)*

21 In section 115 of the London Building Acts (Amendment) Act 1939 (jurisdiction of tribunal of appeal)—

(a) in subsection (2), for “counsel solicitor” substitute “ an authorised person ”, and

(b) after that subsection insert—

“(2A) In subsection (2) “authorised person” means a person who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to an activity which constitutes the exercise of a right of audience (within the meaning of that Act).”

*Accommodation Agencies Act 1953 (c. 23)*

22 In section 1 of the Accommodation Agencies Act 1953 (illegal commissions and advertisements)—

(a) in subsection (3), after “solicitor” insert “ or an authorised person ”, and

(b) in subsection (6), after “say:—” insert—

““authorised person” means a person (other than a solicitor) who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to an activity which is a reserved legal activity (within the meaning of that Act);”.

*Geneva Conventions Act 1957 (c. 52)*

23 In section 3 of the Geneva Conventions Act 1957 (legal representation of certain persons), after subsection (5) insert—

“(6) In this section—

“counsel” includes any person who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to an activity which constitutes the exercise of a right of audience (within the meaning of that Act);

“solicitor” includes any person who, for the purposes of that Act, is an authorised person in relation to an activity which constitutes the conduct of litigation (within the meaning of that Act).”

*Horserace Betting Levy Act 1969 (c. 14)*

24 In section 4 of the Horserace Betting Levy Act 1969 (non-renewal of bookmaker's permit)—

(a) in subsection (2), for “or a solicitor” substitute “ , a solicitor or an authorised person ”, and

(b) after that subsection insert—

“(2A) In subsection (2), “authorised person” means a person (other than counsel or a solicitor) who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to an activity which

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

constitutes the exercise of a right of audience or the conduct of litigation (within the meaning of that Act).”

*Taxes Management Act 1970 (c. 9)*

25 In section 20B of the Taxes Management Act 1970 (restrictions on power to require documents)—

- (a) in subsection (3), for “barrister, advocate or solicitor” (in both places) substitute “ relevant lawyer ”,
- (b) in subsection (8), for “barrister, advocate or a solicitor” substitute “ relevant lawyer ”, and
- (c) after subsection (14) insert—

“(15) In this section “relevant lawyer” means a barrister, advocate, solicitor or other legal representative communications with whom may be the subject of a claim to professional privilege.”

*Powers of Attorney Act 1971 (c. 27)*

26 In section 3 of the Powers of Attorney Act 1971 (proof of instruments creating powers of attorney)—

- (a) in subsection (1)(b) for “duly certificated notary public” substitute “ , authorised person ”, and
- (b) in subsection (3) for from “ “duly” to “Act and” substitute “ “authorised person” means a person (other than a solicitor) who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to any activity which constitutes a notarial activity (within the meaning of that Act) and ”.

*Poisons Act 1972 (c. 66)*

27 In section 9(7) of the Poisons Act 1972 (right to conduct proceedings), omit “notwithstanding that he is not of counsel or a solicitor”.

*Local Government Act 1972 (c. 70)*

28 In section 223 of the Local Government Act 1972 (appearance of local authorities in legal proceedings), in subsection (1) for “, notwithstanding” to the end substitute “ to conduct any such proceedings. ”

*Matrimonial Causes Act 1973 (c. 18)*

29 In section 6 of the Matrimonial Causes Act 1973 (attempts at reconciliation of parties to marriage) in subsection (1) for “solicitor” substitute “ legal representative ”.

*Fair Trading Act 1973 (c. 41)*

30 In section 29 of the Fair Trading Act 1973 (powers of entry and seizure)—

- (a) in subsection (5), for “barrister, advocate or solicitor” substitute “ relevant lawyer ”, and
- (b) after subsection (5) insert—

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

“(6) “Relevant lawyer” means a barrister, advocate, solicitor, or other legal representative communications with whom may be the subject of a claim to privilege.”

*Consumer Credit Act 1974 (c. 39)*

31 In section 146 of the Consumer Credit Act 1974 (exceptions from section 145), after subsection (2) insert—

“(2A) An authorised person (other than a barrister or solicitor) engaging in contentious business is not to be treated as doing so in the course of any ancillary credit business.

(2B) In subsection (2A)—

“authorised person” means a person who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to an activity which constitutes the exercise of a right of audience or the conduct of litigation (within the meaning of that Act);

“contentious business” means business done in or for the purposes of proceedings begun before a court or before an arbitrator, not being non-contentious or common form probate business (within the meaning of section 128 of the Supreme Court Act 1981).”

*Sex Discrimination Act 1975 (c. 65)*

32 In section 77 of the Sex Discrimination Act 1975 (validity and revision of contracts), in subsection (4BB)(a) for “a barrister” (in the first place) to the end substitute “ a person who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to an activity which constitutes the exercise of a right of audience or the conduct of litigation (within the meaning of that Act), and ”.

*Bail Act 1976 (c. 63)*

33 The Bail Act 1976 is amended in accordance with paragraphs 34 and 35.

34 In section 3 (general provisions), in subsection (6)(e) for “an authorised advocate” to the end substitute “ a person who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to an activity which constitutes the exercise of a right of audience or the conduct of litigation (within the meaning of that Act); ”.

35 In section 5 (supplementary provisions about decisions on bail)—

(a) in subsection (5), for “is represented by counsel or a solicitor unless his counsel or solicitor” substitute “ has legal representation unless his legal representative ”, and

(b) in subsection (6), for “is not represented by counsel or a solicitor” substitute “ does not have legal representation ”.

*Race Relations Act 1976 (c. 74)*

36 The Race Relations Act 1976 is amended in accordance with paragraphs 37 to 39.

37 In section 67A (national security: procedure), in subsection (3)(a) for “have a general” to the end substitute “ be a person who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to an activity which

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

constitutes the exercise of a right of audience or the conduct of litigation (within the meaning of that Act), and ”.

38 In section 72 (validity and revision of contracts), in subsection (4BB)(a) for “a barrister” (in the first place) to the end substitute “a person who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to an activity which constitutes the exercise of a right of audience or the conduct of litigation (within the meaning of that Act), and ”.

39 In Schedule 1A (bodies and other persons subject to general statutory duty), in Part 2, in the entry for the Chartered Institute of Patent Agents, for “Agents” substitute “Attorneys ”.

*Patents Act 1977 (c. 37)*

40 In section 102 of the Patents Act 1977 (rights of audience etc in proceedings before the comptroller)—

(a) after subsection (2) insert—

“(2A) For the purposes of subsection (2), as it has effect in relation to England and Wales, “the enactment relating to the preparation of documents by persons not qualified” means section 14 of the Legal Services Act 2007 (offence to carry on a reserved legal activity if not entitled) as it applies in relation to an activity which amounts to the carrying on of reserved instrument activities within the meaning of that Act.”, and

(b) for subsection (5) substitute—

“(5) Nothing in this section is to be taken to limit any entitlement to prepare deeds conferred on a registered patent attorney by virtue of the Legal Services Act 2007.”

*Estate Agents Act 1979 (c. 38)*

41 In section 11 of the Estate Agents Act 1979 (powers of entry and inspection)—

(a) in subsection (8), for “counsel or solicitor” substitute “a relevant lawyer”, and

(b) after that subsection insert—

“(9) For the purposes of subsection (8) “relevant lawyer” means counsel, a solicitor or other legal representative communications with whom may be the subject of a claim to privilege.”

*Magistrates' Courts Act 1980 (c. 43)*

42 The Magistrates' Courts Act 1980 is amended in accordance with paragraphs 43 and 44.

43 In section 144 (rule committee and rules of procedure)—

(a) in subsection (3)(c), for from “granted” to “right” substitute “authorised by a relevant approved regulator”, and

(b) after subsection (3) insert—

“(3A) In this section “relevant approved regulator” is to be construed in accordance with section 20(3) of the Legal Services Act 2007.”

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- 44 In section 150 (interpretation), in subsection (1), in the definition of “legal representative” for “an authorised advocate” to the end substitute “ a person who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to an activity which constitutes the exercise of a right of audience or the conduct of litigation (within the meaning of that Act); ”.

*Supreme Court Act 1981 (c. 54)*

- 45 The Supreme Court Act 1981 is amended in accordance with paragraphs 46 and 47.

- 46 In section 86 (Crown Court Rule Committee)—

- (a) in subsection (1)(g), for from “granted” to “right” substitute “ authorised by a relevant approved regulator ”, and
- (b) after subsection (6) insert—

“(7) In this section “relevant approved regulator” is to be construed in accordance with section 20(3) of the Legal Services Act 2007.”

- 47 In section 90(3B) (conduct of proceedings by Official Solicitor) for “section 28(2) (a) of the Courts and Legal Services Act 1990” substitute “ the fact that he is a person who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to an activity which constitutes the conduct of litigation (within the meaning of that Act) ”.

*Representation of the People Act 1983 (c. 2)*

- 48 The Representation of the People Act 1983 is amended in accordance with paragraphs 49 to 52.

- 49 In section 86 (authorised excuses for failures as to return and declarations)—

- (a) in subsection (1A), for “or solicitor” substitute “ , solicitor or authorised person ”, and
- (b) after that subsection insert—

“(1B) In subsection (1A) “authorised person” means a person (other than a barrister or solicitor) who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to an activity which constitutes the exercise of a right of audience (within the meaning of that Act).”

- 50 In section 156 (costs of trying election petition)—

- (a) in subsection (5), for “or solicitor” substitute “ , a solicitor or an authorised person ”, and
- (b) after that subsection insert—

“(5A) In subsection (5) “authorised person” means a person (other than counsel or a solicitor) who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to an activity which constitutes the exercise of a right of audience (within the meaning of that Act).”

- 51 In section 162 (member of legal and certain other professions)—

- (a) the existing provision becomes subsection (1),
- (b) in that subsection—
  - (i) after “solicitor” insert “ , authorised person ”, and

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (ii) for “or tribunal” (in both places) substitute “ , tribunal or other body ”, and
- (c) after that subsection insert—
- “(2) In subsection (1) “authorised person” means a person (other than a barrister or solicitor) who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to an activity which constitutes a reserved legal activity (within the meaning of that Act).”
- 52 In section 181 (Director of Public Prosecutions)—
- (a) in subsection (3), for “or solicitor” substitute “ , solicitor or authorised person ”, and
- (b) after that subsection insert—
- “(3A) In subsection (3) “authorised person” means a person (other than a barrister or solicitor) who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to an activity which constitutes the exercise of a right of audience (within the meaning of that Act).”
- Mental Health Act 1983 (c. 20)*
- 53 The Mental Health Act 1983 is amended in accordance with paragraphs 54 to 60.
- 54 In section 35 (remand to hospital for report on accused's mental condition), in subsection (6) for “counsel or a solicitor and his counsel or solicitor” substitute “ an authorised person who ”.
- 55 In section 36 (removal of accused person to hospital for treatment), in subsection (5) for “counsel or a solicitor and his counsel or solicitor” substitute “ an authorised person who ”.
- 56 In section 38 (interim hospital orders), in subsection (2) for “counsel or a solicitor and his counsel or solicitor” substitute “ an authorised person who ”.
- 57 In section 52 (further provisions as to persons remanded by magistrates' courts), in subsection (7)(b) for “counsel or a solicitor” substitute “ an authorised person ”.
- 58 In section 54 (requirements as to medical evidence), in subsection (3)(a)—
- (a) for “counsel or a solicitor” substitute “ an authorised person ”, and
- (b) for “his counsel or solicitor” substitute “ that authorised person ”.
- 59 In section 55 (interpretation of Part 3), in subsection (1) before the definitions of “child” and “young person” insert—
- ““authorised person” means a person who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to an activity which constitutes the exercise of a right of audience (within the meaning of that Act);”.
- 60 In section 78 (procedure of Mental Health Review Tribunals), in subsection (7) for “counsel or a solicitor” substitute “ an authorised person (within the meaning of Part 3) ”.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

*County Courts Act 1984 (c. 28)*

- 61 In section 147 of the County Courts Act 1984 (interpretation), in subsection (1), in the definition of “legal representative” for “an authorised advocate” to the end substitute “ a person who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to an activity which constitutes the exercise of a right of audience or the conduct of litigation (within the meaning of that Act); ”.

*Inheritance Tax Act 1984 (c. 51)*

- 62 In section 219 of the Inheritance Tax Act 1984 (power to require information)—
- (a) in subsection (3) for “barrister or solicitor” substitute “ relevant lawyer ”,
  - (b) in subsection (4) for “solicitor” (in both places) substitute “ relevant lawyer ”, and
  - (c) after that subsection insert—
    - “(5) In this section “relevant lawyer” means a barrister, advocate, solicitor or other legal representative communications with whom may be the subject of a claim to professional privilege.”

*Companies Act 1985 (c. 6)*

- 63 In Schedule 15D of the Companies Act 1985 (disclosures)—
- (a) the existing paragraph 46 becomes sub-paragraph (1) of that paragraph,
  - (b) in that sub-paragraph for “solicitor, barrister” substitute “ relevant lawyer ”, and
  - (c) after that sub-paragraph insert—
    - “(2) “Relevant lawyer” means—
      - (a) a person who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to an activity which constitutes a reserved legal activity (within the meaning of that Act),
      - (b) a solicitor or barrister in Northern Ireland, or
      - (c) a solicitor or advocate in Scotland.”

*Prosecution of Offences Act 1985 (c. 23)*

- 64 In section 15 of the Prosecution of Offences Act 1985 (interpretation), in subsection (1), in the definition of “legal representative” for “an authorised advocate” to the end substitute “ a person who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to an activity which constitutes the exercise of a right of audience or the conduct of litigation (within the meaning of that Act); ”.

*Administration of Justice Act 1985 (c. 61)*

- 65 The Administration of Justice Act 1985 is amended in accordance with paragraphs 66 and 67.
- 66 In section 41 (application of disciplinary provisions to legal aid complaints against barristers), in subsection (2) after “those provisions” insert “ and despite section 157



*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

of the Legal Services Act 2007 (approved regulators not to make provision for redress) ”.

- 67 In section 69(2) (commencement) for “Secretary of State” substitute “ Lord Chancellor ”.

*Social Security Act 1986 (c. 50)*

- 68 In section 56 of the Social Security Act 1986 (legal proceedings), in subsection (1) omit “although not a barrister or solicitor”.

*Building Societies Act 1986 (c. 53)*

- 69 The Building Societies Act 1986 is amended in accordance with paragraphs 70 to 72.

- 70 In section 52 (powers to obtain information and documents etc)—  
(a) in subsection (8) for “barrister, solicitor or advocate” substitute “ relevant lawyer ”, and  
(b) in subsection (13) after the definition of “approved” insert—

““relevant lawyer” means a barrister, advocate, solicitor or other legal representative communications with whom may be the subject of a claim to professional privilege;”.

- 71 In section 67 (directors, etc, not to accept commission in connection with loans), in subsection (7), in the definition of “solicitor” for “licensed conveyancer” substitute “ any person who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to an activity which constitutes a reserved instrument activity (within the meaning of that Act) ”.

- 72 In section 69 (disclosure and record of income of related businesses), in subsection (17), in the definition of “solicitor” for “licensed conveyancer” to the end substitute “ any person who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to an activity which constitutes a reserved instrument activity (within the meaning of that Act). ”

*Ministry of Defence Police Act 1987 (c. 4)*

- 73 In section 4 of the Ministry of Defence Police Act 1987 (representation at disciplinary proceedings)—  
(a) in subsection (2) for “either by counsel or by a solicitor” substitute “ by a relevant lawyer ”,  
(b) in subsection (7) for “counsel or a solicitor” substitute “ a relevant lawyer ”, and  
(c) after that subsection insert—

“(8) In this section “relevant lawyer” means—

- (a) in relation to Scotland or Northern Ireland, counsel or a solicitor, and  
(b) in relation to England and Wales, a person who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to an activity which constitutes the

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

exercise of a right of audience (within the meaning of that Act).”

*Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988 (c. 1)*

74 In the Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988, in section 778 (power to obtain information)—

- (a) in subsection (3) for “solicitor” substitute “relevant lawyer”, and
- (b) after that subsection insert—

“(4) In subsection (3) “relevant lawyer” means a barrister, advocate, solicitor or other legal representative communications with whom may be the subject of a claim to professional privilege or, in Scotland, protected from disclosure in legal proceedings on the grounds of confidentiality of communication.”

*Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 (c. 48)*

75 The Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 is amended in accordance with paragraphs 76 to 80.

76 In section 276 (persons entitled to describe themselves as patent agents)—

- (a) in subsection (1) for “registered patent agent” substitute “registered patent attorney”, and
- (b) in subsection (4) for “agent” (in the second place) substitute “attorney”.

77 In section 280 (privilege for communications with patent agents)—

- (a) in subsection (1), after “to” (in the first place) insert “—
  - (a) “,”
- (b) at the end of that subsection insert “, and
  - (b) documents, material or information relating to any matter mentioned in paragraph (a).”,
- (c) for subsection (2) substitute—

“(2) Where a patent attorney acts for a client in relation to a matter mentioned in subsection (1), any communication, document, material or information to which this section applies is privileged from disclosure in like manner as if the patent attorney had at all material times been acting as the client's solicitor.”

- (d) in subsection (3)—
  - (i) for “agent” (in each place) substitute “attorney”, and
  - (ii) for “agents” substitute “attorneys”, and
- (e) omit subsection (4).

78 In section 281 (power of comptroller to refuse to deal with certain agents) in subsection (2) for “agents” (in both places) substitute “attorneys”.

79 In section 286 (interpretation)—

- (a) for “agent” substitute “attorney”, and
- (b) for “(1)” substitute “(2)”.

80 Omit section 292 (rights and duties of registered patent agents in relation to proceedings in patent county courts).

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

*Law of Property (Miscellaneous Provisions) Act 1989 (c. 34)*

81 In section 1 of the Law of Property (Miscellaneous Provisions) Act 1989 (deeds and their execution)—

- (a) in subsection (5) for “a solicitor” (in the first place) to “conveyancer” (in the second place) substitute “a relevant lawyer, or an agent or employee of a relevant lawyer”, and
- (b) in subsection (6) for the definition of “duly certificated notary public” substitute—

““relevant lawyer” means a person who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to an activity which constitutes a reserved instrument activity (within the meaning of that Act).”

*Companies Act 1989 (c. 40)*

82 In section 87 of the Companies Act 1989 (exceptions from restrictions on disclosure)—

- (a) in subsection (2), in paragraph (c)(i), for “solicitor” substitute “relevant lawyer”, and
- (b) after that subsection insert—

“(2A) In subsection (2)(c)(i) “relevant lawyer” means—

- (a) a person who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to an activity which constitutes a reserved legal activity (within the meaning of that Act),
- (b) a solicitor or barrister in Northern Ireland, or
- (c) a solicitor or advocate in Scotland.”

*Courts and Legal Services Act 1990 (c. 41)*

83 The Courts and Legal Services Act 1990 is amended in accordance with paragraphs 84 to 101.

84 Omit the following provisions—

- (a) section 17 (the statutory objective and the general principle);
- (b) section 18 (the statutory duty);
- (c) section 18A (the Consultative Panel);
- (d) section 27 (rights of audience);
- (e) section 28 (rights to conduct litigation);
- (f) section 29 (authorised bodies);
- (g) section 31 (barristers and solicitors: rights of audience and rights to conduct litigation);
- (h) section 31A (employed advocates).

**Commencement Information**

**I133** Sch. 21 para. 84 wholly in force at 1.1.2010, see s. 211 and S.I. 2009/3250, art. 2(h) (subject to art. 6 and with art. 9)

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- 85 In section 31B (advocates and litigators employed by Legal Services Commission)
- (a) for subsection (1) substitute—
- “(1) This section applies where a person—
- (a) is authorised by a relevant approved regulator (“the regulator”) to carry on an activity which constitutes the exercise of a right of audience or the conduct of litigation, and
- (b) is employed by the Legal Services Commission, or by any body established and maintained by that Commission.
- (1A) Any rules of the regulator which fall within subsection (2) shall not have effect in relation to that person.”,
- (b) in subsection (2)—
- (i) for “body” (in each place) substitute “ regulator ”, and
- (ii) for “rules of conduct” substitute “ conduct rules ”,
- (c) in subsection (3) for “body” substitute “ regulator ”, and
- (d) after subsection (3) insert—
- “(4) For the purposes of this section “relevant approved regulator” is to be construed in accordance with section 20(3) of the Legal Services Act 2007.”
- 86 In section 31C (change of authorised body)—
- (a) for subsection (1) substitute—
- “(1) Where a person—
- (a) has at any time been authorised by a relevant approved regulator to exercise a right of audience before a court in relation to proceedings of a particular description, and
- (b) becomes authorised by another relevant approved regulator to exercise a right of audience before that court in relation to that description of proceedings,
- any qualification regulations of the relevant approved regulator mentioned in paragraph (b) which relate to that right are not to have effect in relation to the person.”,
- (b) in subsection (2) for “the body” substitute “ the relevant approved regulator ”,
- (c) in subsection (3) for “body” (in each place) substitute “ relevant approved regulator ”, and
- (d) after that subsection insert—
- “(4) In this section “relevant approved regulator” is to be construed in accordance with section 20(3) of the Legal Services Act 2007.”
- 87 Omit sections 34 to 52 (extension of conveyancing services).
- 88 Omit sections 54 and 55 (preparation of probate papers etc).

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Commencement Information

**1134** Sch. 21 para. 88 wholly in force at 1.1.2010, see s. 211 and S.I. 2009/3250, art. 2(h) (subject to art. 6 and with art. 9)

89 In section 60 (regulation of right of Scottish and Northern Ireland lawyers to practise in England and Wales)—

- (a) in subsection (1) for “Secretary of State” substitute “ Lord Chancellor ”,
- (b) in subsection (2) for “Secretary of State” substitute “ Lord Chancellor ”,
- (c) after subsection (2) insert—

“(2A) Regulations may be made under this section only if—

- (a) the Legal Services Board has made a recommendation under section 60A,
- (b) draft regulations were annexed to the recommendation, and
- (c) the regulations are in the same form as, or a form not materially different from, the draft regulations.”, and
- (d) in subsection (4) for “Secretary of State” substitute “ Lord Chancellor ”.

90 After that section insert—

#### “60A Procedural requirements relating to recommendations for the purposes of section 60

- (1) Before making a recommendation under this section, the Legal Services Board must publish a draft of—
  - (a) the proposed recommendation, and
  - (b) the proposed draft regulations.
- (2) The draft must be accompanied by a notice which states that representations about the proposals may be made to the Board within a specified period.
- (3) Before making the recommendation, the Board must have regard to any representations duly made.
- (4) If the draft regulations to be annexed to the recommendation differ from the draft regulations published under subsection (1)(b) in a way which is, in the opinion of the Board, material, the Board must, before making the recommendation, publish the draft recommendations along with a statement detailing the changes made and the reasons for the changes.”

91 Omit section 63 (legal professional privilege).

92 Omit section 69 (exemption from liability for damages etc).

93 Omit section 70 (offences).

94 In section 71 (qualification for judicial and certain other appointments)—

- (a) in subsection (4) for “granted by an authorised body” substitute “ exercisable by virtue of an authorisation given by a relevant approved regulator ”,
- (b) in subsection (6) for “the authorised body concerned” substitute “ the relevant approved regulator ”, and

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(c) after that subsection insert—

“(6A) In this section “relevant approved regulator” is to be construed in accordance with section 20(3) of the Legal Services Act 2007.”

95 In section 75 (judges etc barred from legal practice), after paragraph (b) insert—

“(ba) carry on any notarial activities (within the meaning of the Legal Services Act 2007);”.

96 Omit section 113 (administration of oaths and taking of affidavits).

#### Commencement Information

**1135** Sch. 21 para. 96 wholly in force at 1.1.2010 see s. 211 and S.I. 2009/3250, art. 2(h) (subject to art. 9)

97 (1) Section 119 (interpretation) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1) omit the following definitions—

“authorised advocate”  
 “authorised body” and “appropriate authorised body”  
 “authorised litigator”  
 “authorised practitioner”  
 “Consultative Panel”  
 “duly certificated notary public”  
 “the general principle”  
 “qualified person”  
 “the statutory objective”.

(3) In that subsection, for the definition of “court” substitute—

““court” has the same meaning as in the Legal Services Act 2007 (see section 207 of that Act);”.

(4) In that subsection, for the definition of “qualification regulations” and “rules of conduct” substitute—

““qualification regulations” and “conduct rules”, in relation to a body, have the same meaning as in the Legal Services Act 2007 (see section 21 of that Act);”.

(5) In that subsection, in the definition of “right to conduct litigation”—

(a) in paragraph (a) after “court” insert “ in England and Wales ”,

(b) for “and” at the end of that paragraph substitute—

“(aa) to commence, prosecute and defend such proceedings; and”.

(6) In subsection (3) for from “(including” to the end substitute “ to conduct rules includes a reference to practice rules (within the meaning of the Legal Services Act 2007 (see section 21 of that Act)). ”

98 In section 120 (regulations and orders) omit—

(a) in subsection (4) —

(i) “26(1), 37(10), 40(1)”, and

(ii) from “paragraph 24” to “Schedule 9”, and

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) subsection (5).
- 99 In section 125 (power to make provision consequential on provision made by Part 2 of Administration of Justice Act 1985 etc)—
- (a) in subsection (4) for “Secretary of State” substitute “ Lord Chancellor ”, and
- (b) for subsection (5) substitute—
- “(5) In subsection (4)—
- (a) “relevant enactments” means such enactments or instruments passed or made before or in the same Session as the Legal Services Act 2007 was passed as may be specified in the order, and
- (b) the reference to Part 2 is a reference to that Part as amended by that Act or any enactment or instruments passed or made before or in the same Session as that Act was passed.”
- 100 Omit the following provisions—
- (a) Schedule 4 (authorised bodies);
- (b) Schedule 5 (the Authorised Conveyancing Practitioners Board);
- (c) Schedule 6 (the Conveyancing Appeals Tribunals);
- (d) Schedule 7 (the Conveyancing Ombudsman Scheme);
- (e) in Part 2 of Schedule 8 (amendments of provisions relating to powers of Conveyancing Licensing Council etc), paragraphs 14 to 20 and 21(1)(b);
- (f) Schedule 9 (probate).

#### Commencement Information

**1136** Sch. 21 para. 100 wholly in force at 1.1.2010; Sch. 21 para. 100 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 21 para. 100(b)-(d) in force at 31.3.2009 by S.I. 2009/503, art. 2(d); s. 100(a)(e)(f) in force at 1.1.2010 by S.I. 2009/3250, art. 2(h) (subject to art. 6 and with art. 9)

- 101 In paragraph 17 of Schedule 19 (revocation of appointment under section 1(1) of the Commissioners for Oaths Act 1889) for “Secretary of State” substitute “ Lord Chancellor ”.

#### *Environmental Protection Act 1990 (c. 43)*

- 102 In section 114 (appointment etc of inspectors), in subsection (4) omit “, although not of counsel or a solicitor.”.

#### *Friendly Societies Act 1992 (c. 40)*

- 103 In section 62 of the Friendly Societies Act 1992 (powers to obtain information and documents etc)—
- (a) in subsection (7), for paragraphs (a) and (b) substitute—
- “(a) by a relevant lawyer of a document or material contained in a privileged communication or, in Scotland, a communication which is protected from disclosure on the ground of confidentiality, made by or to the relevant

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

lawyer in that capacity or the furnishing of information contained in such communication so made;”, and

- (b) in subsection (12), at the end insert “; and

“relevant lawyer” means a barrister, advocate, solicitor or other legal representative communications with whom may be the subject of a claim to professional privilege or, in Scotland, be protected from disclosure in legal proceedings on grounds of confidentiality of communication.”

*Trade Union and Labour Relations Consolidation Act 1992 (c. 52)*

104 The Trade Union and Labour Relations Consolidation Act 1992 is amended in accordance with paragraphs 105 to 107.

105 In section 194 (offence of failure to notify), in subsection (2) omit “, although not of counsel or a solicitor.”

106 In section 216 (constitution and proceedings of court of inquiry)—

- (a) in subsection (6) for “counsel or solicitor” (in both places) substitute “ a relevant lawyer ”, and  
 (b) after subsection (6) insert—

“(7) In subsection (6) “relevant lawyer” means—

- (a) a person who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to an activity which constitutes the exercise of a right of audience or the conduct of litigation within the meaning of that Act, or  
 (b) an advocate or solicitor in Scotland.”

107 In section 288 (restriction on contracting out), in subsection (4B)(a) for “a barrister” (in the first place) to the end substitute “ a person who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to an activity which constitutes the exercise of a right of audience or the conduct of litigation (within the meaning of that Act), and ”.

*Finance Act 1993 (c. 34)*

108 In Schedule 21 of the Finance Act 1993 (oil taxation)—

- (a) the existing paragraph 7 becomes sub-paragraph (1) of that paragraph,  
 (b) in that sub-paragraph for “barrister, advocate or a solicitor” substitute “ relevant lawyer ”, and  
 (c) after that sub-paragraph insert—

“(2) “Relevant lawyer” means a barrister, advocate, solicitor or other legal representative communications with whom may be the subject of a claim to professional privilege.”

*Trade Marks Act 1994 (c. 26)*

109 The Trade Marks Act 1994 is amended in accordance with paragraphs 110 to 115.



*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- 110 In section 52 (power to make provision in connection with Community trade mark regulation), in subsection (3)(b) for “trade mark agents and registered trade mark agents” substitute “ trade mark attorneys and registered trade mark attorneys ”.
- 111 In section 84 (unregistered persons not to be described as registered trade mark agents)—
- (a) in subsection (1)—
    - (i) for “agent” (in the first place) substitute “ attorney ”,
    - (ii) in paragraph (a) after “agent” insert “ or registered trade mark attorney ”, and
    - (iii) in paragraph (b) after “agent” insert “ or a registered trade mark attorney ”,
  - (b) in subsection (2)—
    - (i) in paragraph (a) after “agent” insert “ or registered trade mark attorney ”, and
    - (ii) in paragraph (b) after “agents” insert “ or registered trade mark attorneys ”, and
  - (c) in subsection (3)—
    - (i) in paragraph (a) after “agent” insert “ or registered trade mark attorney ”, and
    - (ii) in paragraph (b) after “agent” insert “ or a registered trade mark attorney ”.
- 112 In section 86 (use of the term “trade mark attorney”) in subsection (1) for “agent” substitute “ attorney ”.
- 113 In section 87 (privilege for communications with registered trade mark agents)—
- (a) in subsection (1), after “to” (in the first place) insert “—
    - (a) ”,
  - (b) at the end of that subsection insert “, and
    - (b) documents, material or information relating to any matter mentioned in paragraph (a).”,
  - (c) for subsection (2) substitute—
    - “(2) Where a trade mark attorney acts for a client in relation to a matter mentioned in subsection (1), any communication, document, material or information to which this section applies is privileged from disclosure in like manner as if the trade mark attorney had at all material times been acting as the client's solicitor.”, and
  - (d) in subsection (3)—
    - (i) for “agent” (in each place) substitute “ attorney ”, and
    - (ii) for “agents” substitute “ attorneys ”.
- 114 In section 88 (power of registrar to refuse to deal with certain agents)—
- (a) in paragraph (b) for “agents” substitute “ attorneys ”, and
  - (b) in paragraph (c) for “agents” substitute “ attorneys ”.
- 115 In section 104 (index of defined expressions, in the entry for “registered trade mark agent”—
- (a) for “agent” substitute “ attorney ”, and
  - (b) for “(1)” substitute “ (2) ”.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

*Criminal Justice and Public Order Act 1994 (c. 33)*

- 116 In section 38 of the Criminal Justice and Public Order Act 1994 (interpretation and savings for sections 34 to 37 of that Act) in subsection (1), in the definition of “legal representative” for “an authorised advocate” to the end substitute “ a person who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to an activity which constitutes the exercise of a right of audience or the conduct of litigation (within the meaning of that Act); and ”.

*Environment Act 1995 (c. 25)*

- 117 In section 54 of the Environment Act 1995 (appearance in legal proceedings), omit “although not of counsel or a solicitor”.

*Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (c. 50)*

- 118 In Part 1 of Schedule 3A to the Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (validity and revision of contracts), in paragraph 2(5)(a) for “a barrister” (in the first place) to the end substitute “ a person who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to an activity which constitutes the exercise of a right of audience or the conduct of litigation (within the meaning of that Act); and ”.

PROSPECTIVE

*Police Act 1996 (c. 16)*

- 119 F14 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F14** Sch. 21 para. 119 repealed (1.12.2008) by [Criminal Justice and Immigration Act 2008 \(c. 4\)](#), ss. 149, 153, [Sch. 28 Pt. 8](#); S.I. 2008/2993, [art. 2\(1\)\(k\)\(iii\)](#) (subject to art. 3)

*Employment Rights Act 1996 (c. 18)*

- 120 In section 203 of the Employment Rights Act 1996 (restrictions on contracting out), in subsection (4)(a) for “a barrister” (in the first place) to the end substitute “ a person who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to an activity which constitutes the exercise of a right of audience or the conduct of litigation (within the meaning of that Act), and ”.

*Family Law Act 1996 (c. 27)*

- 121 In Schedule 4 of the Family Law Act 1996—
- (a) for paragraph 1 substitute—
- “1 In this Schedule “legal representative” means a person who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to an activity which constitutes a reserved instrument activity (within the meaning of that Act).”
- (b) in paragraph 3(3) for “solicitor” substitute “ legal representative ”, and

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) in paragraph 5(2)(a) for “solicitor” substitute “legal representative”.

*Civil Procedure Act 1997 (c. 12)*

- 122 In section 2 of the Civil Procedure Act 1997 (Civil Procedure Rule Committee)—
- (a) in subsection (2), in paragraph (f) for from “granted” to “right” substitute “authorised by a relevant approved regulator”, and
- (b) after that subsection insert—
- “(2A) In subsection (2)(f) “relevant approved regulator” is to be construed in accordance with section 20(3) of the Legal Services Act 2007.”

*Sexual Offences (Protected Material) Act 1997 (c. 39)*

- 123 In section 2 of the Sexual Offences (Protected Material) Act 1997 (meaning of other expressions), in subsection (1) in the definition of “legal representative” for “any authorised advocate” to “Act 1990” substitute “a person who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to an activity which constitutes the exercise of a right of audience or the conduct of litigation (within the meaning of that Act) and who is”.

*National Minimum Wage Act 1998 (c. 39)*

- 124 The National Minimum Wage Act 1998 is amended in accordance with paragraphs 125 and 126.
- 125 In section 33 (proceedings for offences)—
- (a) in subsection (1) omit paragraph (a), and
- (b) after that subsection insert—
- “(1A) The persons who may conduct proceedings for an offence under this Act in England and Wales, before a magistrates' court, shall include any person authorised for the purpose by the Secretary of State.”
- 126 In section 49 (restrictions on contracting out) for subsection (7)(a) substitute—
- “(a) as regards England and Wales, a person who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to an activity which constitutes the exercise of a right of audience or the conduct of litigation (within the meaning of that Act);”.

*Access to Justice Act 1999 (c. 22)*

- 127 The Access to Justice Act 1999 is amended in accordance with paragraphs 128 to 131.
- 128 In section 16(4) (code of conduct) after “consult” insert “the Legal Services Board,”.
- 129 In section 44 (barristers employed by solicitors)—
- (a) in subsection (1)—
- (i) omit “is employed by”,
- (ii) for paragraphs (a) and (b) substitute—

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- “(a) is employed by an authorised person, or  
 (b) is a manager of such a person,” and  
 (iii) for “his employer” substitute “ the authorised person of which the barrister is an employee or a manager ”,  
 (b) in subsection (2) after “employees” insert “ or managers of an authorised person ”, and  
 (c) after that subsection insert—
- “(3) In this section—  
 “authorised person” means a person who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to an activity which is a reserved legal activity (within the meaning of that Act), and  
 “manager” has the same meaning as in that Act (see section 207 of that Act).”
- 130 In section 45 (fees on application for appointment as Queen's Counsel), in subsections (1) and (2) for “Secretary of State” (in each place) substitute “ Lord Chancellor ”.
- 131 In section 46 (Bar practising certificates)—  
 (a) omit subsection (2)(b) and the “but” immediately preceding it, and  
 (b) omit subsections (3) to (6).
- Youth Justice and Criminal Evidence Act 1999 (c. 23)*
- 132 In section 63 of the Youth Justice and Criminal Evidence Act 1999 (general interpretation etc of Part 2), in subsection (1), in the definition of “legal representative” for “any authorised advocate” to the end substitute “ a person who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to an activity which constitutes the exercise of a right of audience or the conduct of litigation (within the meaning of that Act); ”.
- Criminal Justice and Court Services Act 2000 (c. 43)*
- 133 In section 15 of the Criminal Justice and Court Services Act 2000 (right to conduct litigation and right of audience)—  
 (a) in subsection (2) for “section 28(2)(a) of the Courts and Legal Services Act 1990” substitute “ the fact that he is a person who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to that activity ”, and  
 (b) in subsection (3) for “section 27(2)(a) of the Courts and Legal Services Act 1990” substitute “ the fact that he is a person who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to that activity ”.
- Finance Act 2002 (c. 23)*
- 134 The Finance Act 2002 is amended in accordance with paragraphs 135 and 136.
- 135 In Schedule 34 (stamp duty: withdrawal of group relief: supplementary provisions), in paragraph 10—

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) in sub-paragraph (2) for “A barrister or solicitor” substitute “ A relevant lawyer ”, and
- (b) after that sub-paragraph insert—

“(2A) “Relevant lawyer” means a barrister, advocate, solicitor or other legal representative communications with whom may be the subject of a claim to professional privilege.”

136 In Schedule 35 (stamp duty: withdrawal of relief for company acquisitions: supplementary provisions), in paragraph 11—

- (a) in sub-paragraph (2) for “A barrister or solicitor” substitute “ A relevant lawyer ”, and
- (b) after that sub-paragraph insert—

“(2A) “Relevant lawyer” means a barrister, advocate, solicitor or other legal representative communications with whom may be the subject of a claim to professional privilege.”

*Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003 (c. 1)*

137 In section 343 of the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003 (deduction for professional membership fees), in the table in subsection (2)—

- (a) for “patent agent” and “patent agents” (in each place) substitute “ patent attorney ” and “ patent attorneys ” respectively, and
- (b) for “trade mark agent” and “trade mark agents” (in each place) substitute “ trade mark attorney ” and “ trade mark attorneys ” respectively.

*Finance Act 2003 (c. 14)*

138 In Schedule 13 to the Finance Act 2003 (stamp duty land tax: information powers)

- (a) in paragraph 22, in sub-paragraphs (1) and (2), for “barrister, advocate or solicitor” substitute “ relevant lawyer ”,
- (b) after sub-paragraph (2) of that paragraph insert—

“(3) “Relevant lawyer” means a barrister, advocate, solicitor or other professional legal adviser communications with whom may be the subject of a claim to legal privilege.

(4) “Legal privilege” here has the same meaning as in paragraph 35 of this Schedule.”, and

- (c) in paragraph 25 for “barrister, advocate or solicitor” substitute “ relevant lawyer (within the meaning of paragraph 22(3)) ”.

*Licensing Act 2003 (c. 17)*

139 The Licensing Act 2003 is amended in accordance with paragraphs 140 and 141.

140 In section 58 (meaning of “certified copy” in section 57 of that Act), after subsection (3) insert—

“(4) In this section “notary” means a person (other than a solicitor) who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

to any activity which constitutes a notarial activity (within the meaning of that Act).”

- 141 In section 95 (meaning of “certified copy” in section 94 of that Act), after subsection (3) insert—

“(4) In this section “notary” means a person (other than a solicitor) who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to any activity which constitutes a notarial activity (within the meaning of that Act).”

*Courts Act 2003 (c. 39)*

- 142 The Courts Act 2003 is amended in accordance with paragraphs 143 and 144.

- 143 In section 70 (Criminal Procedure Rule Committee)—

- (a) in subsection (2), in paragraph (i)(i) for from “granted” to “right” substitute “ authorised by a relevant approved regulator ”, and
- (b) after that subsection insert—

“(2A) In subsection (2)(i)(i) “relevant approved regulator” is to be construed in accordance with section 20(3) of the Legal Services Act 2007.”

- 144 (1) Section 77 (Family Procedure Rule Committee) is amended as follows.

- (2) In subsection (2)—

- (a) in paragraph (k) for from “granted” to “right” substitute “ authorised by a relevant approved regulator ”,
- (b) in paragraph (l) for “granted that right” substitute “ authorised ”, and
- (c) in paragraph (m) for “granted that right” substitute “ authorised ”.

- (3) For subsection (5)(b) substitute—

“(b) is a relevant approved regulator in relation to the exercise of a right of audience or the conduct of litigation (or both).”

- (4) After subsection (7) insert—

“(8) In this section “relevant approved regulator” is to be construed in accordance with section 20(3) of the Legal Services Act 2007.”

*Criminal Justice Act 2003 (c. 44)*

- 145 The Criminal Justice Act 2003 is amended in accordance with paragraphs 146 to 148.

- 146 In section 56 (interpretation of Part 8), in subsection (1), in the definition of “legal representative”, for “an authorised advocate” to the end substitute “ a person who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to an activity which constitutes the exercise of a right of audience or the conduct of litigation (within the meaning of that Act), ”.

- 147 In section 159 (disclosure of pre-sentence reports etc), in subsection (2)(a) for “counsel or solicitor” substitute “ legal representative ”.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- 148 In section 160 (other reports of local probation boards and members of youth offending teams) in subsection (2)(a) for “counsel or solicitor” substitute “ legal representative ”.

*Children Act 2004 (c. 31)*

- 149 In section 37 of the Children Act 2004 (Welsh family proceedings officers)—
- (a) in subsection (2) for “section 28(2)(a) of the Courts and Legal Services Act 1990 (c 41)” substitute “ the fact that he is a person who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to that activity ”, and
  - (b) in subsection (3) for “section 27(2)(a) of the Courts and Legal Services Act 1990” substitute “ the fact that he is a person who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to that activity ”.

*Civil Partnership Act 2004 (c. 33)*

- 150 In section 42 of the Civil Partnership Act 2004 (attempts at reconciliation of civil partners) in subsection (2) for “solicitor” substitute “ legal representative ”.

*Public Services Ombudsman (Wales) Act 2005 (c. 10)*

- 151 In section 13 of the Public Services Ombudsman (Wales) Act 2005 (investigations by Ombudsman)—
- (a) in subsection (4)(b), for “counsel, solicitor” substitute “ an authorised person ”, and
  - (b) after subsection (4) insert—

“(4A) In subsection (4) “authorised person” means a person who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to an activity which constitutes the exercise of a right of audience or the conduct of litigation (within the meaning of that Act).”

*Equality Act 2006 (c. 3)*

- 152 In Schedule 2 to the Equality Act 2006 (representations to Commission in relation to inquiry etc.), in paragraph 8—
- (a) in sub-paragraph (2)(b), for “a barrister, an advocate or a solicitor” substitute “ a relevant lawyer ”, and
  - (b) after sub-paragraph (2) insert—

“(2A) “Relevant lawyer” means—

    - (a) an advocate or solicitor in Scotland, or
    - (b) a person who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to an activity which constitutes the exercise of a right of audience or the conduct of litigation (within the meaning of that Act).”

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

*Natural Environment and Rural Communities Act 2006 (c. 16)*

- 153 In section 12(2) of the Natural Environment and Rural Communities Act 2006 (power to bring criminal proceedings) omit “even though he is not a barrister or solicitor”.

*National Health Service Act 2006 (c. 41)*

- 154 In section 194(4) of the National Health Service Act 2006 (conduct of proceedings under section 194) omit “, although he is not a barrister or solicitor,”.

*National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006 (c. 42)*

- 155 In section 142(4) of the National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006 (conduct of proceedings under section 142) omit “, although he is not a barrister or solicitor,”.

*Companies Act 2006 (c. 46)*

- 156 In Schedule 2 to the Companies Act 2006 (exceptions from restrictions on disclosure), in paragraph 67—
- (a) for “solicitor, barrister, advocate” substitute “ relevant lawyer ”, and
  - (b) for “ “Foreign lawyer” ” to the end substitute—

“In this paragraph—

“foreign lawyer” means a person (other than a relevant lawyer) who is a foreign lawyer within the meaning of section 89(9) of the Courts and Legal Services Act 1990;

“relevant lawyer” means—

- (a) a person who, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an authorised person in relation to an activity which constitutes a reserved legal activity (within the meaning of that Act),
- (b) a solicitor or barrister in Northern Ireland, or
- (c) a solicitor or advocate in Scotland.”

*Income Tax Act 2007 (c. 3)*

- 157 The Income Tax Act 2007 is amended in accordance with paragraphs 158 to 161.
- 158 In section 748 (power to obtain information)—
- (a) in subsection (4) for “solicitor” substitute “ relevant lawyer ”,
  - (b) after that subsection insert—

“(4A) In this section “relevant lawyer” means a barrister, advocate, solicitor or other legal representative communications with whom may be the subject of a claim to professional privilege or, in Scotland, protected from disclosure in legal proceedings on grounds of confidentiality of communication.”, and

- (c) in subsection (5) for “solicitors” substitute “ relevant lawyers ”.
- 159 In section 749 (restrictions on particulars to be provided by solicitors)—
- (a) in the heading for “solicitors” substitute “ relevant lawyers ”,



*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

**Changes to legislation:** *Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) for “solicitor” (in each place) substitute “ relevant lawyer ”, and
- (c) for subsection (7) substitute—

“(7) In this section—

“relevant lawyer” means a barrister, advocate, solicitor or other legal representative communications with whom may be the subject of a claim to professional privilege or, in Scotland, protected from disclosure in legal proceedings on grounds of confidentiality of communication;

“settlement” and “settlor” have the meanings given by section 620 of ITTOIA 2005.”

160 In section 771 (power to obtain information)—

- (a) in subsections (5) and (6) for “solicitor” (in each place) substitute “ relevant lawyer ”, and
- (b) after subsection (6) insert—

“(7) In this section “relevant lawyer” means a barrister, advocate, solicitor or other legal representative communications with whom may be the subject of a claim to professional privilege or, in Scotland, protected from disclosure in legal proceedings on grounds of confidentiality of communication.”

PROSPECTIVE

161 <sup>F15</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F15** Sch. 21 para. 161 omitted (13.8.2009) by virtue of The Finance Act 2009, Schedule 47 (Consequential Amendments) Order 2009 (S.I. 2009/2035), art. 2, {Sch. para. 60(o)}

*Tribunals, Courts and Enforcement Act 2007 (c. 15)*

162 (1) Section 51 of the Tribunals, Courts and Enforcement Act 2007 (meaning of “relevant qualification”) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (2), for from “awarded” to the end substitute “ awarded by a body which, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, is an approved regulator in relation to the exercise of a right of audience or the conduct of litigation (within the meaning of that Act). ”

(3) In subsection (4)—

- (a) in paragraph (b), for “(2)(b)” substitute “ (2) ”,
- (b) in paragraph (c), for from “the body” to “of that Act” substitute “, for the purposes of the Legal Services Act 2007, the body—
  - (i) is not an approved regulator in relation to the exercise of a right of audience (within the meaning of that Act), and

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (ii) is not an approved regulator in relation to the conduct of litigation (within the meaning of that Act),” and
- (c) for from “paragraph 33(1)” to the end substitute “ section 46 of the Legal Services Act 2007 (transitional etc. provision in consequence of cancellation of designation as approved regulator). ”

## SCHEDULE 22

Section 209

### TRANSITIONAL AND TRANSITORY PROVISION

#### *Transitory power to modify the functions of bodies*

- 1 (1) Paragraphs 2 to 4 have effect until such time as the Board is first constituted in accordance with paragraph 1 of Schedule 1.
- (2) Where an order under paragraph 2 has effect immediately before that time, it is to be treated from that time as if it were an order made by the Lord Chancellor under section 69 (and in accordance with that section and section 70).
- (3) Where that order is made by virtue of paragraph 4, the reference in sub-paragraph (2) to section 69 is a reference to that section as modified by section 180.
- 2 (1) The Lord Chancellor may by order modify, or make any other provision relating to, the functions of a designated regulator or any other body.
- (2) For this purpose “designated regulator” means—
  - (a) The Law Society;
  - (b) The General Council of the Bar;
  - (c) The Master of the Faculties;
  - (d) The Institute of Legal Executives;
  - (e) The Council for Licensed Conveyancers;
  - (f) The Chartered Institute of Patent Attorneys;
  - (g) The Institute of Trade Mark Attorneys;
  - (h) The Association of Law Costs Draftsmen;
  - (i) any other body which is a body to which sub-paragraph (3) applies.
- (3) This sub-paragraph applies to—
  - (a) a body designated as an authorised body for the purposes of section 27 or 28 of the Courts and Legal Services Act 1990 (c. 41) (rights of audience and rights to conduct litigation);
  - (b) a body approved under Schedule 9 to that Act (approval of body to grant exemption from prohibition on preparation of probate papers etc);
  - (c) a body prescribed by regulations under section 113 of that Act (administration of oaths and taking of affidavits).
- (4) The Lord Chancellor may make an order under sub-paragraph (1) only if—
  - (a) the body to which the order relates has made a recommendation under this paragraph to which was annexed a draft order, and
  - (b) the body to which the order relates consents to the order which is made.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5) The Lord Chancellor may make an order under this paragraph only for the purpose of enabling the body to which it relates to do one or more of the following—
    - (a) to become a body within sub-paragraph (3);
    - (b) to grant its members rights for the purposes of section 27 or 28 of the Courts and Legal Services Act 1990, to exempt its members for the purposes of section 55 of that Act or to authorise its members for the purposes of section 113 of that Act;
    - (c) if it is or becomes a designated regulator, to regulate its members more effectively or efficiently;
    - (d) if it is or becomes a designated regulator, to expand the categories of persons who are eligible to be members of the body;
    - (e) to do any of the things mentioned in paragraphs (a) to (e) of section 69(3) at a time after paragraph 1 of Schedule 4 comes into force.
  - (6) An order under this paragraph may make provision in relation to the body to which the order relates, and members of that body, corresponding to the provision which by virtue of subsection (4) or (5) of section 69 may be made by an order under that section in relation to an approved regulator and persons authorised by that regulator to carry on reserved legal activities or to provide immigration advice or immigration services.
  - (7) Any provision made by an order under this paragraph may be expressed to be conditional upon—
    - (a) the coming into force of paragraph 1 of Schedule 4;
    - (b) the body to which the order relates being designated by an order under Part 2 of that Schedule as an approved regulator, or by an order under Part 1 of Schedule 10 as a licensing authority, in relation to one or more reserved legal activities specified in the order;
    - (c) the body to which the order relates becoming a designated qualifying regulator under section 86A of the Immigration and Asylum Act 1999 (c. 33).
  - (8) An order under this paragraph may modify provisions made by or under any enactment (including this Act or any Act passed after this Act), prerogative instrument or other instrument or document.
  - (9) The powers to make an order conferred by this paragraph are without prejudice to any powers (statutory or non-statutory) which a designated regulator or other body may have apart from this section.
  - (10) In this paragraph “member” in relation to a body includes any person who is not a member of the body but who may be subject to disciplinary sanctions for failure to comply with any of its rules.
- 3
- (1) This paragraph applies where a body makes a recommendation under paragraph 2.
  - (2) The Lord Chancellor must publish a document containing—
    - (a) the recommendation, and
    - (b) the draft order annexed to it.
  - (3) The document must be accompanied by a notice which states that representations about it may be made to the Lord Chancellor within a specified period.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (4) The Lord Chancellor must give a copy of the document to the Office of Fair Trading and the Lord Chief Justice, and invite each of them to provide advice on it within that period.
  - (5) The Lord Chancellor may give a copy of the document to the Legal Services Consultative Panel or any other person, and invite them to provide advice on it within that period.
  - (6) The Lord Chancellor must have regard to any representations and advice duly given.
  - (7) If the order which the Lord Chancellor proposes to make differs from the draft order published under sub-paragraph (2), the Lord Chancellor must, before making the order, publish the revised draft order along with a statement detailing the changes made and the reasons for those changes.
- 4 Paragraphs 2 and 3 apply in relation to the Solicitors Disciplinary Tribunal as they apply in relation to a designated regulator, but as if in paragraph 2—
- (a) in sub-paragraph (4)(a) the reference to the body to which the order relates were a reference to the Solicitors Disciplinary Tribunal or the Law Society, and
  - (b) for sub-paragraph (5) of that paragraph there were substituted—
    - “(5) The Lord Chancellor may make an order under this paragraph only for the purpose of enabling the Solicitors Disciplinary Tribunal to carry out its role more effectively or efficiently.”, and
  - (c) sub-paragraphs (6) and (7) of that paragraph were omitted.

*Approved regulators*

- 5 (1) Sub-paragraph (2) applies where during the pre-commencement period—
- (a) an Order in Council is made designating a body as an authorised body for the purposes of section 27 of the Courts and Legal Services Act 1990 (c. 41) (rights of audience) and that body's qualification regulations and rules of conduct (within the meaning of that section) have been approved for the purposes of that section,
  - (b) an Order in Council is made designating a body as an authorised body for the purposes of section 28 of that Act (right to conduct litigation) and that body's qualification regulations and rules of conduct (within the meaning of that section) have been approved for the purposes of that section,
  - (c) an order is made under paragraph 4 of Schedule 9 to that Act (approval of body to grant exemption from prohibition on preparation of probate papers etc), or
  - (d) regulations are made prescribing a body for the purposes of section 113 of that Act (administration of oaths and taking of affidavits).
- (2) The Lord Chancellor may by order modify the Table in paragraph 1 of Schedule 4 (existing regulators) so as—
- (a) to insert, in the first column, a reference to the body and, in the second column, a reference to the relevant activities, or
  - (b) if the body is already listed in the first column, to add a reference to the relevant activities to the corresponding entry in the second column.
- (3) Sub-paragraph (4) applies where during the pre-commencement period—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (a) an Order in Council is made revoking the designation of a body as an authorised body for the purposes of section 27 of the Courts and Legal Services Act 1990,
  - (b) an Order in Council is made revoking the designation of a body as an authorised body for the purposes of section 28 of that Act,
  - (c) an order is made under paragraph 6 of Schedule 9 to that Act revoking a body's approval, or
  - (d) regulations prescribing a body for the purposes of section 113 of that Act are revoked.
- (4) The Lord Chancellor may by order modify the Table in paragraph 1 of Schedule 4 so as to—
- (a) remove any reference to the relevant activities from the entry in the second column of that Table corresponding to the entry for the body in the first column, and
  - (b) if there are no other activities in that entry in the second column, remove the reference to the body from the first column of that Table.
- (5) An order under sub-paragraph (2) in relation to a body may—
- (a) in a case within sub-paragraph (1)(a) or (b), modify Part 1 of Schedule 5 (authorised persons: continuity of rights) so as to ensure the continuity of any authority given by the body to a person to exercise rights of audience or, as the case may be, to conduct litigation;
  - (b) in a case within sub-paragraph (1)(c), modify Part 1 of that Schedule (authorised persons: continuity of rights) to provide for exemptions granted by a body by virtue of section 55 of the Courts and Legal Services Act 1990 (c. 41) (persons exempt from prohibition on preparation of probate papers etc) which have effect immediately before paragraph 1 of Schedule 4 comes into force to be deemed to be authorisations to carry on probate activities granted by that body at the time that paragraph comes into force;
  - (c) in a case within sub-paragraph (1)(d), modify Part 2 of Schedule 5, to provide during the transitional period for members of the body to be deemed to be authorised by the body to carry on the administration of oaths.
- (6) An order under sub-paragraph (4) in relation to a body may—
- (a) in a case within sub-paragraph (3)(a) or (b), modify Part 1 of Schedule 5 (authorised persons: continuity of rights) so as to remove provision made to ensure the continuity of any authority given by the body to a person to exercise rights of audience or, as the case may be, to conduct litigation;
  - (b) in a case within sub-paragraph (3)(c), modify Part 1 of that Schedule so as to remove any provision deeming persons to have been authorised by the body to carry on probate activities;
  - (c) in a case within sub-paragraph (3)(d), modify Part 2 of that Schedule so as to remove any provision deeming persons to have been authorised by the body to carry on the administration of oaths.
- (7) No order under this paragraph may be made after the end of the pre-commencement period.
- (8) In this paragraph—

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

“pre-commencement period” means the period before the coming into force of paragraph 1 of Schedule 4 (including any period before the passing of this Act);

“relevant activities” means—

- (a) in a case within sub-paragraph (1)(a) or (3)(a), the exercise of a right of audience;
- (b) in a case within sub-paragraph (1)(b) or (3)(b), the conduct of litigation;
- (c) in a case within sub-paragraph (1)(c) or (3)(c), probate activities;
- (d) in a case within sub-paragraph (1)(d) or (3)(d), the administration of oaths;

“the transitional period” has the meaning given by paragraph 3 of Schedule 5.

#### *Licensed Conveyancers*

- 6 (1) In this paragraph the transitional period means the period which—
- (a) begins with the day on which paragraph 29 of Schedule 17 (which amends Schedule 3 to the Administration of Justice Act 1985 (c. 61)) comes into force, and
  - (b) ends with the day on which members of the new Council are first appointed in accordance with a scheme approved by the Legal Services Board under Schedule 3 to that Act (as amended by that paragraph).
- (2) During the transitional period, the Council for Licensed Conveyancers is to be constituted in accordance with Schedule 3 to that Act as it had effect immediately before paragraph 29 of Schedule 17 came into force.
- (3) The term of office of persons who are members of the Council for Licensed Conveyancers by virtue of sub-paragraph (2) immediately before the end of the transitional period ends at the same time as the transitional period.
- 7 (1) This paragraph applies to any licence issued by the Council for Licensed Conveyancers under section 15 of the Administration of Justice Act 1985 (c. 61) which—
- (a) is endorsed under section 15(7) of that Act, and
  - (b) is in force when paragraph 4(4) of Schedule 17 (which repeals subsections (7) and (8) of section 15 of that Act (endorsement of licences)) comes into force.
- (2) Notwithstanding the repeal of those subsections, until the licence expires—
- (a) the licence continues to have effect in accordance with the endorsement, and
  - (b) rules made under section 15(8) of that Act continue to have effect in relation to the licence.
- 8 Until the repeal of paragraphs 17 and 19 of Schedule 8 to the Courts and Legal Services Act 1990 (c. 41) by Schedule 23 to this Act comes into force, those paragraphs have effect as if—
- (a) in paragraph 17 (inadequate professional services: failure to comply with direction), after sub-paragraph (2) there were inserted—
    - “(3) In relation to proceedings before the Discipline and Appeals Committee in respect of such a complaint, the Committee may make such order as they consider fit as to the payment of costs by—

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) the Council;
  - (b) the licensed conveyancer against whom the complaint was made;
  - (c) if the person on whose complaint the proceedings were brought was heard (in person, or through a representative) by the Committee in the course of the proceedings, that person.”, and
- (b) paragraph 19(b) (inadequate professional services: costs) were omitted.

*Exercise of Board's functions pending appointment of Chief Executive*

- 9 (1) Until the first Chief Executive of the Board is appointed under paragraph 13 of Schedule 1, the Board's functions under—
- (a) Schedule 1,
  - (b) Schedule 15, and
  - (c) paragraph 10(8) of this Schedule,
- may be exercised by the ordinary members of the Board.
- (2) For that purpose “ordinary member” has the same meaning as in Schedule 1.

**Commencement Information**

**1137** [Sch. 22 para. 9](#) partly in force; [Sch. 22 para. 9](#) not in force at Royal Assent see [s. 211](#); [Sch. 22 para. 9](#) in force for certain purposes at 7.3.2008 by [S.I. 2008/222](#), [art. 2\(m\)\(ii\)](#)

PROSPECTIVE

*Interim Chief Executive of the OLC*

- 10 (1) The Lord Chancellor may appoint a person as the Interim Chief Executive of the OLC.
- (2) The Interim Chief Executive is to be—
- (a) appointed on terms and conditions determined by the Lord Chancellor, and
  - (b) paid by the Lord Chancellor in accordance with provision made by or under the terms of appointment.
- (3) Appointment as the Interim Chief Executive does not confer the status of Crown servant.
- (4) In this paragraph—
- “the first interim period” means the period which—
    - (a) begins when sub-paragraph (5) comes into force, and
    - (b) ends when the chairman of the Board, and at least 7 other ordinary members of the Board (within the meaning of Schedule 1), have been appointed in accordance with paragraph 1 of Schedule 1;
  - “the second interim period” means the period which—
    - (a) begins when the chairman of the Board, and at least 7 other ordinary members of the Board (within the meaning of Schedule 1), have been appointed in accordance with paragraph 1 of Schedule 1, and

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) ends when the membership of the OLC is first constituted in accordance with paragraph 1 of Schedule 15.
- (5) The Interim Chief Executive may incur expenditure and do other things in the name of and on behalf of the OLC—
- (a) from the beginning of the first interim period, and
  - (b) after that time until the OLC determines otherwise.
- (6) The things which may be done under sub-paragraph (5)—
- (a) include the appointment of staff under paragraph 13 of Schedule 15 and making arrangements for assistance under paragraph 18 of that Schedule, but
  - (b) do not include the appointment of an ombudsman under section 122 or the making of scheme rules.
- (7) During the first interim period, the Interim Chief Executive must comply with any supervisory directions given by the Lord Chancellor.
- (8) During the second interim period, the Interim Chief Executive must comply with any supervisory directions given by the Board.
- (9) The supervisory directions are—
- (a) a direction requiring the Interim Chief Executive to provide the person giving the direction with a report on, or information relating to, such matters as are specified in the direction;
  - (b) a direction requiring the Interim Chief Executive to obtain the approval of the person giving the direction before incurring expenditure in such circumstances as are specified in the direction;
  - (c) any other direction relating to the exercise of the Interim Chief Executive's functions which the person giving the direction considers appropriate.
- (10) Paragraph 34 of Schedule 15 (exemption from liability in damages) applies to the Interim Chief Executive as it applies to a member of the OLC.

### *1 Solicitors*

- 11 (1) Until such time as section 59(1) of the Constitutional Reform Act 2005 (c. 4) comes into force, the reference in section 207(1), in the definition of “solicitor”, to the Senior Courts is to be read as a reference to the Supreme Court.
- (2) Until such time as section 59(2) of that Act (renaming of Supreme Court of Judicature of Northern Ireland as Court of Judicature of Northern Ireland) comes into force, the references in sections 8(5) and 190(5)(e), paragraph 2(4)(f) of Schedule 1, paragraphs 1(9) and 2(5) of Schedule 3 and paragraph 2(3)(e) of Schedule 15 to the Court of Judicature of Northern Ireland are to be read as references to the Supreme Court of Judicature of Northern Ireland.

#### **Commencement Information**

**I138** [Sch. 22 para. 11](#) partly in force; [Sch. 22 para. 11](#) not in force at Royal Assent see [s. 211](#); [Sch. 22 para. 11\(1\)](#) in force at 31.3.2009 by [S.I. 2009/503](#), [art. 2\(e\)](#)



*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

*Solicitors Act 1974 (c. 47)*

PROSPECTIVE

- 12 (1) During the transitional period, the reference to an authorised person in section 1A(d) of the Solicitors Act 1974 (practising certificates: employed solicitors) is to be read as a reference to a person listed in paragraph 15(1), other than a person listed in paragraph (b) or (c) of that paragraph.
- (2) For this purpose “the transitional period” means the period which—
- (a) begins with the day on which section 1A(d) of the Solicitors Act 1974 (as inserted by Schedule 16) comes into force, and
  - (b) ends with the day appointed for the coming into force of section 13 (entitlement to carry on a reserved legal activity).
- 13 (1) During the transitional period, section 44B of the Solicitors Act 1974 (provision of information and documents by solicitors etc) has effect as if the list of persons in subsection (2) of that section included a legal partnership (within the meaning of paragraph 7 of Schedule 5).
- (2) For this purpose “the transitional period” means the period which—
- (a) begins with the day on which section 44B of the Solicitors Act 1974 (as substituted by Schedule 16) comes into force, and
  - (b) ends with the day appointed for the coming into force of section 13 (entitlement to carry on a reserved legal activity).
- 14 (1) During the transitional period, section 69 of the Solicitors Act 1974 (action to recover solicitor's costs) has effect as if—
- (a) after subsection (2A)(a) of that section there were inserted—
    - “(aa) in a case where the costs are due to a firm, signed by a partner of the firm, either in his own name or in the name of the firm, or on his behalf by any employee of the firm authorised by him to sign, or”, and
  - (b) in subsection (2A)(b), after “paragraph (a)” there were inserted “ or (aa) ”.
- (2) For this purpose “the transitional period” means the period which—
- (a) begins with the day on which subsections (2) to (2F) of that section (as substituted by Schedule 16) come into force, and
  - (b) ends with the day appointed for the coming into force of section 13 (entitlement to carry on a reserved legal activity).
- (3) This paragraph does not apply in relation to section 69 of the Solicitors Act 1974 as it has effect by virtue of paragraph 29 of Schedule 2 to the Administration of Justice Act 1985.

*Recognised bodies*

- 15 (1) During the transitional period, any reference in sections 9, 9A or 32A of, or Schedule 2 or 6 to, the Administration of Justice Act 1985 (c. 61) (recognition of legal services bodies and conveyancing services bodies) to an authorised person is to be read as a reference to—

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) a person who has in force a certificate issued by the General Council of the Bar authorising the person to practise as a barrister,
  - (b) a person who is qualified under section 1 of the Solicitors Act 1974 (c. 47) to act as a solicitor,
  - (c) a recognised body under section 9 of the Administration of Justice Act 1985,
  - (d) a registered European lawyer (within the meaning of the European Communities (Lawyer's Practice) Regulations 2000 (S.I. 2000/1119)),
  - (e) a person who has in force a certificate issued by the Institute of Legal Executives authorising the person to practise as a legal executive,
  - (f) licensed conveyancers (within the meaning of section 11(2) of the Administration of Justice Act 1985),
  - (g) a recognised body under section 32 of that Act,
  - (h) a duly certificated notary (within the meaning of paragraph 12(4) of Schedule 5),
  - (i) a person who (having regard to section 15) carries on notarial activities through an employee or manager of the person who is within paragraph (h),
  - (j) a registered patent attorney within the meaning given by section 275(1) of the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 (c. 48),
  - (k) a patent attorney body (within the meaning of paragraph 14(7) of Schedule 5),
  - (l) a registered trade mark attorney within the meaning of the Trade Marks Act 1994 (c. 26),
  - (m) a trade mark attorney body (within the meaning of paragraph 16(7) of Schedule 5),
  - (n) an authorised member of the Association of Law Costs Draftsmen (within the meaning of paragraph 17(2) of Schedule 5), or
  - (o) a person who (having regard to section 15) carries on an activity which is a reserved legal activity within paragraph 18(2) of Schedule 5 through an employee or manager of the person who is within paragraph (n).
- (2) After the end of the transitional period, any reference in section 9, 9A or 32A of, or Schedule 2 or 6 to, the Administration of Justice Act 1985 (c. 61) to an authorised person includes a person who is an exempt person—
- (a) by virtue of paragraph 13 of Schedule 5, in relation to the carrying on of an activity which is a notarial activity, or
  - (b) by virtue of paragraph 18 of that Schedule, in relation to the carrying on of an activity which is a reserved legal activity within sub-paragraph (2) of that paragraph.
- (3) For this purpose “the transitional period” means the period which—
- (a) begins with the day on which sections 9, 9A, 32 and 32A of the Administration of Justice Act 1985 (as amended and substituted by Schedules 16 and 17) come into force, and
  - (b) ends with the day appointed for the coming into force of section 13 (entitlement to carry on a reserved legal activity).

**Commencement Information**

**I139** Sch. 22 para. 15 wholly in force at 31.3.2009 see s. 211 and S.I. 2009/503, art. 2(c)(i) (subject to art. 5)

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- 16 (1) During the transitional period (within the meaning of paragraph 15), the Law Society may make rules to which this sub-paragraph applies only with the concurrence of the Lord Chancellor (as well as the Master of the Rolls).
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) applies to —
- (a) rules made under section 9 of the Administration of Justice Act 1985 by virtue of subsections (1A), (1C), (2F), (2G) or (2I) of that section or section 9A of that Act, and
  - (b) any other rules made under section 9 of that Act, in so far as they apply in relation to bodies which have one or more managers who are not legally qualified (within the meaning of section 9A of that Act), or managers or employees of such bodies.
- 17 (1) During the relevant period, the legal professional privilege provisions apply to a body which—
- (a) is recognised under section 9 of the 1985 Act, and
  - (b) has one or more managers who are not legally qualified (within the meaning of section 9A of that Act),
- as if the body were a licensed body.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) applies whether or not the legal professional privilege provisions have been brought into force for other purposes.
- (3) The relevant period is the period which—
- (a) begins when section 9A of the 1985 Act comes into force, and
  - (b) ends when paragraph 7 of Schedule 5 ceases to apply in relation to the body.
- (4) The legal professional privilege provisions are—
- (a) paragraph 36(4) of Schedule 2 to the 1985 Act (as inserted by Schedule 16 to this Act), and
  - (b) section 190(3) to (7) of this Act.
- (5) During the transitional period (within the meaning of paragraph 15), section 190(5)(h) (as it applies by virtue of this paragraph) applies as if for “an authorised person in relation to an activity which is a reserved legal activity” there were substituted “within paragraph 15(1) of Schedule 22”.
- (6) “The 1985 Act” means the Administration of Justice Act 1985.

*Functions transferred to the Lord Chancellor*

- 18 (1) This paragraph applies where, by virtue of an amendment made to an enactment by this Act, a function of the Secretary of State is transferred to the Lord Chancellor.
- (2) In this paragraph such a function is referred to as a “transferred function”.
- (3) Any subordinate legislation made by the Secretary of State in exercise of a transferred function is to have effect as if made or done by the Lord Chancellor.
- (4) So far as is appropriate in consequence of the transfer, anything else done by the Secretary of State in exercise of a transferred function is to be treated as if done by the Lord Chancellor.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## SCHEDULE 23

Section 210

## REPEALS

**Commencement Information**

**I140** Sch. 23 partly in force: Sch. 23 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 211; Sch. 23 in force for certain purposes at 7.3.2008 by S.I. 2008/222, art. 2(n); Sch. 23 in force for certain further purposes at 30.6.2008 and 1.10.2008 by S.I. 2008/1436, arts. 2(g), 3(c); Sch. 23 in force for certain further purposes at 31.3.2009 by S.I. 2009/503, art. 2(f); Sch. 23 in force for certain further purposes at 1.7.2009 by S.I. 2009/1365, art. 2(c); Sch. 23 in force for certain further purposes at 1.1.2010 by S.I. 2009/3250, art. 2(h) (subject to art. 6 and with art. 9)

<i>Short title and chapter</i>	<i>Extent of repeal</i>
Public Notaries Act 1801 (c. 79)	In section 1, “, or use and exercise the office of a notary, or do any notarial act,”. In section 14, from “proctor” to “any other”.
Public Notaries Act 1843 (c. 90)	Section 10.
Commissioners for Oaths Act 1889 (c. 10)	In section 1(3), from “in which” (in the first place) to “solicitor, or”.
Children and Young Persons Act 1933 (c. 12)	In section 49(11), the definition of “legal representative”.
Public Records Act 1958 (c. 51)	In Schedule 1, “The Legal Services Ombudsman.”
Parliamentary Commissioner Act 1967 (c. 13)	In Schedule 2, “Authorised Conveyancing Practitioners Board.” and “The Legal Services Complaints Commissioner.”
Superannuation Act 1972 (c. 11)	In Schedule 1, “Employment by the Legal Services Ombudsman” and “The office of the Legal Services Ombudsman”.
Poisons Act 1972 (c. 66)	In section 9(7), “notwithstanding that he is not of counsel or a solicitor”.
Solicitors Act 1974 (c. 47)	In section 1A— (a) “or” at the end of paragraph (b), and (b) in paragraph (c) “by the Council of the Law Society”. In section 2— (a) in subsection (1), “, with the concurrence of the Secretary of State, the Lord Chief Justice and the Master of the Rolls,”, (b) in subsection (3)(a)(i), “, whether by service under articles or otherwise,”, (c) in subsection (3)(a)(v), “articles may be discharged or”, and (d) subsections (4) and (5). Section 6(2) to (4).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- Section 8(5).
- Section 12.
- Section 12A.
- Section 14.
- In section 17(1) and (2), “in the London Gazette”.
- Section 19.
- Sections 22 to 23.
- In section 26, “, 22 or 23”.
- Section 27.
- In section 28—
  - (a) in subsection (1), “, with the concurrence of the Secretary of State and the Lord Chief Justice,”
  - (b) in subsection (1)(c), “and applications for them”,
  - (c) subsections (2) and (3),
  - (d) in subsection (3A), the “and” at the end of paragraph (b), and
  - (e) subsections (4) and (5).
- In section 31—
  - (a) in subsection (1) “, with the concurrence of the Master of the Rolls,” and
  - (b) subsections (3) and (4).
- In section 32(1)—
  - (a) “, with the concurrence of the Master of the Rolls,” and
  - (b) from “and the rules” to the end.
- Section 32(2).
- In section 32(4) “or (2)”.
- Section 32(6).
- In section 33(2), “and the rules” to the end.
- In section 33A(1) “, with the concurrence of the Master of the Rolls,”.
- Section 34(7) and (8).
- Section 37A.
- Section 40.
- Section 41(5).
- In section 43(5)—
  - (a) “by any solicitor”, and
  - (b) from “but” to the end.
- Section 46(6) to (8).
- In section 46(9) “, with the concurrence of the Master of the Rolls,”.
- In section 47—
  - (a) in subsection (2)(c), “not exceeding £5,000”, and
  - (b) subsections (4) and (5).
- In section 48(2)(b) “in the London Gazette”.
- In section 49(4) “and the Master of the Rolls”.
- Section 49(7).

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

	Section 70(11).
	Sections 76 to 78.
	Section 80(2).
	Sections 81 and 81A.
	In section 87(1) the definitions of—
	(a) “articles”,
	(b) “controlled trust”,
	(c) “duly certificated notary public”,
	(d) “employee”,
	(e) “indemnity conditions”,
	(f) “replacement date”, and
	(g) “training conditions”.
	Section 89(7).
	In Schedule 1—
	(a) in paragraph 1(1)(h), “sole”, and
	(b) paragraph 1(2).
	Schedule 1A.
	Schedule 2.
	In Schedule 3, paragraph 9.
House of Commons Disqualification Act 1975 (c. 24)	In Part 2 of Schedule 1, “The Authorised Conveyancing Practitioners Board.” In Part 3 of Schedule 1, “The Legal Services Complaints Commissioner.” and “The Legal Services Ombudsman.”
Northern Ireland Assembly Disqualification Act 1975 (c. 25)	In Part 2 of Schedule 1, “The Authorised Conveyancing Practitioners Board.” In Part 3 of Schedule 1, “The Legal Services Complaints Commissioner.” and “The Legal Services Ombudsman.”
Race Relations Act 1976 (c. 74)	In Schedule 1A, in Part 2, “The Legal Services Consultative Panel.”
Patents Act 1977 (c. 37)	Section 102A.
Solicitors (Scotland) Act 1980 (c. 46)	Section 3A(5)(a) and (ad). Section 15(2)(j). In section 20(2) “, 53A(2)(ba)”. Section 24C(2)(i). Section 34(4), (4C) and (4D). Sections 38, 39, 42A and 42B. In section 42C(1)— (a) paragraphs (a) and (c), (b) “to the solicitor or his firm or”, and (c) “or, where” to the end. In section 42C(2)(a) and (b) “solicitor, firm or” (in each place). In section 42C(3)— (a) in paragraph (a) “the solicitor or his firm or, as the case may be,” and (b) in paragraph (b) from “of which the solicitor” to “be.”. In section 42C(4) “38,” (in each place).

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

	Section 42C(5).
	In section 51(2)—
	(a) “a solicitor may have been guilty” to “Fund) or”, and
	(b) “or a solicitor” to “services”.
	Section 51(2A).
	In section 52(2)(aa) “42A(7) or”.
	Section 53(3), (10) and (11).
	Sections 53A, 53B and 53C.
	Section 54(1), (2B) and (2C).
	Section 55(8).
	Section 56A.
	In section 62A(1) and (2) “38,” (in each place).
	In section 65—
	(a) in subsection (1), the definition of “inadequate professional services”, and
	(b) subsection (5).
	In Schedule 3, in Part 2, in paragraph 5(1), (2) and (3) “38,” (in each place).
	In Schedule 4, in Part 2—
	(a) in paragraph 9(a) and (b) “or, as the case may be, of provision of inadequate professional services” (in each place),
	(b) paragraph 16(f) and (g), and
	(c) in paragraph 23 “, 42A(7)”.
	In the side-note to section 62A “38,”.
Mental Health Act 1983 (c. 20)	In Schedule 4, paragraph 38(a).
County Courts Act 1984 (c. 28)	In Schedule 2, paragraph 49.
Prosecution of Offences Act 1985 (c. 23)	Section 4(6).
Administration of Justice Act 1985 (c. 61)	Section 2.
	Section 4.
	Sections 6 and 7.
	In section 9—
	(a) in subsection (1)(c) “corporate”,
	(b) subsection (4),
	(c) in subsection (5) “corporate”,
	(d) in subsection (8) the definition of “officer”, and in the definition of “recognised body”, “corporate”, and
	(e) subsection (9).
	In section 10—
	(a) in subsection (1) “corporate” (in both places), and
	(b) in subsection (2) “corporate”.
	Section 11(4).
	Section 12(2).
	Section 15(7) and (8).
	In section 20(1) “, in pursuance of its general duty referred to in section 12(2),”.
	In section 22(3)(a) “qualified”.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

**Changes to legislation:** *Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

In section 24—

- (a) in subsection (1), paragraph (b) and the “or” immediately preceding it,
- (b) in that subsection the words from “with a view” to the end,
- (c) subsection (2),
- (d) in subsection (3), “or (2)”, “or complaint” (in both places) and “or paragraph (b)”, and
- (e) in subsection (5), “or complaint” (in both places).

Section 26(2)(g), (5) and (6).

In section 29(1), “or” at the end of paragraph (b).

In section 31—

- (a) in subsection (2), “or complaint” (in each place) and “or paragraph (b)”, and
- (b) in subsection (4), “or complaint”.

In section 32—

- (a) in subsection (2) “corporate”,
- (b) subsection (3)(d),
- (c) in subsection (3)(e) “corporate”,
- (d) subsections (4) and (5), and
- (e) in subsection (6)(a) “corporate”.

Section 34(2)(c) to (e).

In section 35(2), “corporate”.

Section 38(1).

In section 39(1)—

- (a) in the definition of “client”, in paragraph (a) “or his firm”,
- (b) the definitions of “director” and “officer”, and
- (c) in the definition of “recognised body”, “corporate”.

In Schedule 1 paragraphs 5, 8(3), 9 and 14.

In Schedule 2—

- (a) in paragraph 1(1) “corporate”,
- (b) in paragraph 1(2)—
  - (i) paragraph (b) and the “or” immediately preceding it,
  - (ii) “corporate”, and
  - (iii) “or application”,
- (d) paragraph 1(3),
- (e) in paragraph 1(4) from “, and for those purposes” to the end,
- (f) paragraph 4(2),
- (g) paragraphs 11, 12 and 13,
- (h) in paragraph 16(1), in paragraph (a) “in the United Kingdom”,
- (i) in paragraph 17(a) “11(1), 15(2) or” and “13(3) or”,
- (j) paragraph 18(1)(d) and the “or” immediately preceding it,



*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (k) in paragraph 18(2) “not exceeding £3,000”,
  - (l) paragraph 18(3) and (4),
  - (m) paragraph 20(2),
  - (n) in paragraph 31 “or (2)”,
  - (o) paragraph 32(2),
  - (p) in paragraph 34(1), “corporate” (in both places), and
  - (q) in paragraph 35, in paragraph (a) “corporate” and the “and” at the end of paragraph (b).
- In Schedule 3, paragraphs 2(3) and 3.  
In Schedule 4, paragraphs 1(3) and (4) and 3.  
In Schedule 5, paragraph 1(2).  
In Schedule 6—
- (a) in paragraph 1 “corporate” (in both places), and in sub-paragraph (2) “or complaint” (in both places) and “or (b)”,
  - (b) in paragraph 3(1), in paragraph (a)(i) “by any court in the United Kingdom”, paragraph (b), and from “with a view” to the end,
  - (c) paragraph 3(2),
  - (d) paragraph 4(2)(c),
  - (e) paragraph 4(3), (3A) and (4),
  - (f) in paragraph 7(1) and (2) “corporate”,
  - (g) in paragraph 8(1), “corporate”,
  - (h) paragraph 9(2),
  - (i) paragraph 10(2),
  - (j) in paragraph 12(1), “corporate” (in both places),
  - (k) in paragraph 13, in paragraph (a) “corporate”, and the “and” at the end of paragraph (b),
  - (l) paragraph 15.
- In Schedule 9, paragraphs 2, 4 and 6.
- Insolvency Act 1985 (c. 65) In Schedule 8, paragraph 25.
- Social Security Act 1986 (c. 50) In section 56(1), “although not a barrister or solicitor”.
- Building Societies Act 1986 (c. 53) In Schedule 18, paragraph 11(2) and (3).
- Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 (c. 48) Section 279.  
In section 280—
- (a) in subsection (3) “or” at the end of paragraph (b), and
  - (b) subsection (4).
- Section 292.
- Law of Property (Miscellaneous Provisions) Act 1989 (c. 34) In Schedule 1, paragraph 8.

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

Law Reform (Miscellaneous Provisions) (Scotland) Act 1990 (c. 40)	Section 33.
Courts and Legal Services Act 1990 (c. 41)	<p>Sections 17, 18 and 18A.          Sections 21 to 29.          Sections 31 and 31A.          Sections 34 to 52.          In section 53—            (a) subsection (5), and            (b) subsection (9)(e).          Sections 54 and 55.          Section 63.          Sections 68 to 70.          Section 73(5)(d).          Section 86 to 88.          Section 90.          Section 93.          Section 94(1) and (2).          Section 96.          Section 113.          In section 119(1), the definitions of—            (a) “authorised advocate”,            (b) “authorised body” and “appropriate authorised body”,            (c) “authorised litigator”,            (d) “authorised practitioner”,            (e) “Consultative Panel”,            (f) “duly certificated notary public”,            (g) “the general principle”,            (h) “qualified person”, and            (i) “the statutory objective”.          In section 120—            (a) in subsection (4), “26(1), 37(10), 40(1)”, and from “paragraph 24” to “Schedule 9”, and            (b) subsection (5).          Schedules 3 to 7.          In Schedule 8, paragraphs 7, 11, 13 to 20, 21(1)(b) and 23.          Schedule 9.          In Schedule 10, paragraph 64.          In Schedule 14—            (a) in paragraph 1, the definitions of “controlled trust” and “the Council”,            (b) paragraph 2(3) and (5),            (c) in paragraph 5—              (i) in sub-paragraph (3)(a) and (b), “by virtue of his being a member of that partnership”, and              (ii) sub-paragraph (4),            (c) paragraph 14(2),            (d) in paragraph 14(3) “to him”,</p>

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

	(e) in paragraph 15, in sub-paragraph (4) (c) “not exceeding £5,000”, and sub-paragraph (5), (f) in paragraph 17(2), “and the Master of the Rolls”, and (g) paragraph 17(4). Schedule 15. In Schedule 17, paragraphs 4, 8, 10 and 20. In Schedule 18— (a) in paragraph 1(1), ““The Authorised Conveyancing Practitioners Board”” and ““The Conveyancing Ombudsman””, (b) paragraph 1(2), and (c) paragraphs 9 to 12, 18, 20 and 56.
Environmental Protection Act 1990 (c. 43)	In section 114(4), “, although not of counsel or a solicitor,”.
Friendly Societies Act 1992 (c. 40)	In Schedule 21, paragraph 5.
Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 (c. 52)	In section 194(2), “, although not of counsel or a solicitor,”.
Statute Law (Repeals) Act 1993 (c. 50)	In Schedule 2, paragraph 3.
Trade Marks Act 1994 (c. 26)	Section 85. In Schedule 4, paragraph 5.
Agricultural Tenancies Act 1995 (c. 8)	Section 35.
Environment Act 1995 (c. 25)	In section 54, “although not of counsel or a solicitor”.
Bank of England Act 1998 (c. 11)	Section 41(4). In Schedule 5, paragraph 67.
National Minimum Wage Act 1998 (c. 39)	Section 33(1)(a).
Access to Justice Act 1999 (c. 22)	Sections 35(2) to (4), 36, 37 and 40 to 42. In section 44(1), “is employed by”. In section 46— (a) subsection (2)(b) and the word “but” immediately preceding it, and (b) subsections (3) to (6). Section 47. Sections 49 to 52. In Schedule 4, paragraph 46. Schedule 5. In Schedule 6, paragraphs 1 to 3, 5 to 8 and 11. In Schedule 7, paragraphs 7(2)(a) and 10 to 12. Schedule 8. In Schedule 14, paragraph 14.
Immigration and Asylum Act 1999 (c. 33)	In section 86— (a) subsections (1)(a), (d) and (e),

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

	(b) subsection (4)(b), (c) in subsection 5(a), “England and Wales or”, and (d) subsection (6)(a). In Schedule 5— (a) paragraph 3(6)(b), (b) paragraph 4(2)(b), (c) in paragraph 4(3)(a) “England and Wales or”, and (d) paragraph 4(4)(a).
Trustee Act 2000 (c. 29)	In Schedule 2, paragraph 37.
Freedom of Information Act 2000 (c. 36)	In Part 6 of Schedule 1— (a) “The Authorised Conveyancing Practitioners Board.”, (b) “The Legal Services Complaints Commissioner.”, (c) “The Legal Services Consultative Panel.”, and (d) “The Legal Services Ombudsman.”
Enterprise Act 2002 (c. 40)	In Schedule 25, paragraph 23(2) to (6) and (10).
Pensions Act 2004 (c. 35)	In Schedule 4, paragraph 21.
Constitutional Reform Act 2005 (c. 4)	In Schedule 4, paragraphs 92 and 202. In Schedule 11, paragraphs <sup>F16</sup> . . . 21(3) and 23(2) and (3).
Mental Capacity Act 2005 (c. 9)	In Schedule 6, paragraph 22(2).
Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15)	In Part 3 of Schedule 7, paragraph 42(2).
Natural Environment and Rural Communities Act 2006 (c. 16)	In section 12(2) “even though he is not a barrister or solicitor”.
Compensation Act 2006 (c. 29)	Section 5(3), (4)(c) and (5). Section 15(6).
National Health Service Act 2006 (c. 41)	In section 194(4), “, although he is not a barrister or solicitor,”.
National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006 (c. 42)	In section 142(4), “, although he is not a barrister or solicitor,”.
Legal Profession and Legal Aid (Scotland) Act 2007 (asp 5)	Section 77.

#### Textual Amendments

**F16** Words in Sch. 23 repealed (12.11.2009) by Coroners and Justice Act 2009 (c. 25), ss. 177, 178, 182(1)(j)(v), Sch. 21 para. 97, Sch. 23 Pt. 9

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## SCHEDULE 24

Section 213

### INDEX OF DEFINED EXPRESSIONS

<i>Expression</i>	<i>Interpretation provisions</i>
administration of oaths	Schedule 2
approved regulator	section 20
authorised person, in relation to an activity	section 18
barrister	section 207
the Board	section 2
compensation arrangements	section 21
complainant (in Part 6)	section 160
conduct of litigation	Schedule 2
conduct rules	section 21
consumers	section 207
conveyancing services	section 207
court	section 207
discipline rules	section 21
document	section 201
exempt person	section 19 and Schedules 3 and 5
functions	section 207
“immigration advice” and “immigration services”	section 207
indemnification arrangements	section 21
independent trade union	section 207
indirect interest (of a non-authorised person in a licensable body)	section 72
interest, in a body	section 72
intervention direction	section 41
legal activity	section 12
licensable body	section 72
licensed activity (in Part 5)	section 111
licensed body	section 71
licensing authority	section 73
licensing rules	section 83
manager, in relation to a body	section 207
material interest, in a body (in Part 5)	Schedule 13

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

modify	section 207
non-authorised person (in Part 5)	section 111
non-commercial legal services	section 207
non-reserved activity (in Part 5)	section 111
not for profit body	section 207
notarial activities	Schedule 2
the OFT	section 207
the OLC	section 114
ombudsman	section 122
the ombudsman scheme	section 115
person	section 207
practice rules	section 21
probate activities	Schedule 2
qualification regulations	section 21
regulatory arrangements	section 21
regulatory functions	section 27
regulatory objectives	section 1
relevant appellate body (in Part 5)	section 111
relevant approved regulator, in relation to an activity	section 20
relevant approved regulator, in relation to a person	section 20
relevant authorising body (in Part 6)	section 160
relevant licensing authority, in relation to a licensed body (in Part 5)	section 73
relevant licensing authority, in relation to an applicant for a licence (in Part 5)	section 73
representative functions	section 27
reserved instrument activities	Schedule 2
reserved legal activity	section 12 and Schedule 2
reserved legal services	section 207
respondent (in Part 6)	section 160
right of audience	Schedule 2
scheme rules (in Part 6)	section 115
shares	section 72
solicitor	section 207

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.*

*Changes to legislation: Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

terms of a licence (in Part 5)

section 85

---

**Status:**

Point in time view as at 18/01/2010.

**Changes to legislation:**

Legal Services Act 2007 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations.